



Oracle® COMMUNICATIONS

Policy Management Bare Metal Installation Guide

Release 12.2

E82615-01
February 2017

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

Copyright © 2017 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

MOS (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. PREFACE	6
1.1 Related documents.....	7
1.2 Acronyms.....	8
1. PREFACE	6
1.1 Related documents.....	7
1.2 Acronyms.....	8
2. INSTALLATION OVERVIEW	9
2.1 Overview of Installed Components	10
2.2 Overview of the Installation process	10
3. PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION	11
3.1 About Planning Your Policy Management Installation	12
3.2 About Test Systems and Production Systems.....	12
3.3 System Deployment Planning.....	12
3.3.1 Networking (c-Class Hardware).....	12
3.3.2 Networking (RMS Hardware)	13
3.4 About Installing and Maintaining a Secure System	13
4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS	14
4.1 Software Requirements.....	14
4.1.1 Operating Environment.....	14
4.1.2 Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C).....	14
4.1.3 Policy Management Application	14
4.1.4 Acquiring Software	15
4.1.5 About Critical Patch Updates	17
4.1.6 Additional Software Requirements	18
4.2 Hardware Requirements	18
4.3 Acquiring Firmware.....	18
4.3.1 Acquiring Firmware for Oracle Hardware	19
4.3.2 Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Through Oracle.....	19
4.3.3 Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Directly.....	19
4.4 Information Requirements.....	19
4.4.1 Logins/Passwords	20
5. PREPARING THE SYSTEM ENVIRONMENT	21
5.1 Preparing an Oracle X5-2 RMS Environment.....	21
5.1.1 ILOM Configuration Procedure.....	21
5.1.2 Updating Oracle Server Firmware	21
5.1.3 ILOM Web GUI Settings	21
5.1.4 BIOS Configuration Oracle and Netra X5-2 RMS Server	22
5.1.5 IPM of an Oracle X5-2 RMS Server	22
5.1.6 Installing Policy Management Software.....	30
5.2 Preparing an HP RMS Environment	39
5.2.1 ILO Configuration Procedure.....	39
5.2.2 Updating DL380 Server Firmware	39
5.2.3 ILO Web GUI Settings	39
5.2.4 BIOS Configuration HP DL380 RMS Server	39
5.2.5 IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server	40
5.2.6 Installing Policy Management Software	47
5.3 Preparing a c-Class Environment	54

5.3.1	Preparing the PM&C Management Server	54
5.3.2	HP C-7000 Enclosure Configuration	54
5.3.3	Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to the PM&C	56
5.3.4	Configure Blade Server iLO Password for Administrator Account	59
5.3.5	Configuring c-Class Aggregation and Enclosure Switches Using netConfig.....	60
5.3.6	Configuring the Application Blades	62
5.3.7	Updating Application Blade Firmware	62
5.3.8	Confirming and Updating Application Blade BIOS Settings.....	62
5.3.9	Loading Policy Management Software Images onto the PM&C.....	62
5.3.10	IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C	63
5.3.11	Install Policy Management Software on Blades using PM&C.....	65
6.	CONFIGURE POLICY APPLICATION SERVERS IN WIRELESS MODE	71
6.1	Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg	72
6.2	Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI	82
6.3	CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration	88
6.4	Configuring Additional Clusters	98
6.4.1	Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy.....	98
6.4.2	Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation).....	106
6.4.3	Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site	114
6.4.4	Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation).....	118
6.5	Performing SSH Key Exchanges	130
6.6	Configure Routing on Your Servers	133
6.7	Configure Policy Components	134
6.7.1	Adding MPE and MRA to CMP Menu	134
6.7.2	Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End).....	140
6.7.3	Define and Add Network Elements.....	143
6.8	Load Policies and Related Policy Data	148
6.9	Add a Data Source	148
6.10	Perform Test Call.....	149
6.11	Pre-Production Configurations.....	150
8.	SUPPORTING PROCEDURES.....	192
8.1	Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window	192
8.1.1	Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP Servers	192
8.1.2	Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers	195
8.1.3	Accessing the iLOM Console for Oracle RMS Servers using SSH	199
8.1.4	Accessing the Remote Console using the OA (c-Class)	201
8.2	Mounting Media (Image Files)	203
8.2.1	Mounting Physical Media (RMS only)	203
8.2.2	Mounting Virtual Media on HP Servers	204
8.2.3	Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers	206
8.3	Hardware Setup (Bios Configuration).....	210
8.3.1	BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers.....	210
8.3.2	BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers.....	217
8.3.3	BIOS Settings for Oracle RMS Servers	226
8.3.4	Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers	231
8.3.5	Using c-Class Enclosure OA to Update Application Blade's BIOS Settings	234
9.	TROUBLESHOOTING THE INSTALLATION	236
9.1	Common Problems and Their Solutions.....	236
9.2	My Oracle Support.....	237

2.1	Overview of Installed Components	10
2.2	Overview of the Installation process	10
3.	PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION	11
3.1	About Planning Your Policy Management Installation	12
3.2	About Test Systems and Production Systems.....	12
3.3	System Deployment Planning.....	12
3.3.1	Networking (c-Class Hardware).....	12
3.3.2	Networking (RMS Hardware)	13
3.4	About Installing and Maintaining a Secure System	13
4.	SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS.....	14
4.1	Software Requirements.....	14
4.1.1	Operating Environment.....	14
4.1.2	Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C).....	14
4.1.3	Policy Management Application	14
4.1.4	Acquiring Software	15
4.1.5	About Critical Patch Updates	17
4.1.6	Additional Software Requirements	18
4.2	Hardware Requirements	18
4.3	Acquiring Firmware.....	18
4.3.1	Acquiring Firmware for Oracle Hardware	19
4.3.2	Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Through Oracle.....	19
4.3.3	Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Directly.....	19
4.4	Information Requirements.....	19
4.4.1	Logins/Passwords	20
5.	PREPARING THE SYSTEM ENVIRONMENT	21
5.1	Preparing an Oracle X5-2 RMS Environment.....	21
5.1.1	ILOM Configuration Procedure.....	21
5.1.2	Updating Oracle Server Firmware	21
5.1.3	ILOM Web GUI Settings	21
5.1.4	BIOS Configuration Oracle and Netra X5-2 RMS Server	22
5.1.5	IPM of an Oracle X5-2 RMS Server.....	22
5.1.6	Installing Policy Management Software.....	30
5.2	Preparing an HP RMS Environment	39
5.2.1	ILO Configuration Procedure.....	39
5.2.2	Updating DL380 Server Firmware	39
5.2.3	ILO Web GUI Settings	39
5.2.4	BIOS Configuration HP DL380 RMS Server	39
5.2.5	IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server	40
5.2.6	Installing Policy Management Software	47
5.3	Preparing a c-Class Environment	54
5.3.1	Preparing the PM&C Management Server	54
5.3.2	HP C-7000 Enclosure Configuration.....	54
5.3.3	Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to the PM&C	56
5.3.4	Configure Blade Server iLO Password for Administrator Account	59
5.3.5	Configuring c-Class Aggregation and Enclosure Switches Using netConfig.....	60
5.3.6	Configuring the Application Blades.....	62
5.3.7	Updating Application Blade Firmware.....	62
5.3.8	Confirming and Updating Application Blade BIOS Settings.....	62

5.3.9	Loading Policy Management Software Images onto the PM&C.....	62
5.3.10	IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C	63
5.3.11	Install Policy Management Software on Blades using PM&C	65
6.	CONFIGURE POLICY APPLICATION SERVERS IN WIRELESS MODE	71
6.1	Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg	72
6.2	Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI	82
6.3	CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration	88
6.4	Configuring Additional Clusters	98
6.4.1	Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy.....	98
6.4.2	Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation).....	106
6.4.3	Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site	114
6.4.4	Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation).....	118
6.5	Performing SSH Key Exchanges	130
6.6	Configure Routing on Your Servers	133
6.7	Configure Policy Components	134
6.7.1	Adding MPE and MRA to CMP Menu	134
6.7.2	Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End).....	140
6.7.3	Define and Add Network Elements.....	143
6.8	Load Policies and Related Policy Data	148
6.9	Add a Data Source	148
6.10	Perform Test Call.....	149
6.11	Pre-Production Configurations.....	150
8.	SUPPORTING PROCEDURES.....	192
8.1	Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window	192
8.1.1	Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP Servers	192
8.1.2	Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers	195
8.1.3	Accessing the iLOM Console for Oracle RMS Servers using SSH	199
8.1.4	Accessing the Remote Console using the OA (c-Class)	201
8.2	Mounting Media (Image Files)	203
8.2.1	Mounting Physical Media (RMS only)	203
8.2.2	Mounting Virtual Media on HP Servers	204
8.2.3	Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers	206
8.3	Hardware Setup (Bios Configuration).....	210
8.3.1	BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers	210
8.3.2	BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers	217
8.3.3	BIOS Settings for Oracle RMS Servers	226
8.3.4	Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers	231
8.3.5	Using c-Class Enclosure OA to Update Application Blade's BIOS Settings	234
9.	TROUBLESHOOTING THE INSTALLATION	236
9.1	Common Problems and Their Solutions.....	236
9.2	My Oracle Support.....	237

1. PREFACE

This guide provides instructions for installing Oracle Communications Policy Management (also referred to as Policy Management) software for Wireless, Fixed Broadband and Cable networks on Bare Metal

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

Hardware. Where specific procedures are described in related documents, you are referred to those documents.

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

The following Tekelec Platform documents are available from the Oracle Help Center website at http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E57832_01/index.htm

- [1] E4917 - HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.9 (see Note)
- [2] E76846 - HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.10 (see Note)
- [3] E67765 - Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.5
- [4] E70315 - Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.6
- [5] E67825 - Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Upgrade Guide, Release 3.1.5
- [6] E70316 - Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Upgrade Guide, Release 3.1.6
- [7] E53017 - TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Release 6.7.2+
- [8] E53486 Tekelec Platform 7.0.x, Configuration Guide
- [9] E53018 Tekelec Virtualization Operating Environment (TVOE) 3.0, Software Upgrade Procedure
- [10] E54387 - PM&C Incremental Upgrade, Release 5.7 and 6.0

Note: The HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack (HP FUP) is provided for customers who bought their HP hardware through Oracle. If you need assistance, contact My Oracle Support.

The following Policy Management documents are available from the Oracle Help Center website at http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E66963_01/index.htm

- [11] E72271 - 12.2 Release Notes
- [12] E66966 - Configuration Management Platform, Wireless User's Guide, Release 12.2
- [13] E66967 - Configuration Management Platform, Cable User's Guide, Release 12.2
- [14] E66965 - Platform Configuration User's Guide, Release 12.2
- [15] E82607 - Network Impact Report
- [16] E66971 - Policy Front End Wireless User's Guide
- [17] E72270 - Mediation Server User's Guide
- [18] E66972 - Bandwidth on Demand Cable User's Guide
- [19] E66973 - Troubleshooting Reference
- [20] E66969 - SNMP User's Guide
- [21] E81791 - Licensing Information User Manual
- [22] E61553 - Analytics Data Stream Wireless Reference

[23]E66970 - OSSI XML Interface Definitions Reference

The following documents are available from the Oracle Technology Network at <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/topics/security/alerts-086861.html>:

- Critical Patch Update Advisories
- Security Alerts

1.2 ACRONYMS

Table 1. Acronyms and Terms

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

Term	Definition
BoD	Bandwidth on Demand — application manager within a cable network
CMP	Configuration Management Platform — component of a Policy Management system
Data Source	Interface that provides data to components
ECO	Engineering Change Order
FUP	Firmware Upgrade Pack
HP c-Class	HP blade server system
iLO	Integrated Lights-Out — an HP embedded server remote management feature
ILOM	Integrated Lights Out Management. An Oracle embedded server remote management feature
IMI	Internal Management Interface
IPM	Initial Product Manufacture
MA	Management Agent — one of the components in a cable network.
Mediation	Component that interfaces with SPR and Boss to process subscriber profile and service subscription data
MPE	Multimedia Policy Engine — component of a Policy Management System
MRA	Multiprotocol Routing Agent — also referred to as the Policy Front End (PFE) — component of a Policy Management System
NW-CMP	Network-Level CMP in a Multi-Level OAM Policy Deployment
OA	HP Onboard Administrator
OAM	The Operation, Administration, and Management network (The Platform documentation refers to this as the XMI network.)
PCRF	Policy Charging and Rules Function
PFE	Policy Front End (also referred to as Multiprotocol Routing Agent) — component of a Policy Management System
PM&C	Platform Management and Configuration – provides hardware and platform management capabilities at the site level for Tekelec platforms. The PM&C application manages and monitors the platform and installs the TPD operating system from a single interface
REP	A replication network, to carry database replication traffic between servers in a cluster
RMS	Rack-Mounted Server
S-CMP	Site-Level CMP in a Multi-Level OAM Policy Deployment
SIG-A	The Signaling A network (The Platform documentation refers to this as the XSI-1 network)
SIG-B	The Signaling B network
SIG-C	The Signaling C network
SSH	Secure Shell
TPD	Oracle Communications: Tekelec Platform Distribution. A standard Linux-based operating system packaged and distributed by Oracle. TPD provides value-added features for managing installations and upgrades, diagnostics, integration of 3rd party software (open and closed source), build tools, and server management tools.
TVOE	Tekelec Virtualization Operating Environment – a TPD-based virtualization host. TVOE allows for virtualization of servers so that multiple applications can reside on one physical machine while still retaining dedicated resources. This means software solutions that include multiple applications and require several physical machines can be installed on very few (possibly one) TVOE Hosts.
UDR	User Database Repository
XMI	External Management Interface — see OAM
XSI-1	External Signaling Interface 1 — see SIG-A

2. INSTALLATION OVERVIEW

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

This document describes how to install the 12.2 Policy Management application on supported hardware platforms.

At the completion of installation, assuming that networking has been correctly configured, you should be able to do the following:

- Log in to the management interfaces for the Policy Management system from your network
- Access the management interfaces for the Policy Management system from a remote location (specifically, an Oracle support office)
- Verify that there are no alarms for the Policy Management system
- Make a test call through the Policy Management system

2.1 OVERVIEW OF INSTALLED COMPONENTS

This document describes methods utilized and procedures executed to configure hardware to be used with Policy Management software and to install Policy Management components on that hardware.

The Policy Management components are:

- Multimedia Policy Engine (MPE) — a required element that provides policy control decisions and charging control
- Policy Front End, also called the Multimedia Routing Agent (MRA) — an optional element that maintains bindings that link subscribers to MPE devices
- Configuration Management Platform (CMP) — a required element that provides element management functions
- Management Agent (MA) — an element in a cable network that collects network and topology information to make routing and policy decisions
- Bandwidth on Demand (BoD) Application Manager — a required element in a cable network that manages subscriber resources and data
- Mediation — a required element in a Wireless-c network that manages subscriber resources and data

2.2 OVERVIEW OF THE INSTALLATION PROCESS

There are two starting points for installation:

1. Equipment ordered from, pre-configured from, and installed by Oracle
2. Equipment ordered and installed by you

In the first case, there will be a known pre-configuration of the equipment that can reduce the installation time.

In the second case, you should verify the hardware installation and cabling before starting. Also, additional steps will be required for initial configuration of systems. In this case, it is possible that firmware revisions may be newer than the qualified baseline. This document may not be enough to deal with all issues for your installation. At a minimum, the hardware configuration and cabling Technical References for the installation will be needed. This document assumes that all hardware meets Oracle specifications.

You can configure the Policy Management software to operate in an environment of multiple internal and external networks, including the following:

- For Oracle hardware, the Oracle Integrated Lights Out Management (ILOM) feature, an independent subsystem inside an Oracle server which is used for out-of-band remote access

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

- For HP hardware, the integrated Lights Out (iLO) feature, an independent subsystem inside an HP server which is used for out-of-band remote access
- For all configurations (c-Class and RMS), an administrative (OAM) network, to carry internal management traffic between Policy Management servers
- A signaling (SIG-A) network, to carry signaling traffic between Policy Management servers and an external network (a second signaling network, SIG-B or SIG-C, is also supported)
- A replication (REP) network, to carry database replication traffic between servers in a cluster
- For Cable environment, a backplane network to connect two servers in an HA (High-Availability) configuration

These networks must be cabled in a specific topology of internal cabinet cabling, switches, and external connections supported by the platform software. Different hardware requires different topologies. This document assumes that the specific topology appropriate for your hardware is installed and verified correct.

Installing Policy Management software involves a number of steps that you or others must complete in the following order:

1. Planning the installation. See Section 3, "[Planning Your Installation](#)."
2. Reviewing and meeting system requirements. See Section 4, "[System Requirements](#)".
3. Preparing the hardware and operating-system environment (including management servers if required). See Section 5, "[Preparing the System Environment](#)".
4. Installing the Policy Management software. See Section 6, "[Configure Policy Application Servers in Wireless Mode](#)" or Section 7, "[Configure Policy Application Servers in Cable Mode](#)"

3. PLANNING YOUR INSTALLATION

This section provides a planning overview of the Installation activities.

3.1 ABOUT PLANNING YOUR POLICY MANAGEMENT INSTALLATION

To install and use Policy Management software, you must plan your system by performing the following tasks:

- Determine the services and the mode you want to provide; for example, Wireless, Wireless-C (see note), or Cable.
- Determine the names and addresses of network elements used in your network with which Policy Management will interact.
- Determine the names and addresses of external data sources used in your network with which the Policy Management software will interact; for example, subscriber profile repositories, on-line charging servers, and offline charging servers.
- Choose the Policy Management components you want to install.
- Install Policy Management software and any optional components.
- Configure each Policy Management component.

Note: Wireless-C supports a wireless system supporting a Mediation server; SMS Notification Statistics; and SCTP counters.

Oracle recommends contacting Oracle Consulting regarding your plans.

3.2 ABOUT TEST SYSTEMS AND PRODUCTION SYSTEMS

Some customers prefer to test the Policy Management software in a separate environment to verify its functions, behavior, and performance before introducing it to their networks. Oracle recommends that a lab solution be installed that is a replica of the product environment. A lab solution can be used to test and verify use cases prior to being implemented in a production environment, as well as test new configurations or features ahead of implementation.

A test system could focus on only one integration point at one time; for example, throughput or connectivity. In some cases, a test system could use a traffic simulator rather than actual subscriber data during testing.

For detailed information about Policy Management components, see the [Configuration Management Platform, Wireless User's Guide](#) or the [Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide](#).

See Section 4.0, "[System Requirements](#)," for information about required hardware and software.

3.3 SYSTEM DEPLOYMENT PLANNING

The decision of what interconnect method to use depends on the server hardware and the implementation scale, and you should decide before placing an equipment order.

3.3.1 Networking (c-Class Hardware)

HP c-Class systems are connected to your network using Ethernet uplinks directly from enclosure switches. The HP Proliant 6120XG or 6125XLG switches are currently supported with an uplink capacity of 10 GB or higher.

3.3.2 *Networking (RMS Hardware)*

Oracle and Netra X5-2 RMS, as well as HP RMS, are each connected individually to your network using IP networking switches. This includes installed interfaces NIC1, NIC2, and iLO.

3.4 ABOUT INSTALLING AND MAINTAINING A SECURE SYSTEM

The following principles are fundamental for establishing and maintaining a secure system:

- Change the factory default passwords immediately, but keep a secure record of your changes. This includes the **root** user passwords to servers as well as the passwords to the administrative accounts for HP OA, Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C), and the Policy Management CMP system.
- Keep software up-to-date. You must keep the product and the installed software dependencies up-to-date. This includes the latest product release and any patches that apply to it.
- Keep up-to-date on security information. Oracle regularly issues security-related patch updates and security alerts. You must install all security patches as soon as possible. See related [Oracle patch and security bulletins](#) for more information. See also Section 4.1.5, "[About Critical Patch Updates.](#)"

4. SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

This chapter describes the hardware, firmware, operating system, and software requirements for installing software.

4.1 SOFTWARE REQUIREMENTS

The Policy Management software executes as a set of applications under an operating environment on server hardware (some of which has its own management software). Later releases of software may be posted as per the latest Oracle engineering change order (ECO).

4.1.1 Operating Environment

Tekelec Platform (TPD)—ISO or USB image file:

- *TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64.iso*
- *TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64.usb*

Tekelec Virtual Operating Environment (TVOE)—ISO or USB image file:

- *TVOE-3.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-x86_64.iso*
- *TVOE-3.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-x86_64.usb*

Note: TVOE is used for the PM&C (Platform Management and Configuration) server

4.1.2 Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C)

For HP c-Class hardware, the Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C) server is required. PM&C is an Oracle application that provides tools to manage multiple enclosures and server software, as well as networking equipment (enclosure switches). The Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C) server can also be used for RMS installations but is optional.

- *PMAC-6.0.3.0.2_60.28.0-x86_64.iso*

4.1.3 Policy Management Application

The Policy Management software consists of the following products:

- CMP: *cmp-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*
- MPE: *mpe-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*
- MRA (PFE): *mra-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*
- MA: *ma-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*
- BoD: *bod-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*
- Mediation: *mediation-12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso*

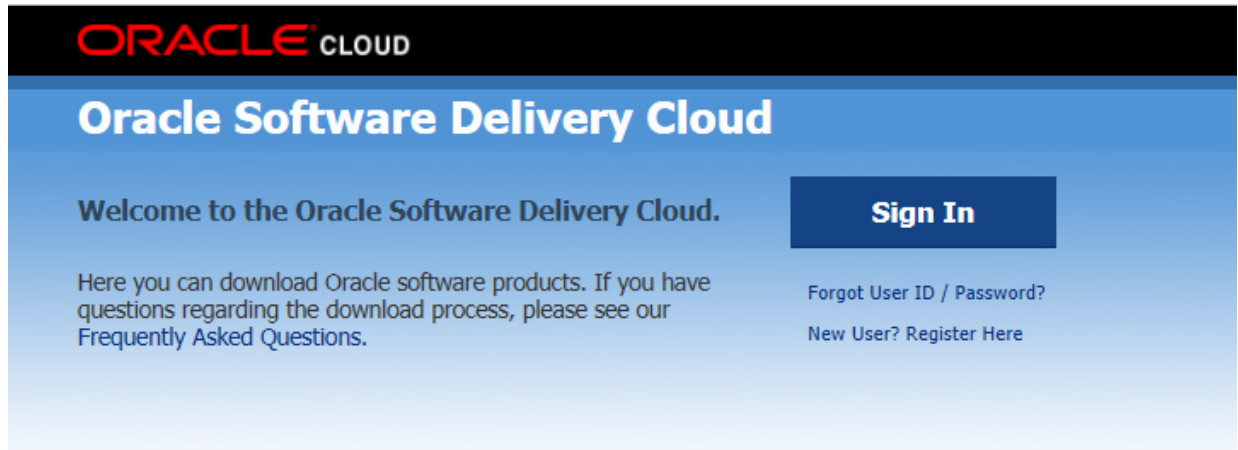
4.1.4 Acquiring Software

Customers:

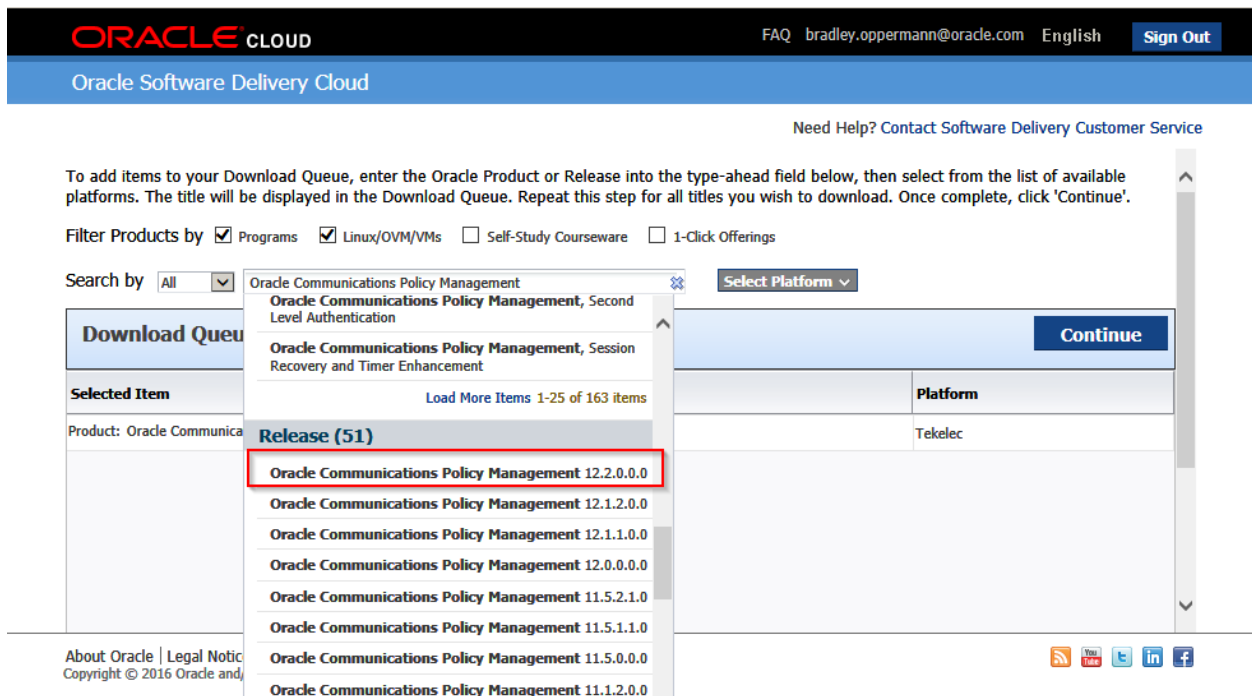
If you already have a commercial license you should download your software from the [Oracle Software Delivery Cloud](#), which is specifically designed for customer fulfillment.

For patches, see [My Oracle Support](#).

Note: The following is an example of downloading the Policy Management software.



Set the “Search by” field to “Oracle Communications Policy Management” select “12.2.0.0.0”



Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

Choose Continue

ORACLE CLOUD FAQ [bradley.oppermann@oracle.com](#) English [Sign Out](#)

Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

Need Help? [Contact Software Delivery Customer Service](#)

To add items to your Download Queue, enter the Oracle Product or Release into the type-ahead field below, then select from the list of available platforms. The title will be displayed in the Download Queue. Repeat this step for all titles you wish to download. Once complete, click 'Continue'.

Filter Products by Programs Linux/OVM/VMs Self-Study Courseware 1-Click Offerings

Search by All Select Platform

Download Queue		Continue
Selected Item	Platform	
Release: Oracle Communications Policy Management 12.2.0.0.0	Tekelec	

About Oracle | Legal Notices | Terms of Use | Your Privacy Rights
Copyright © 2016 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.



Choose Oracle Communications Policy Management checkbox for 12.2.0.0 and Continue

ORACLE CLOUD FAQ [bradley.oppermann@oracle.com](#) English [Sign Out](#)

Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

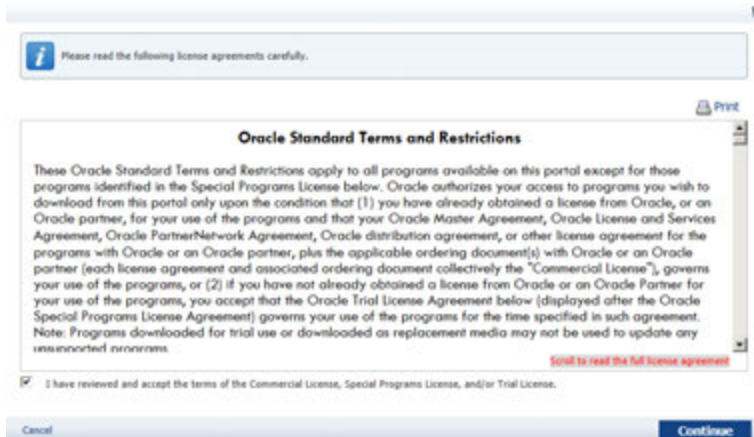
Need Help? [Contact Software Delivery Customer Service](#)

If more than one release is available, you may select an alternate release by clicking on the 'Select Alternate Release...' link.

Download Queue				
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Release	Selected Item	Applicable Terms & Restrictions	Size	Published Date
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Oracle Communications Policy Management 12.2.0.0.0	Oracle Standard Terms and Restrictions	25.5 GB	Dec 13, 2016

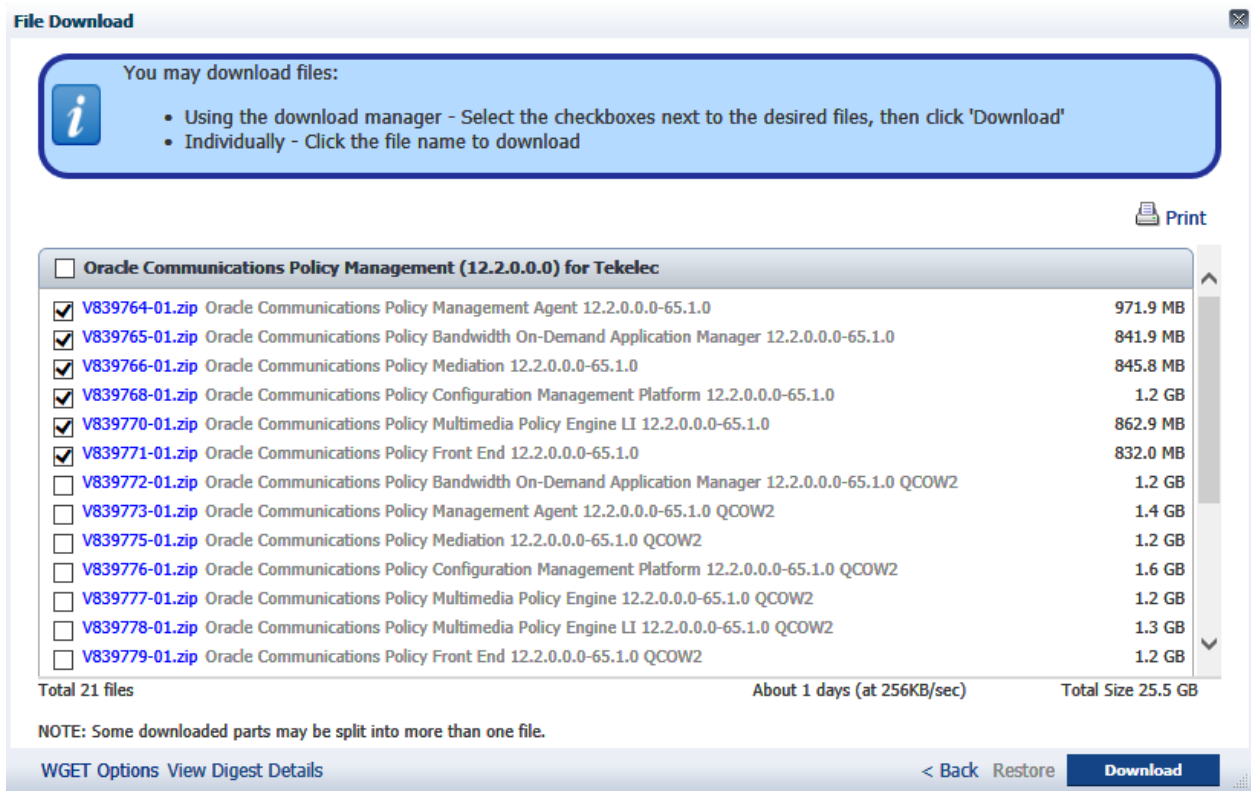
[< Return to Search](#) [Continue](#)

Confirm the License Agreement



Choose the required Software files in their .zip compressed format

Note: Choose "View Digest Details" in the lower left corner to see MD5sum and SHA-1 references



4.1.5 About Critical Patch Updates

Install all Oracle Critical Patch Updates as soon as possible. To download critical patch updates, find out about security alerts, and enable email notifications about critical patch updates, see [Oracle patch and security bulletins](#).

4.1.6 Additional Software Requirements

For an HP c-Class hardware installation, the PM&C netConfig tool uses network configuration files to configure enclosure and aggregation switches. The Policy Management ISO image files include switch configuration template files. You should edit these template files to make them specific for your installation and place them on the PM&C server after it is installed.

Note: These files may change from release to release.

4.2 HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

The following servers are supported:

- Oracle X5-2 server (rack mount)
- Netra X5-2 server (rack mount)
- HP DL360/DL380 (G6/G8/G9 RMS)
- HP c-Class server (BL460 G6/G8/G9 Blade Server)

Note: A c-Class installation requires one dedicated management server running PM&C software for each site. For an RMS installation PM&C is optional.

Also have on hand:

- HP or Oracle firmware ISO or USB image files
- If you are installing USB files, USB flash drives (5GB or larger) for creating bootable USB media
- Laptop
- Console cable (to connect the laptop to switches in a c-Class environment)
- Category 5 Ethernet cable (to connect the laptop to the local switch, for serial over LAN console connections, and to access system GUIs)
- HP Blade Monitor/Keyboard/USB front handle cable (optional, for console and USB access directly to servers in a c-Class environment)

4.3 ACQUIRING FIRMWARE

Several procedures in this document pertain to upgrading firmware on various servers and hardware devices. This process varies depending on from whom you purchased your hardware.

The following Policy Management 12.2 servers and devices may require firmware updates:

- Oracle X5-2 RMS server
- Netra X5-2 RMS Server
- HP DL360/DL380 RMS server
- HP c7000 Blade System Enclosure Components:
 - Onboard Administrator
 - HP 6125XLG blade switches
 - HP BL480c/BL460c blade servers

You must complete all firmware updates before putting the Policy Management system into service.

4.3.1 Acquiring Firmware for Oracle Hardware

If you have purchased Oracle X5-2 or Netra X5-2 servers directly from Oracle, see the discussion of Firmware Components in the [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.5](#) or [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.6](#) for information on how to acquire the firmware.

Note: You can obtain firmware upgrade media for the Oracle X5-2 RMS from the Oracle Help Center website. Specific downloading instructions are in the [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.5](#) or [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Release Notes, Release 3.1.6](#).

4.3.2 Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Through Oracle

The [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.9](#) or [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.10](#), are provided for customers who bought their HP hardware through Oracle. Each describes new functionalities, fixed bugs, known bugs, and any additional installation and configuration instructions required, relative to this release.

For Policy Management 12.2, the minimum supported firmware is 2.2.9. Contact *My Oracle Support* for assistance if needed.

Firmware is available as:

- ISO or USB image files of HP Smart Update Firmware:
 - FW2_SPP-2.2.8.0.0_10.43.0.iso
 - FW2_SPP-2.2.8.0.0_10.43.0.usb
- ISO image files of HP Misc Firmware ISO:
 - FW2_MISC-2.2.8.0.0_10.43.0.iso

Note: Later releases may be posted as per the latest Oracle ECO.

4.3.3 Acquiring Firmware for HP Hardware Purchased Directly

If you have purchased your own HP hardware, Oracle does not directly provide you with firmware upgrade media. See [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.9](#) or [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.10](#).

4.4 INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

You must determine and record the IP addresses that you will need to configure the equipment. You should also record switch ports, cable drops, and IP network address assignments for your network.

Be certain of the equipment location and the system identification method. Oracle recommends that you prepare, or have at hand, enclosure layout diagrams.

4.4.1 Logins/Passwords

The standard configuration steps will configure standard passwords for **root**, **admusr**, **pmadmin**, **HP OA**, and some other standard accounts referenced in this procedure. These passwords are not included in this document. Contact Oracle Support for this information.

Initial login to an HP server/module is configured by HP at the factory. However, if you purchased your equipment from Oracle, then the HP passwords are replaced with the standard passwords.

When first logging in to the Configuration Management Platform (CMP), the management interface for the Policy Management product, three login IDs are available by default:

- **admin** This is the default administrator user with all privileges.
- **operator** This is the default operator user with all privileges except user administration.
- **viewer** This is the default read-only user.

The initial password for all three of these login IDs is **policies**. You are required to change the password the first time each login ID is used.

5. PREPARING THE SYSTEM ENVIRONMENT

To install the software, you first need to prepare the system environment with the following:

- Supported hardware servers (installed or racked), powered and cabled together
 - Each server includes the required firmware revision
 - Each server includes the required operating system software at the required revision level
- Supported interconnection switches, either enclosure switches or aggregation (network) switches

To prepare and configure servers, you will also need their login information.

5.1 PREPARING AN ORACLE X5-2 RMS ENVIRONMENT

The following procedures are specific to Oracle X5-2 and Netra X5-2 RMS servers.

5.1.1 ILOM Configuration Procedure

Oracle Integrated Lights Out Management (ILOM) is an independent subsystem inside an Oracle server which is used for out-of-band remote access. You must configure the ILOM subsystem.

Prerequisites:

To complete this procedure, you need the following information and material:

- Static IP address, netmask, and default gateway of the server
- The current date and time
- The passwords you intend to define for the default Administrator account and the root user (`root_password`)
- Local console access (monitor/keyboard) or a laptop connected to the server's serial console

The ILOM configuration procedure is described in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#) (Appendix F).

5.1.2 Updating Oracle Server Firmware

Each server must have the correct release of firmware.

The procedure for updating Oracle server firmware is described in the [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Upgrade Guide, Release 3.1.5](#) and [Oracle Firmware Upgrade Pack, Upgrade Guide, Release 3.1.6](#).

5.1.3 ILOM Web GUI Settings

After you have performed the ILOM configuration procedure, ILOM is accessible through its web GUI interface. You should now change the default password for the **root** account.

To complete this procedure, you need to record the new password for the **root** account (`root_password`).

To change the password, while in the ILOM web interface, navigate to **ILOM Administration > User Management > User Accounts**. Select **Edit**, change the **root** account password, and click **Save**.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

The procedure to update ILOM web GUI settings is described in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix F)

5.1.4 BIOS Configuration Oracle and Netra X5-2 RMS Server

The procedures for BIOS configuration are located in section [10.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers](#) of this document. BIOS configurations are also referenced in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix E)

After completing ILOM and BIOS configuration, the Oracle RMS server will be ready to IPM.

5.1.5 IPM of an Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

Every Oracle X5-2 RMS server must go through an initial product manufacturing (IPM) procedure to install software on it.

Prerequisites:

To complete this procedure, you need the following materials and to perform these installation steps:

- TPD ISO image file ([Section 4.1 Software Requirements](#))

Additional information regarding the IPM install procedure is described in the [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#) (Section 3.3)

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

STEP #	This procedure will install system OS (IPM) of the server Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. Needed material: <ul style="list-style-type: none">- TPD ISO image file to be used for virtual mount accessible on laptop or- USB device prepared with bootable version of TPD image IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Insert Bootable USB Media/mount TPD ISO	Create a bootable USB drive with the TPD ISO image file. Use the method provided in the “README.txt” file that is included with the downloaded Policy Software or other suitable method for creating a bootable USB device. There are several readily available utilities to achieve this. Then insert the USB drive locally into the server and reboot the server to the bootable USB device. Then proceed to Step 3 of this procedure if using this method If local access to the server is not available and network access to the iLOM of the server has been enabled you can use the remote console capability of the X5-2 iLOM as per the following procedure See Section “8.1.2: Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers” Login to iLOM web interface and Navigate to “System Information” → “Summary” then launch

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

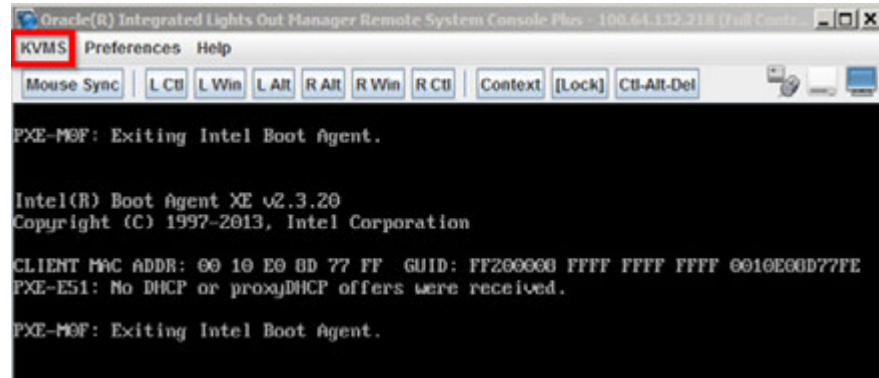
5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

the remote console:

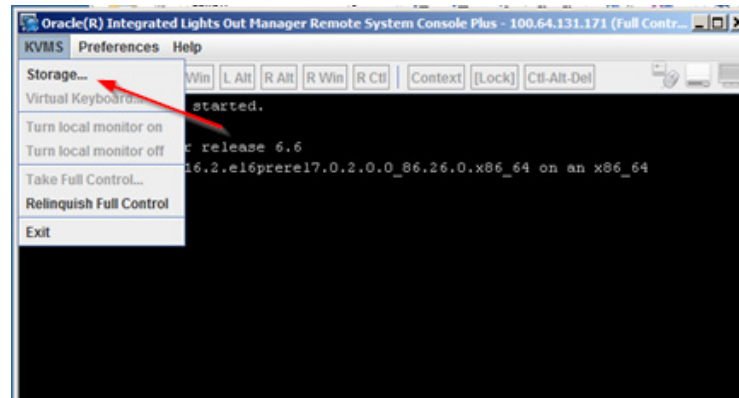
Note: This will launch the “video redirection” console which is preferred to perform these procedures



The iLOM remote system console will launch. If no OS has been previously installed something similar to the following will be presented:



From “KVMS”, click “Storage”:

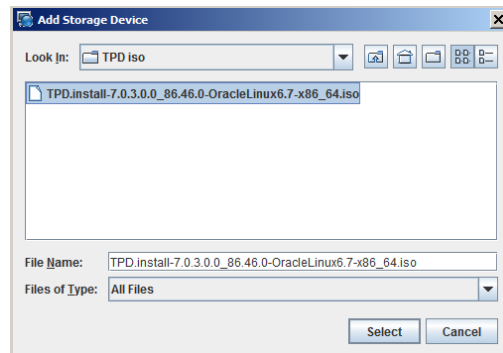


In the Storage devices form that opens up, click on the “Add” button.

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server



Browse to ISO image file that will be mounted and click on “Select”.






The Storage Devices form will now display the selected ISO image file. Highlight the file and the Connect option will now be available at the bottom of the form. Click on “Connect”. And then Confirm “OK”.



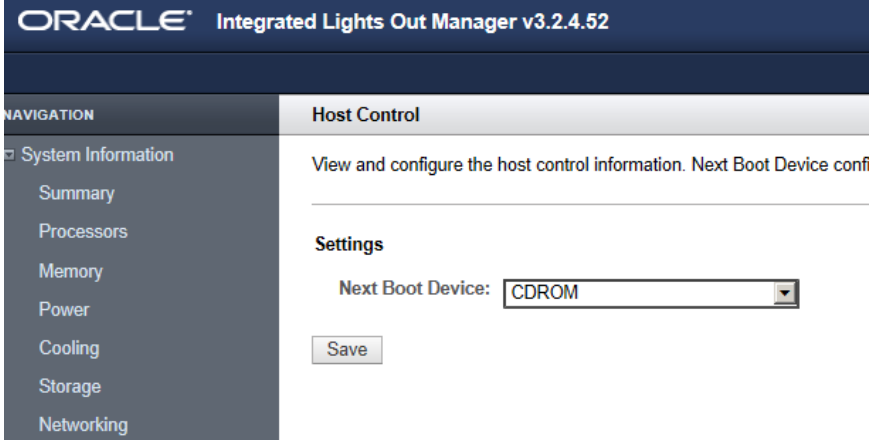
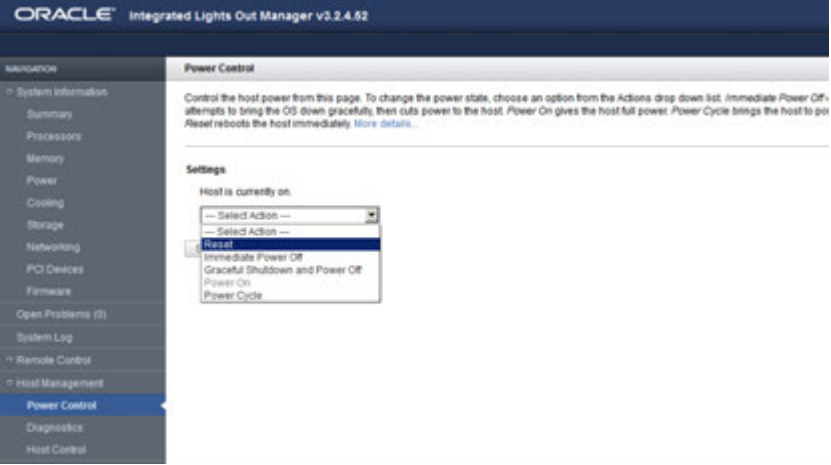

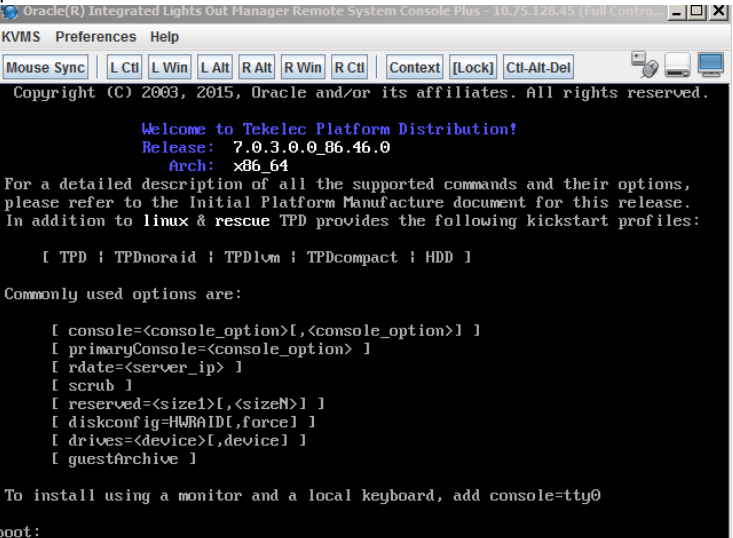
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

		<p>The Storage Devices will indicate that the ISO image has successfully mounted/connected. Leave this window open.</p> 
2. 	Console: Boot server, wait for TPD boot: form	<p>Return to the iLO summary page and navigate to Host Management -> Host Control</p>  <p>Change the drop down tab to <CDROM>. And click on “save”. This will cause the server to boot to the virtually mounted ISO image from the previous steps.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

		 <p>ORACLE Integrated Lights Out Manager v3.2.4.52</p> <p>NAVIGATION Host Control</p> <p>System Information View and configure the host control information. Next Boot Device confi</p> <p>Summary</p> <p>Processors</p> <p>Memory</p> <p>Power</p> <p>Cooling</p> <p>Storage</p> <p>Networking</p> <p>Settings</p> <p>Next Boot Device: CDROM</p> <p>Save</p> <p>In the iLO Navigate to Host Management -> Power Control and select “Reset” from the drop down menu to reboot the server. Click on “Save” and the server will reboot to the mounted ISO image.</p>  <p>ORACLE Integrated Lights Out Manager v3.2.4.52</p> <p>NAVIGATION Power Control</p> <p>System Information Control the host power from this page. To change the power state, choose an option from the Actions drop down list. Immediate Power Off attempts to bring the OI down gracefully, then cuts power to the host. Power On gives the host full power. Power Cycle brings the host to po. Reset reboots the host immediately. More details...</p> <p>Settings</p> <p>Host is currently on:</p> <p>Selected Action</p> <p>Selected Action</p> <p>Reset</p> <p>Immediate Power Off</p> <p>Graceful Shutdown and Power Off</p> <p>Power On</p> <p>Power Cycle</p>
<p>3.</p> 	<p>Console: Enter TPD boot: command with correct options</p> <p>TPD install takes 20 – 40 minutes to complete</p>	<p>The server has now booted to the virtually mounted TPD ISO image and the following screen is presented:</p>  <p>Oracle(R) Integrated Lights Out Manager Remote System Console Plus - 10.75.128.45 (Full Control)</p> <p>KVMS Preferences Help</p> <p>Mouse Sync L Ctl L Win L Alt R Alt R Win R Ctl Context [Lock] Ctl-Alt-Del</p> <p>Copyright (C) 2003, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p> <p>Welcome to Tekelec Platform Distribution! Release: 7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0 Arch: x86_64</p> <p>For a detailed description of all the supported commands and their options, please refer to the Initial Platform Manufacture document for this release. In addition to linux & rescue TPD provides the following kickstart profiles:</p> <p>[TPD TPDnoraidd TPDlvm TPDcompact HDD]</p> <p>Commonly used options are:</p> <p>[console=<console_option>[,<console_option>]] [primaryConsole=<console_option>] [rdate=<server_ip>] [scrub] [reserved=<size>[,<sizeN>]] [diskconfig=HWRRAID[,force]] [drives=<device>[,device]] [guestarchive]</p> <p>To install using a monitor and a local keyboard, add console=tty0</p> <p>boot: _</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

“IPM” the server using the following command at the boot prompt:

```
•boot: TPDnoraiddiskconfig=HWRAID,force console=tty0
```

To install using a monitor and a local keyboard, add `console=tty0`

```
boot: TPDnoraiddiskconfig=HWRAID,force console=tty0
```

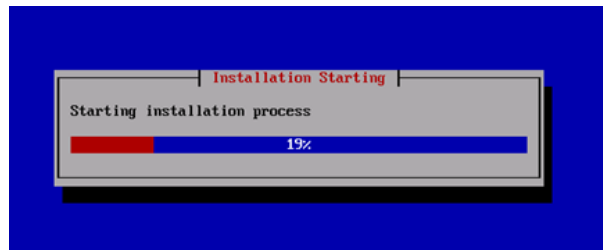
Note: If a direct connection to the serial console is being used for this step instead of the remote iLO console it is not necessary to include “`console=tty0`”

After the command has been entered press the carriage return and you will see something like the following screen indicating that the OS is installing

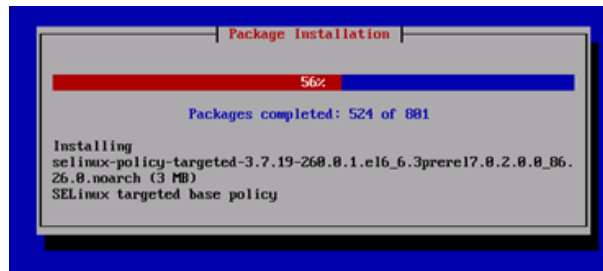
```
boot: TPDnoraiddiskconfig=HWRAID,force console=tty0
Loading vmlinuz.....
Loading initrd.img.....
```

Note: If a non-Policy Management application was previously installed on the server, you may have to clean up logical disc partitions created by the application. Depending on the disc partitioning, this may add up to four hours to the installation process. Refer to [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#) (Section 3.4)

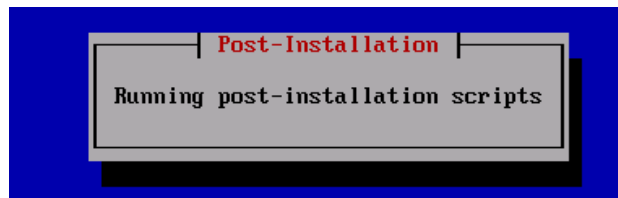
The TPD installation takes 20-40 minutes to complete, starting with some checks then installation starts:



Then you will be able to monitor the packages installation progress:

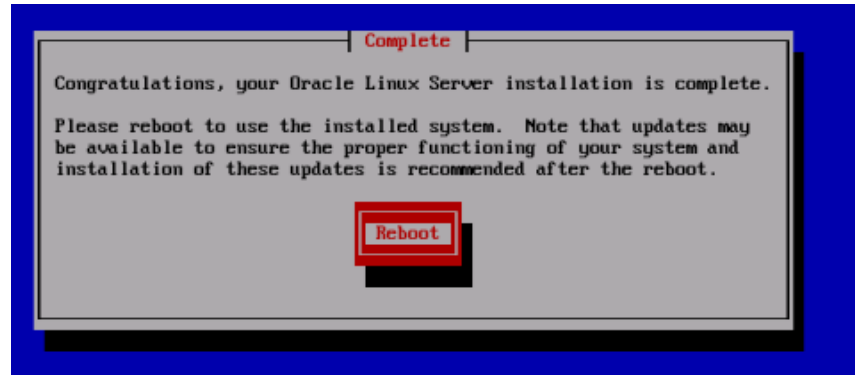


Then post installation scripts kick off:



After IPM the process is completed, you are prompted to press **Enter** to reboot the server.

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server



At this time the media can be disconnected. Using the iLOM's remote console, Add "Storage Devices" form, unmount the image from the ILOM remote console. Then highlighting the remote console dialog window press **Enter** to reboot the server as per the following steps. .

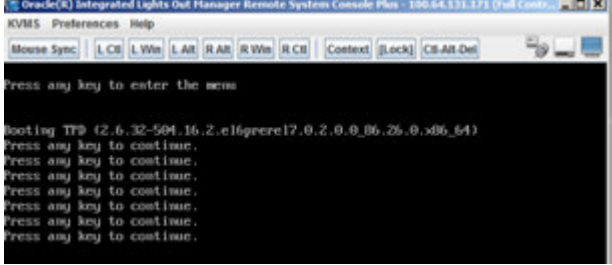
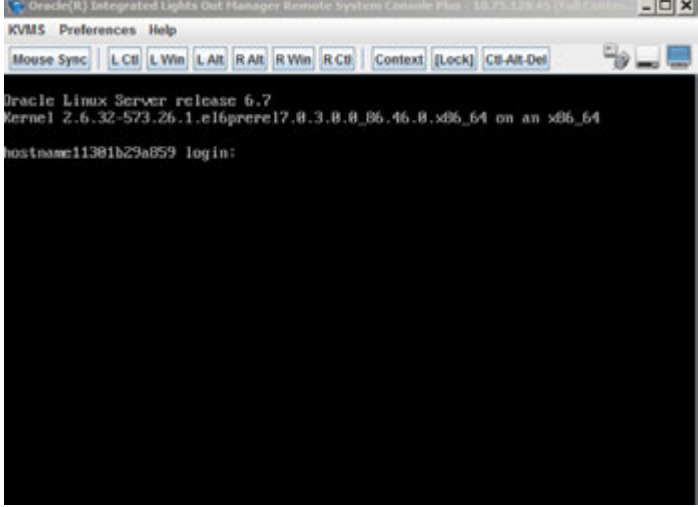
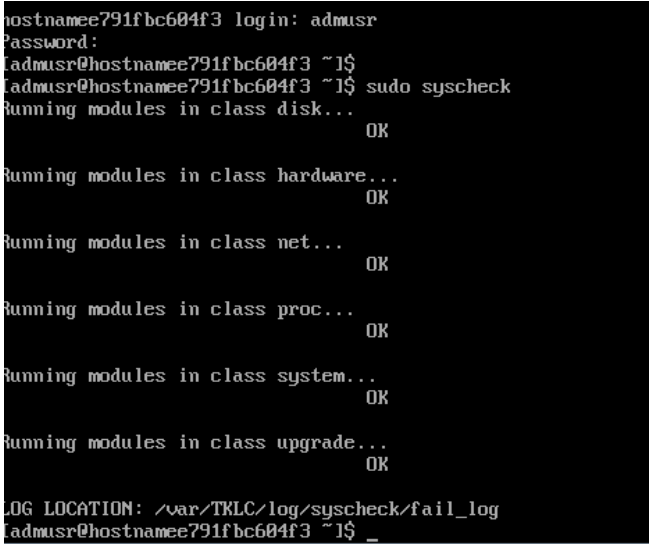
In the case a bootable USB device was used, remove the USB device

To unmount the ISO image file select the file and click on "Disconnect if the file was previously "connected"



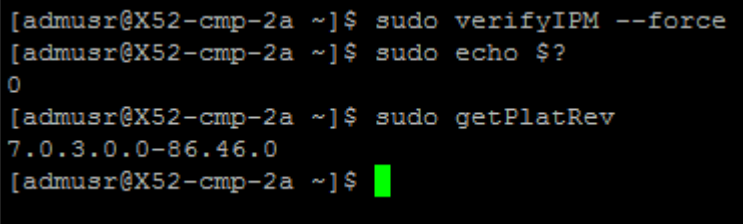
Press **Enter** to boot the server from TPD and finish up the installation. The installed OS can be seen booting up

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

		
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Login prompt</p>	<p>Once the server reboots, the login prompt is displayed. Login into the server with admusr.</p> <p>Note: The server will reboot itself more than once during the TPD installation process.</p>  <p>If no login prompt is displayed after waiting 15 minutes, contact Oracle Customer Support for assistance.</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Run syscheck</p>	<p>From the CLI prompt, run the "sudo syscheck" command. This checks the health of each of the major subcomponents of the system, and displays an "OK" if all passed, or a descriptive error of the problem if anything failed. The following shows a successful run of syscheck, where all subsystems pass, indicating the post-install process is complete.</p>  <p>If any of the modules return an error, do not continue; contact Oracle Customer Support and report the error condition.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.5: IPM of Oracle X5-2 RMS Server

<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Verify Install success</p>	<p>Verify that IPM completed successfully by checking the install logs for errors and displaying the install TPD platform version. . To do this, log in as admusr and then run the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyIPM (--force if needed) \$ sudo echo \$? (should return 0 errors) \$ sudo getPlatRev (should return the current TPD version installed)</pre>  <pre>[admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo verifyIPM --force [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo echo \$? 0 [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo getPlatRev 7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0 [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$</pre> <p>Previous screen shot shows no errors returned which indicates the TPD installation process is successfully completed. If errors are found, contact Oracle Customer Support.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

5.1.6 Installing Policy Management Software

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>Use this procedure to install the Policy Management software on an Oracle rack mount server (RMS).</p> <p>Prerequisites: Before beginning this procedure, you must have the following material and information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The appropriate release and application package(s) of the Policy Management software, either on physical media to mount directly on the server or available as an ISO image file to mount virtually. • Access to the server, either directly or through the ILOM remote console. • If you are using the ILOM remote console, you need the IP address of the ILOM system and the login information. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number</p> <p>Note: Two methods for installing the Policy Application are presented here. The 1st is to use a USB drive inserted locally into the server. This is the preferred method. The 2nd is to use the virtual mount capability of the iLO remote console over a network. This method is dependent on having a good network connection from the workstation where the ISO is located to the target server iLO. The browser used to attach the ISO and launch the server iLO remote console should be co-located with the ISO file repository. Additionally any method that places the Policy Application ISO image file in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory of the target server is acceptable.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Make the Policy Application ISO images available for installation</p>	<p>Copy the Policy Application ISO image file (CMP/MPE/MRA/BOD/MA/Mediation) onto a USB drive and insert the USB drive locally into the server.</p> <p>Connect to the server Console or Remote Console:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - using a VGA Display and USB Keyboard, or

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

- using the Server iLO port and iLO Web Interface (to access Remote Console)

Proceed to step #2 of this procedure

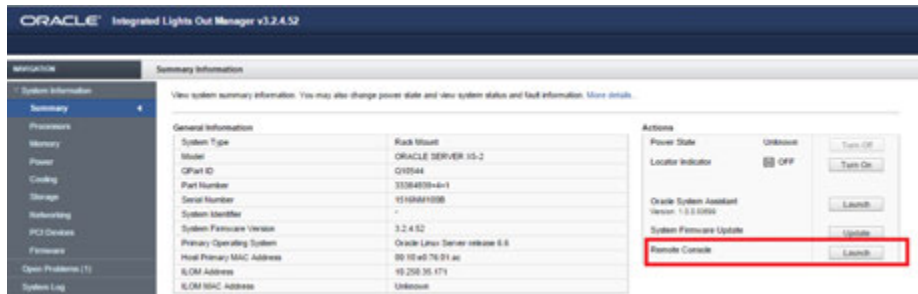
Or

If you are using the ILOM remote console and have the Policy Management software as an ISO image file, do the following:

- a. Open a browser, enter the URL of the ILOM system, and log in. For example:



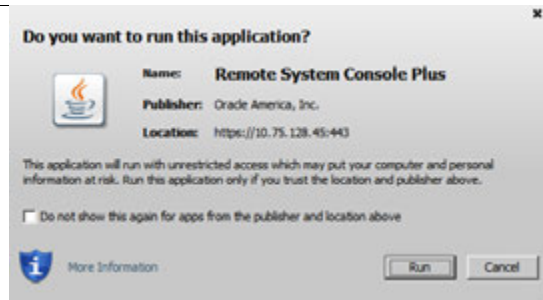
- b. Select System Information > Summary. The Summary Information page opens. Under Actions, locate Remote Console and click Launch. For example:



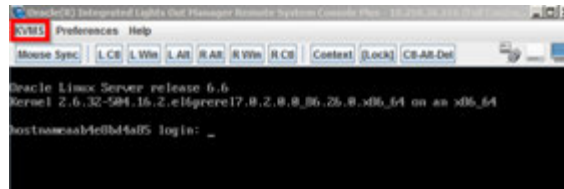
- c. The ILOM remote system console starts. Select “continue” and “run” if needed.



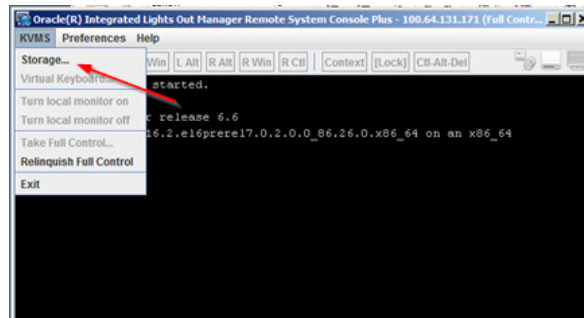
5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software



d. Select KVMS > Storage. The Storage Devices window opens.



e. From "KVMS", click "Storage":



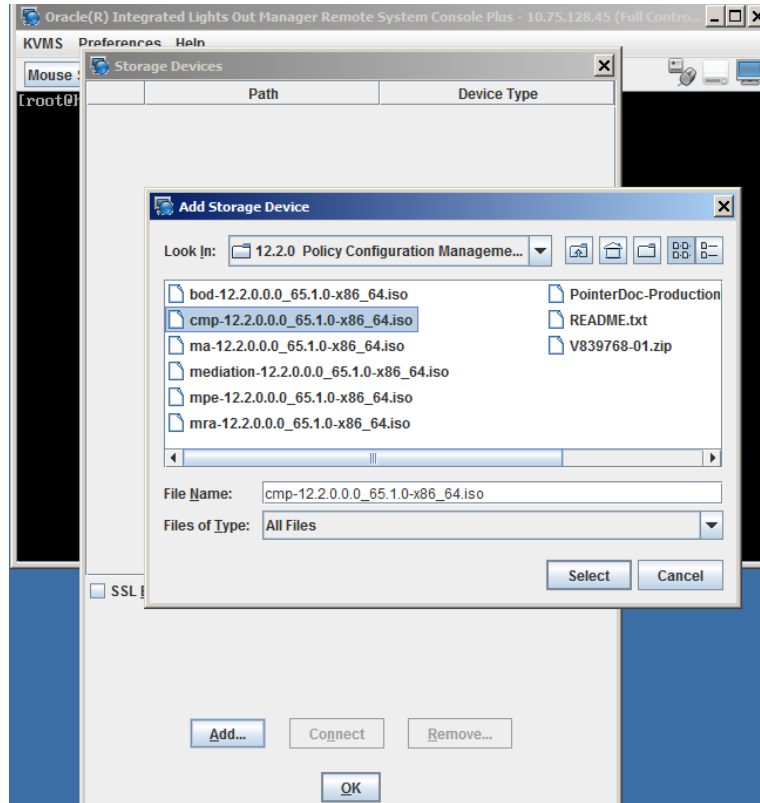
f. In the Storage Devices window, click Add... The Add Storage Device window opens.



5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

- g. Browse to the ISO image file to mount and click Select.

Note: Make certain that the ISO image file selected (CMP/MPE/MRA/BOD/MA/MEDIATION) is the correct one for the target server according to the Policy Solution Design!




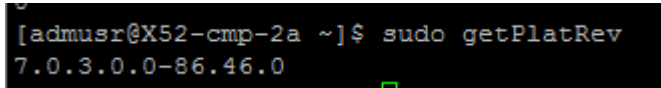
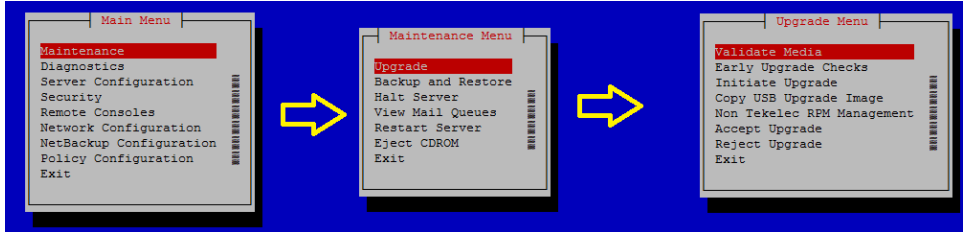
The Add Storage Device window closes, and the Storage Devices window displays the selected ISO image file.

- h. Select the ISO image file. The Connect button, at the bottom of the form, becomes enabled. For example:

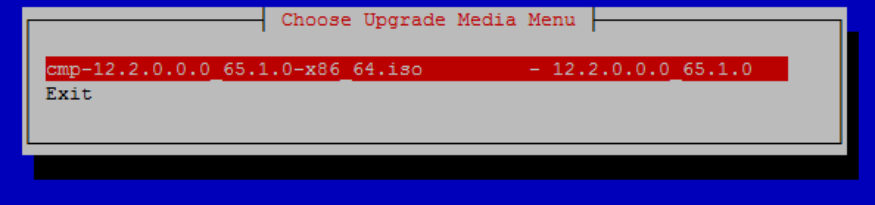
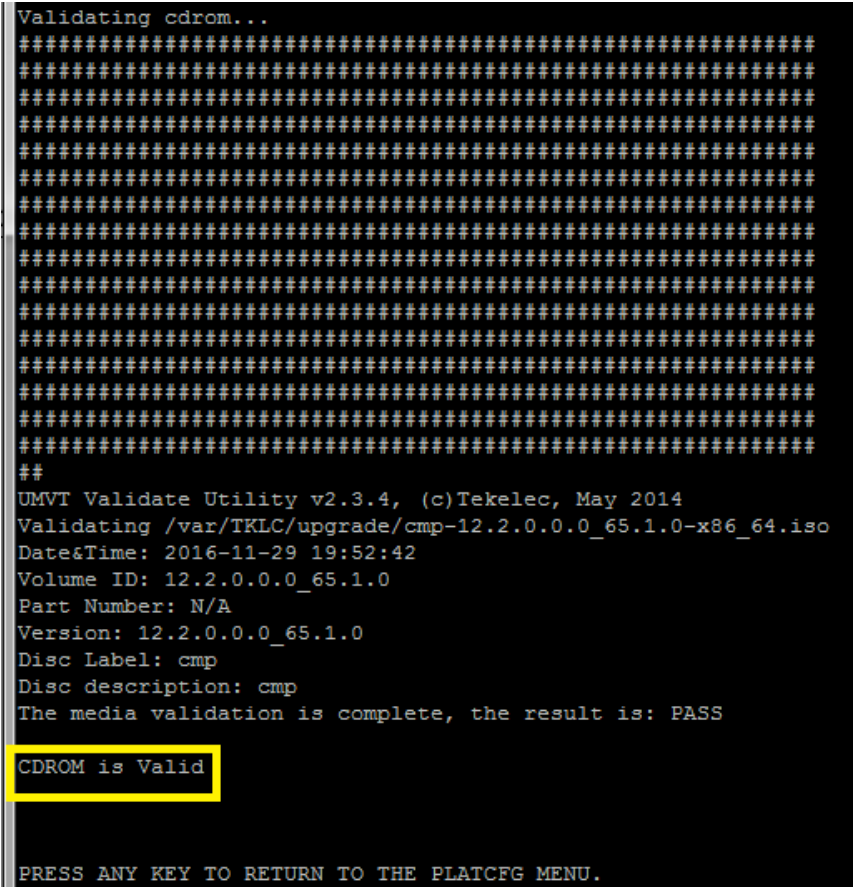

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		 <p>Click Connect and then OK. The Storage Devices window indicates that the ISO image file is successfully connected. For example:</p>  <p>Leave this window open.</p>
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Console: Login as <admusr></p>	<p>Connect to the server console, either directly or remotely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directly — using a display and keyboard • Remotely — using the iLO Remote Console and the server iLO port <p>Login as <admusr> if not already logged in.</p>


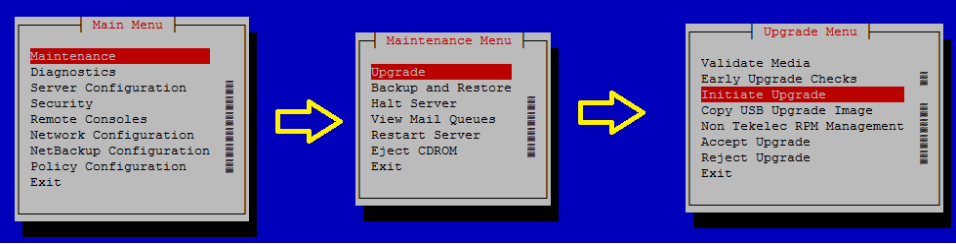
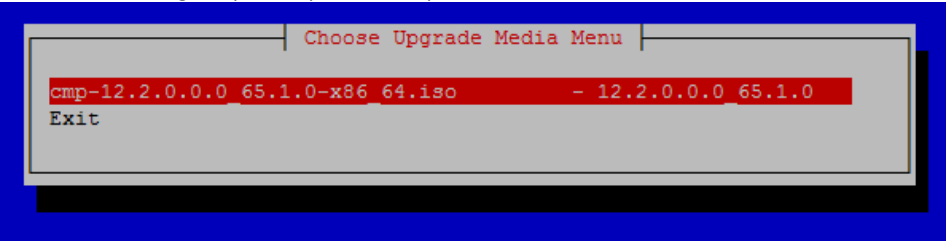
5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: verify platform revision</p>	<p>You can verify the platform revision by logging in as the user admusr and entering the following command: <code>\$ sudo getPlatRev</code> For example:</p> <pre>#sudo getPlatRev</pre> 
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: run platcfg and validate the media</p>	<p>Enter the following command to start the Platform Configuration utility:</p> <pre>#sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>The Platform Configuration Main menu opens.</p> <p>From the Main menu, navigate to Maintenance > Upgrade > Validate Media, select the ISO image file, and press Enter.</p>  <p>Note: Depending on the method used the platcfg utility will search for any mounted ISOs and if successful will display the Policy Application ISO image file to install</p> <p>For example:</p>

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		 <p>Then choose the ISO image:</p> <p>The utility displays “Validating media or cdrom”... and a series of hash marks (#) signs. When it finishes it displays information about the ISO image file and the message the CDROM or Media is Valid. The following example shows a successful validation:</p> 
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: verify platform revision</p>	<p>Press Enter to return to the menu. Scroll to exit and press enter again.</p>  <p>The Main menu opens.</p>

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		
<p>6. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Select ISO to install, and confirm</p> <p>Application install may take 20 Minutes – if installing with a virtual mount, it will take longer</p>	<p>From the Main menu, navigate to Maintenance > Upgrade > Initiate Upgrade. The Choose Upgrade Media Menu window opens. For example:</p>  <p>Select the ISO image as per the previous step.</p>  <p>Note: The server will reboot twice during the installation process, Do Not Remove the media at this time.</p>
<p>7. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Verify Policy install version</p>	<p>After the application has completed installation log back in to the command line as admusr and confirm the installed TPD platform version and the policy application version.</p> <pre> \$appRev mass-cmp-1b login: admusr Password: Last login: Fri Jan 20 17:11:38 on tty1 [admusr@mass-cmp-1b ~]\$ appRev Install Time: Thu Jan 19 17:07:20 2017 Product Name: cmp Product Release: 12.2.0.0_65.1.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.0.3.0_86.46.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.0.3.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64.iso ISO name: cmp-12.2.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.7 </pre> <p>Verify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TPD revision installed • Policy application installed and its revision

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.1.6: Installing Policy Management Software

<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Verify Install success</p>	<p>Inspect the file <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</code> to verify that the installation succeeded; look for the line “Upgrade returned success!” near the end of the file. The following example shows a successful installation:</p> <pre> 1467617932::This is an install 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QPLVMBasedBackout upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QPMysqlPolicy upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QNTFFixes upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFRunPostRPMActionsPolicy upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFUpgradeCommon upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFUpgradeProgress upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::PlatformLast upgrade policy... 1467617932::Updating platform revision file... 1467617932::RCS_VERSION=1.1 1467617932::Marking task 1467617076_0 as Success 1467617932::Upgrade returned success! 1467617933::Creating RC script to set alarm on next boot 1467617933::'/mnt/upgrade/upgrade/upgradeStatus' -> '/sysimage/etc/rc.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus' 1467617933::Cleaning up chroot environment... 1467617933:: 1467618026: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - AlarmMgr daemon is not running, delaying by 1 minute 1467618060: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - Not setting 'Upgrade Accept/Reject' alarm 1467618060: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - </pre> <p>Note: If the installation is not successful, inspect the following log files for more details and to see if errors occurred:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</code> • <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log</code>
<p>9.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remove Media</p>	<p>Remove the installation media or dismount the virtually mounted ISO image file from the server. The Policy Management software is installed on the server.</p>
<p>10.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Policy Solution servers</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to install each Policy Management component (CMP, MPE, MRA, BoD, MA, MEDIATION) on each server.</p> <p>For Wireless mode, proceed to Section 6: Configure Policy Application Servers in Wireless Mode</p> <p>For Cable mode, proceed to Section 7: Configure Policy Application Servers in Cable Mode</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

5.2 PREPARING AN HP RMS ENVIRONMENT

The procedures listed in this section are specific to HP DL380 rack-mount servers.

5.2.1 ILO Configuration Procedure

You can configure the HP Integrated Lights-Out (iLO) remote management feature from the Console Boot menu. You can also configure iLO from the iLO GUI.

Prerequisites:

To complete this procedure, you need the following information and material:

- Static IP address, netmask, and default gateway of the server
- The current date and time
- The passwords you intend to define for the default Administrator account and the root user (root_password)
- Local console access (monitor/keyboard) or a laptop connected to the server's serial console

The ILO configuration procedure is described in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix F)

5.2.2 Updating DL380 Server Firmware

Each server must have the correct release of firmware.

The procedure for updating Oracle server firmware is described in the [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.9](#) and [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.10](#).

5.2.3 ILO Web GUI Settings

After you have performed the ILO configuration procedure, ILO is accessible through its web GUI interface. You should now change the default password for the **root** account.

To complete this procedure, you need to record the new password for the **root** account (*root_password*).

To change the password, while in the ILO web interface, navigate to **ILOM Administration > User Management > User Accounts**. Select **Edit**, change the **root** account password, and click **Save**.

The procedure to update ILOM web GUI settings is described in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix F)

5.2.4 BIOS Configuration HP DL380 RMS Server

The procedure for BIOS configuration are located in section [8.3.1:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rackmount Servers](#) or [8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rackmount Servers](#) of this document. BIOS configurations are also referenced in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix E)

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

After completing ILOM and BIOS configuration the HP DL380 RMS server will be ready to IPM

5.2.5 IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

Every HP DL380 RMS server must go through an initial product manufacturing (IPM) procedure to install software on it.

Prerequisites:

To complete this procedure, you need the following materials and to perform these installation steps:

- TPD ISO image file ([Section 4.1 Software Requirements](#))

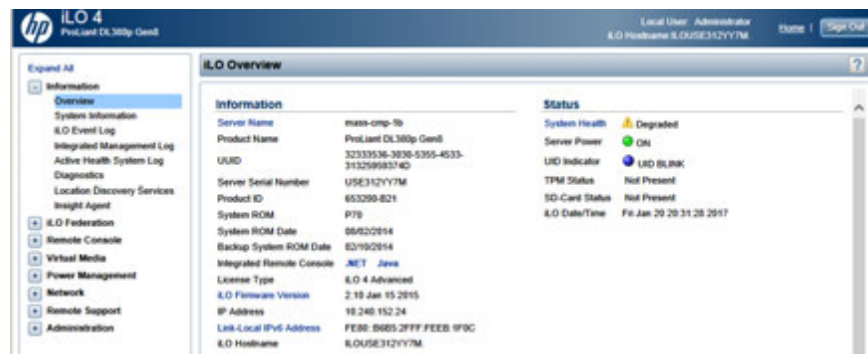
Additional information regarding the IPM install procedure is described in the [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure](#) (Section 3.3)

5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

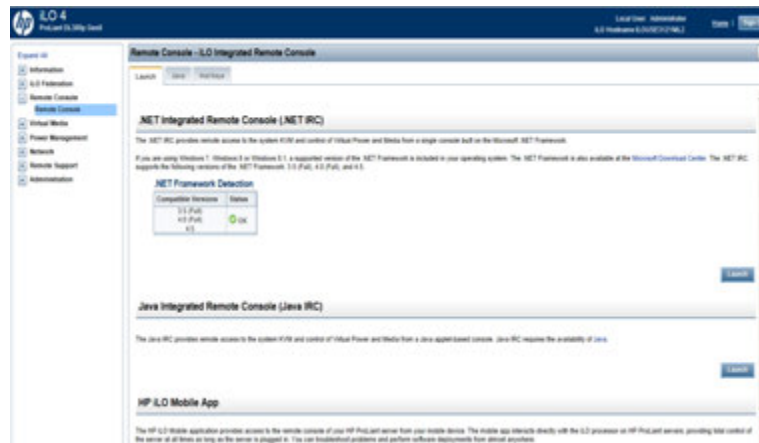
STEP #	<p>This procedure will install system OS (IPM) of the server</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>Needed material:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - TPD ISO image file to be used for virtual mount accessible on laptop or - USB device prepared with bootable version of TPD image <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Insert Bootable USB Media/mount TPD ISO</p>	<p>Create a bootable USB drive with the TPD ISO image file. Use the method provided in the “README.txt” file that is included with the downloaded Policy Software or other suitable method for creating a bootable USB device. There are several readily available utilities to achieve this.</p> <p>Then insert the USB drive locally into the server and reboot the server to the bootable USB device. Then proceed to Step 3 of this procedure if using this method</p> <p>If local access to the server is not available and network access to the iLO of the server has been enabled you can use the remote console capability of the HP iLO as per the following procedure</p> <p>See Section “8.1.2: Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP Servers”</p> <p>If you are using the iLO remote console and have the TPD software as an ISO image file, do the following to restart the server to the ISO image file:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open a browser, enter the URL of the iLO system (management_server_iLO_ip), and log in. For example:

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server



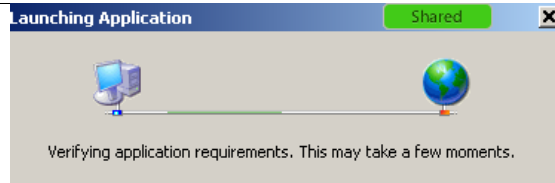
- b. On the home page, select Remote Console > Remote Console. The Remote Console page opens. For example:



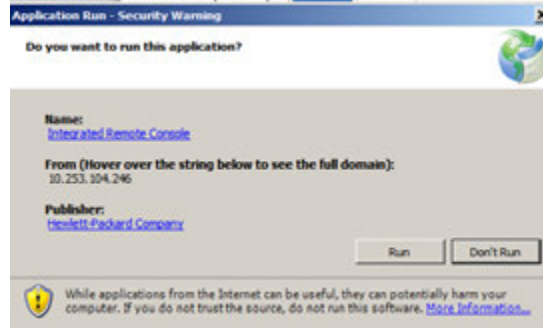
Note: When launching a remote console, the .NET application is compatible with a Windows browser; Java is compatible with both Windows and Firefox browsers.

- c. In the Java Integrated Remote Console section, click Launch. A security warning window opens, prompting for confirmation that you want to run the application. For example:

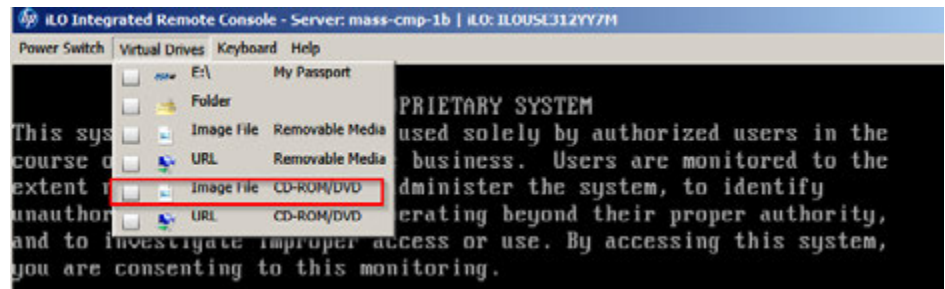
5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server



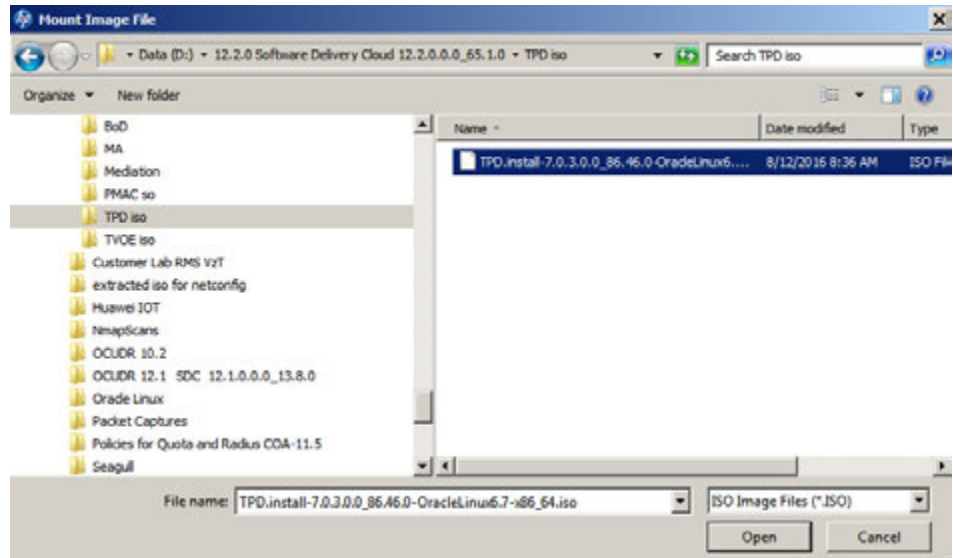
d. Click Run. The Remote Console window opens.



e. Select Virtual Drives > Image File CD-ROM/DVD, browse to the ISO image file location, and click Open. The ISO image file is mounted.

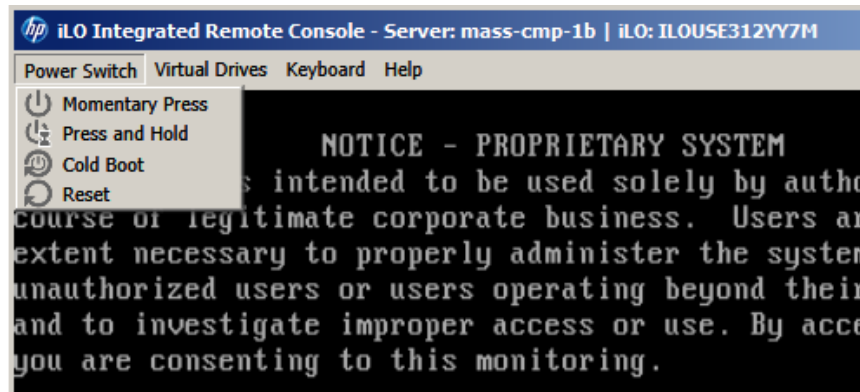


f. Select Image file CD-ROM/DVD and browse to the TPD ISO location then click open:

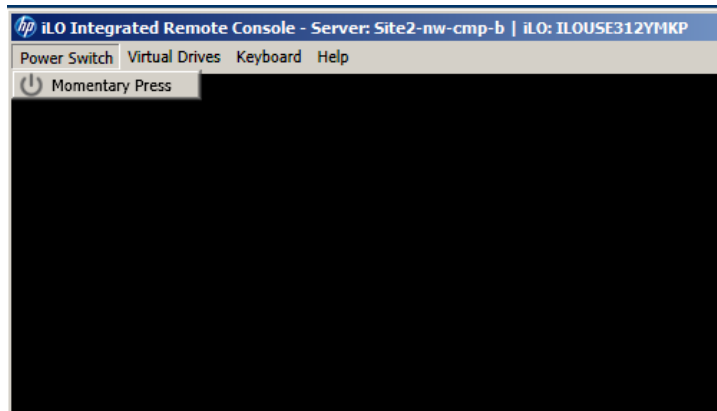


5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

- g. Select Power Switch > Momentary Press. The server powers down.

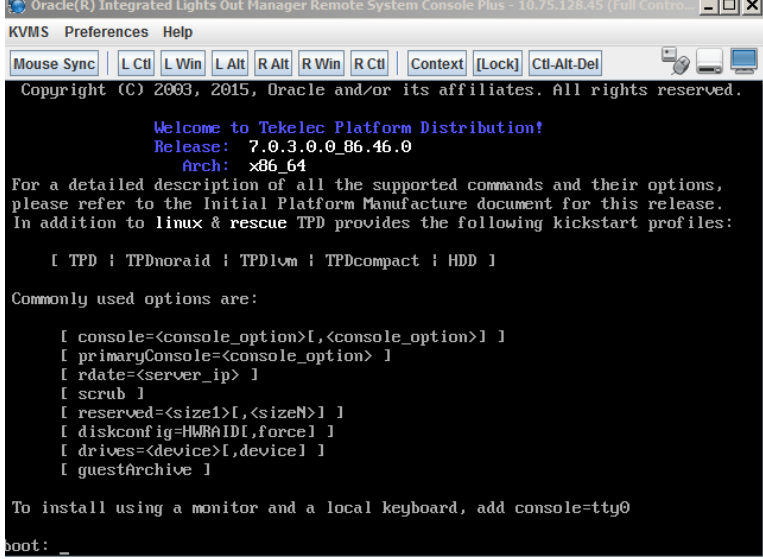
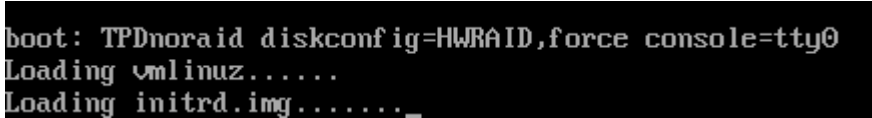
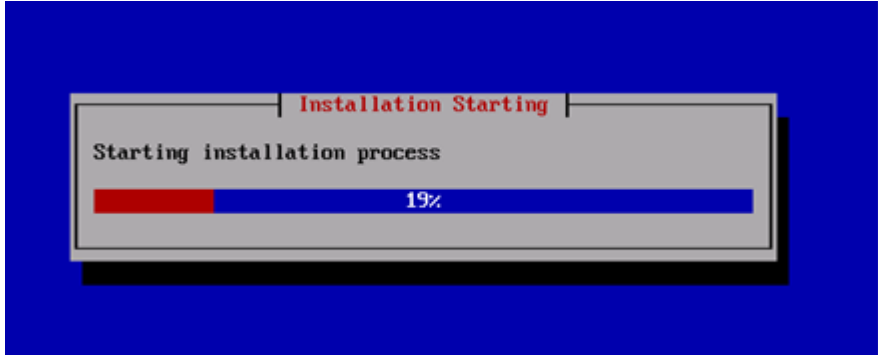


- h. When the Power Switch options display the Momentary Press option, Click Momentary Press again.



- i. The server starts, and upon completion of the boot process displays a screen similar to the following

5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

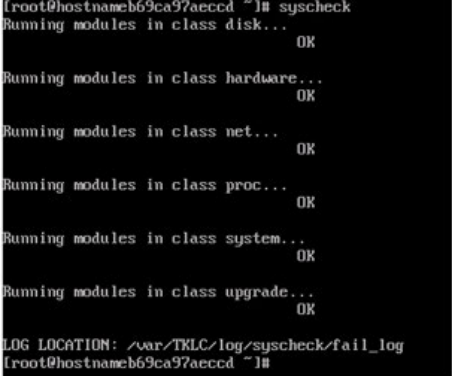
		
<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Enter TPD boot: command with correct options</p> <p>TPD install takes 20 - 40 minutes to complete</p>	<p>Enter the following command at the boot prompt to initiate the initial product manufacture (IPM) process.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •boot: TPDnoraaid console=tty0 diskconfig=HWRAID,force <p>Note: If a direct connection to the serial console is being used for this step instead of the remote iLO console it is not necessary to include "console=tty0"</p> <p>Note: If a non Policy Management application was previously installed on the server, you may have to clean up logical disc partitions created by the application. Depending on the disc partitioning, this may add up to four hours to the installation process. Refer to TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Software Installation Procedure (Section 3.4)</p> <p>TPD installation takes 20–40 minutes. During this process you see in-progress windows similar to the following</p>  

5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

		<p>Then you will be able to monitor the packages installation progress:</p>  <p>Then post installation scripts kick off:</p>  <p>After IPM process is completed, you are prompted to press Enter to reboot the server. At this point the media used to install the OS must be removed or unmounted before selecting the <i>Reboot</i> option. Otherwise the server will again boot to the bootable media.</p>  <p>When you see the Complete window, the IPM process is complete.</p>
<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Remove or unmount the installation media.</p>	<p>In case installation is done remotely via iLO's remote console, unmount the image from the console's virtual drives menu (uncheck the image file option) then press Enter to reboot the server. In the case a bootable USB device was used, remove the USB device</p> <p>If you reboot the server without removing the installation media the server will again boot to the bootable media. If this happens, wait until you see the Complete window, remove the bootable image, and restart again.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.5: IPM of a HP DL380 RMS Server

<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Press Enter to reboot</p>	<p>Make sure the console window is selected. Press Enter. The server restarts and displays the login prompt</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Login prompt</p>	<p>Once the server reboots, the login prompt is displayed. If no login prompt is displayed after waiting 15 minutes, contact Oracle Customer Support for assistance.</p>
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Run syscheck</p>	<p>Login as the user root and enter the following command to check the major components of the system:</p> <pre># syscheck</pre> <p>The utility displays OK for each component that passes, or a descriptive error of the problem if a component fails. The following example shows a successful run where all subsystems pass, indicating that the post-installation process is complete:</p>  <pre>[root@hostnameb69ca97aeccd ~]# syscheck Running modules in class disk... OK Running modules in class hardware... OK Running modules in class net... OK Running modules in class proc... OK Running modules in class system... OK Running modules in class upgrade... OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TRIMC/log/syscheck/fail_log [root@hostnameb69ca97aeccd ~]#</pre> <p>If any of the modules return an error, do not continue; contact My Oracle Support and report the error condition.</p>
<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Verify Install success</p>	<p>Verify that IPM completed successfully via the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyIPM (--force if needed) \$ sudo echo \$? (should return 0 errors) \$ sudo getPlatRev (should return the current TPD version installed)</pre> <p>The following example shows a successful installation:</p>  <pre>[admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo verifyIPM --force [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo echo \$? 0 [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo getPlatRev 7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0 [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$</pre> <p>Note: If you see any errors, contact My Oracle Support.</p> <p>Repeat this procedure for every server.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

5.2.6 Installing Policy Management Software

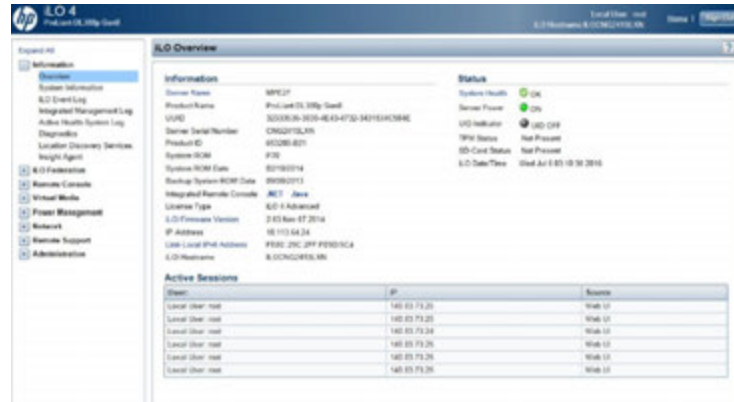
5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will install the Policy Management Software.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>Before beginning this procedure, you must have the following material and information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The appropriate release and application package(s) of the Policy Management software, either on physical media to mount directly on the server or available as an ISO image file to mount virtually. Access to the server, either directly or through the iLO remote console. If you are using the iLO remote console, you need the IP address of the iLO system and the login information. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number</p> <p>Note: Two methods for installing the Policy Application are presented here. The 1st is to use a USB drive inserted locally into the server. This is the preferred method. The 2nd is to use the virtual mount capability of the iLO remote console over a network. This method is dependent on having a good network connection from the workstation where the ISO is located to the target server iLO. The browser used to attach the ISO and launch the server iLO remote console should be co-located with the ISO file repository. Additionally any method that places the Policy Application ISO image file in the /var/TKLC/upgrade directory of the target server is acceptable.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"></div>	<p>Make the Policy Application ISO images available for installation</p>	<p>Copy the Policy Application ISO image file (CMP/MPE/MRA/BOD/MA/Mediation) onto a USB drive and insert the USB drive locally into the server.</p> <p>Connect to the server Console or Remote Console:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> using a VGA Display and USB Keyboard, or using the Server iLO port and iLO Web Interface (to access Remote Console) <p>Proceed to step #2 of this procedure</p> <p>Or</p> <p>If you are using the iLO remote console and have the Policy Management software as an ISO image file, do the following to mount the ISO image file as a virtual drive:</p> <p>Note: This method is dependent on having a good network connection from the workstation where the ISO is located to the target server iLO. The browser used to attach the ISO and launch the server iLO remote console should be co-located with the ISO file repository.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open a browser, enter the URL of the iLO system (management_server_iLO_ip), and log in. For example: <div> <p>The image shows the HP iLO 4 web interface. The top left corner features the HP logo. The main header area contains the text 'iLO 4 HP ProLiant' and 'Firmware Version: 2.00 (6/04/2011)'. Below this, there is a login section with two input fields: 'Username' and 'Password', followed by a blue 'Log In' button. The background of the interface is a dark blue gradient with a faint image of server racks.</p> </div>

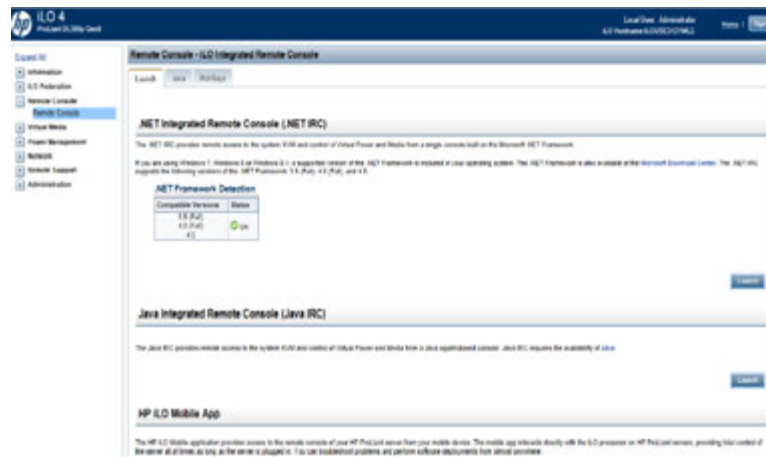
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

After login the iLO home screen presents.



- b. On the home page, select Remote Console. The Remote Console page opens. For example:



Note: When launching a remote console, the .NET application is compatible with a Windows browser; Java is compatible with both Windows and Firefox browsers.

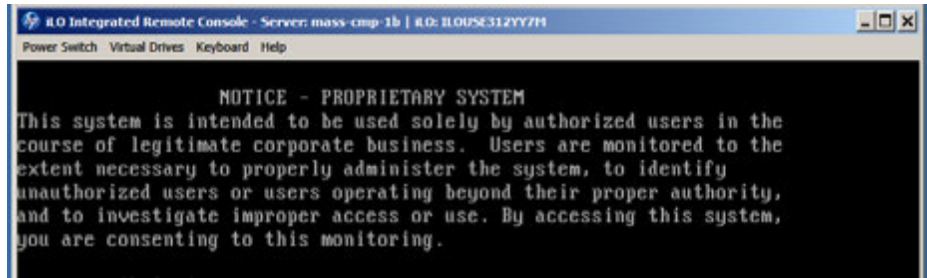
- c. In the Java Integrated Remote Console section, click Launch. A security warning window opens, prompting for confirmation that you want to run the application. For example:



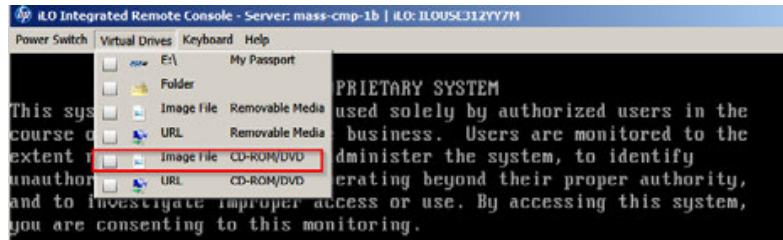
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

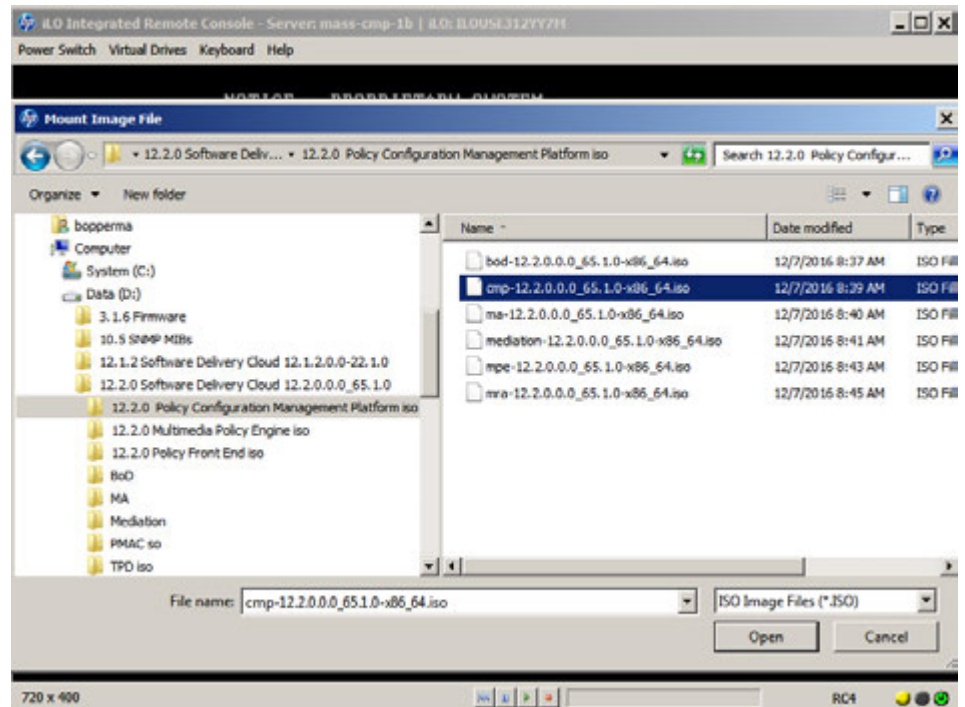
- d. Click Run. The Remote Console window opens.



- e. Select Virtual Drives > Image File CD-ROM/DVD, browse to the ISO image file location, and click Open. The ISO image file is mounted.



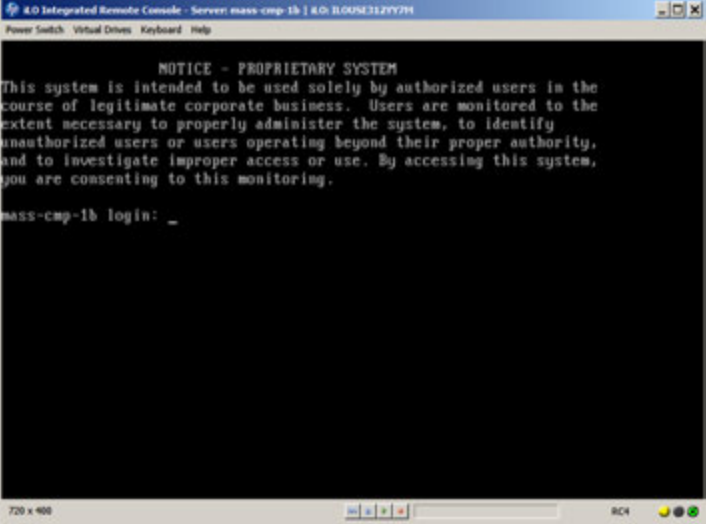
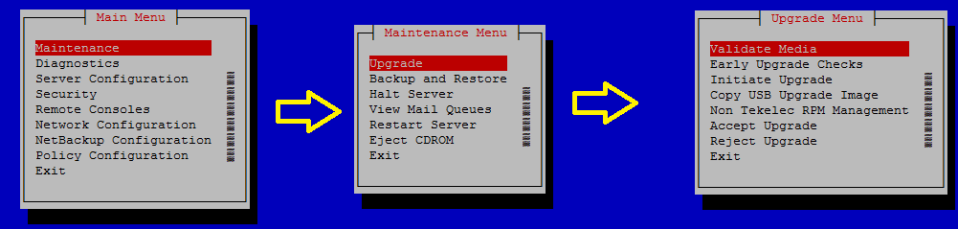
Note: Make certain that the ISO image file selected (CMP/MPE/MRA/BOD/MA/MEDIATION) is the correct one for the target server according to the Policy Solution Design!



In this example the CMP ISO image has been selected. Click open to mount the required ISO image file, the screen will close (the ISO has mounted) and you will be returned to the CLI prompt of the remote console.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

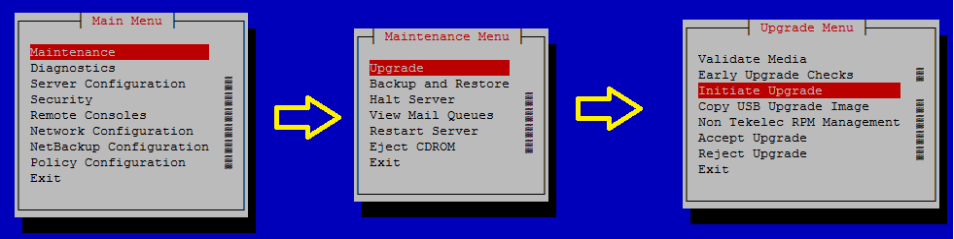
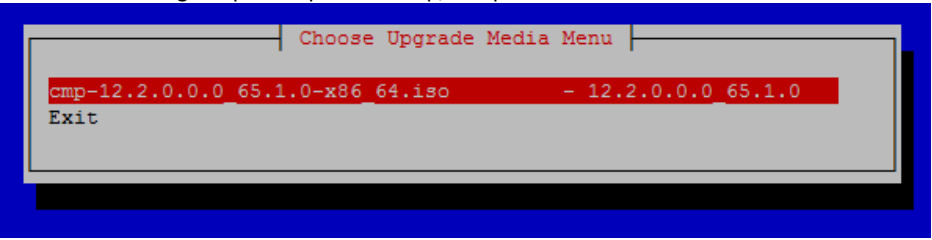
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: Login as <admusr></p>	<p>Connect to the server console, either directly or remotely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directly — using a display and keyboard • Remotely — using the iLO Remote Console and the server iLO port <p>Login as <admusr> if not already logged in.</p> 
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: verify platform revision</p>	<p>You can verify the platform revision by logging in as the user admusr and entering the following command: <code>\$ sudo getPlatRev</code> For example:</p> <pre>#sudo getPlatRev [admusr@X52-cmp-2a ~]\$ sudo getPlatRev 7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</pre>
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: run platcfg and validate the media</p>	<p>Enter the following command to start the Platform Configuration utility:</p> <pre>#sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>The Platform Configuration Main menu opens.</p> <p>From the Main menu, navigate to Maintenance > Upgrade > Validate Media, select the ISO image file, and press Enter.</p>  <p>Note: Depending on the method used the platcfg utility will search for any mounted ISOs and if successful will display the Policy Application ISO image file to install</p>

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		<p>For example:</p>  <p>Then choose the ISO image and press enter:</p> <p>The utility displays “Validating media or cdrom”... and a series of hash marks (#) signs. When it finishes it displays information about the ISO image file and the message the CDROM or Media is Valid. The following example shows a successful validation:</p> 
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Console: verify platform revision</p>	<p>Press Enter to return to the menu. Scroll to exit and press enter again.</p>  <p>The Main menu opens.</p> 

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Select ISO to install, and confirm</p> <p>Application install may take 20 Minutes – if installing with a virtual mount, it will take longer</p>	<p>From the Main menu, navigate to Maintenance > Upgrade > Initiate Upgrade. The Choose Upgrade Media Menu window opens. For example:</p>  <p>Select the ISO image as per the previous step, and press ENTER</p>  <p>Note: The server will reboot twice during the installation process, Do Not Remove the media at this time.</p>
<p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Verify Policy install version</p>	<p>After the application has completed installation log back in to the command line as admusr and confirm the installed TPD platform version and the policy application version.</p> <pre> \$appRev mass-cmp-1b login: admusr Password: Last login: Fri Jan 20 17:11:38 on tty1 [admusr@mass-cmp-1b ~]\$ appRev Install Time: Thu Jan 19 17:07:20 2017 Product Name: cmp Product Release: 12.2.0.0_65.1.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.0.3.0_86.46.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.0.3.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64.iso ISO name: cmp-12.2.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.7 </pre> <p>Verify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TPD revision installed • Policy application installed and its revision
<p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Console: Verify Install success</p>	<p>Inspect the file /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log to verify that the installation succeeded; look for the line Upgrade returned success! near the end of the file. The following example shows a successful installation:</p> <pre> 1467617932::This is an install 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QPLVMBasedReboot upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFMySQLPolicy upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFNTFFixes upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFRunPostRPMActionsPolicy upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFUpgradeCommon upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::QFUpgradeProgress upgrade policy... 1467617932::Running postUpgradeBoot() for Upgrade::Policy::PlatformLast upgrade policy... 1467617932::Updating platform revision file... 1467617932::RCS_VERSION=1.1 1467617932::Marking task 1467617076.0 as Success 1467617932::Upgrade returned success! 1467617933::Creating rc script to set alarm on next boot 1467617933:: /mnt/upgrade/upgrade/upgradeStatus' -> '/sysimage/etc/rc.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus' 1467617933::Cleaning up chroot environment... 1467617933:: 1467618026:: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - AlarmMgr daemon is not running, delaying by 1 minute 1467618060:: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - Not setting 'Upgrade Accept/Reject' alarm 1467618060:: /etc/rc4.d/S99TKLCupgradeStatus - </pre>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.2.6: Installing Policy Management Software

		<p>Note: If the installation is not successful, inspect the following log files for more details and to see if errors occurred:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log• /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Remove Media	Remove the installation media or dismount the virtually mounted ISO image file from the server. The Policy Management software is installed on the server.
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	Policy Solution servers	<p>Repeat this procedure to install each Policy Management component (CMP, MPE, MRA, BoD, MA, MEDIATION) on each server.</p> <p>For Wireless mode, proceed to Section 6: Configure Policy Application Servers in Wireless Mode</p> <p>For Cable mode, proceed to Section 7: Configure Policy Application Servers in Cable Mode</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

5.3 PREPARING A C-CLASS ENVIRONMENT

5.3.1 Preparing the PM&C Management Server

This section references the procedures used to install Policy Management software in a c-Class environment. A Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C) application on a Management Server is required for a c-Class installation. The Management Server is a rack mount server. PM&C provides tools to manage multiple enclosures and server software as well as networking equipment (enclosure switches).

Tekelec Virtual Operating Environment (TVOE) [4.1 Software Requirements](#) is required for the Management Server installation. You must install TVOE first, then the PM&C application.

The procedure for installing and configuring the Management Server is described in the [Tekelec Platform 7.0.x, Configuration Guide](#).

It is necessary to IPM the Management Server and update the Firmware according to the type of Hardware that will be used for the Management Server.

Refer to *Section 3.6 Management Server Procedures*

- 3.6.1 IPM Management Server
- 3.6.2 Upgrade Management Server Firmware

To install the Platform Management and Configuration (PM&C) application on the Management Server refer to Section 3.7 PM&C Procedures

- 3.7.1 Deploying Virtualized PM&C Overview
- 3.7.2 Installing TVOE on the Management Server
- 3.7.3 TVOE Network Configuration
- 3.7.4 Deploy PM&C Guest

The procedures referenced in this section deploy PM&C on the management server. In Policy Management 12.2, the management server is used for installation, adding new servers, field repairs, and deploying firmware upgrades. PM&C installation is not service-affecting for the Policy Management system; that is, Policy Management itself does not rely on PM&C to function.

5.3.2 HP C-7000 Enclosure Configuration

Procedures for installing and configuring a HP C-7000 enclosure can be found in [Tekelec Platform 7.0.x, Configuration Guide](#).

Refer to *Section 3.5 C7000 Enclosure Procedures*

PM&C can manage multiple enclosures. The following procedures are applied for each enclosure.

- Section 3.5.1 Configure Initial OA IP

You can configure the OA IP address using the enclosure front panel display.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

- Section 3.5.2 Configure Initial OA Settings Using the Configuration Wizard

This procedure will configure initial OA settings using a configuration wizard. This procedure should be used for initial configuration only and should be executed when the Onboard Administrator in OABay 1 (left as viewed from rear) is installed and active.

Prerequisites:

If the aggregation switches are supported by Oracle, then the Cisco 4948/4948E switches need to be configured

If the aggregation switches are provided by the customer, the user must ensure that the customer aggregation switches are configured as per requirements provided in the NAPD (CGBU_019407).

- Section 3.5.3 Configure OA Security

This procedure will disable telnet access to OA.

- Section 3.5.4 Upgrade or Downgrade OA Firmware

This procedure will update the firmware on the OA's.

- Section 3.5.5 Store OA Configuration on Management Server

This procedure will backup OA settings on the management server.

- Section 3.5.9 Updating IPv4 Addressing

This procedure will update the IP addressing for a C7000 enclosure.

Or

- Section 3.5.10 Updating IPv6 Addressing

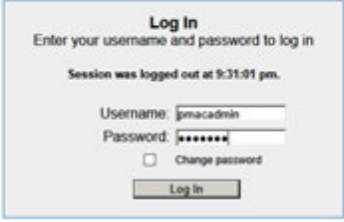
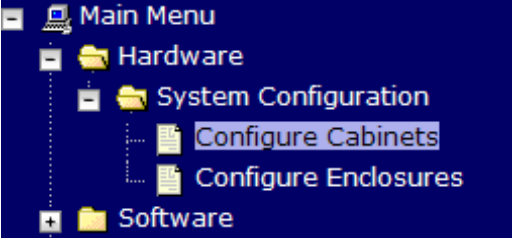
This procedure will update the IP addressing for a C7000 enclosure. It may be used to add IPv6 addresses and/or to edit existing IPv6 addresses.

- Section 3.5.11 Add SNMP Trap Destination on OA

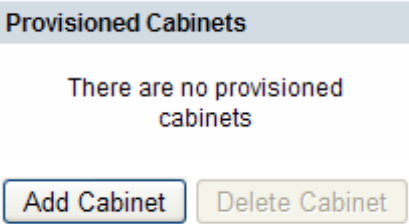
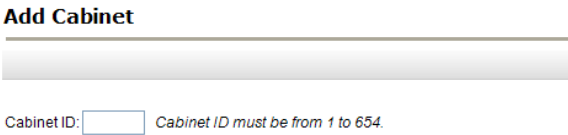
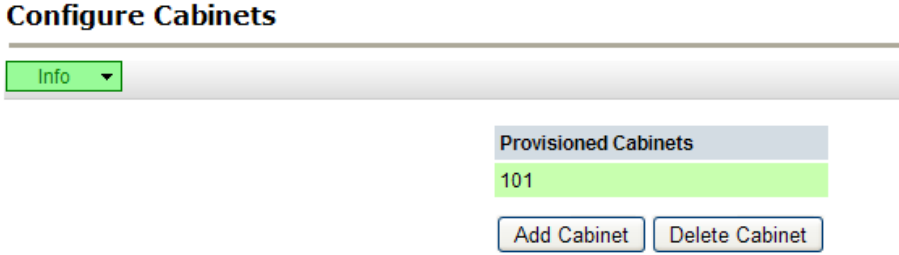
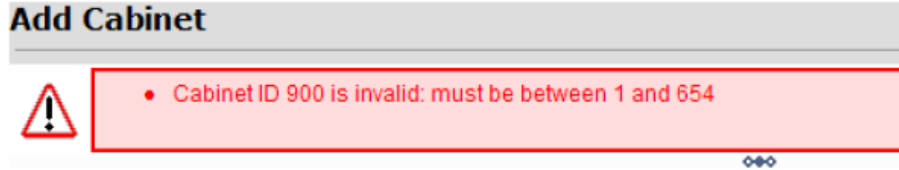
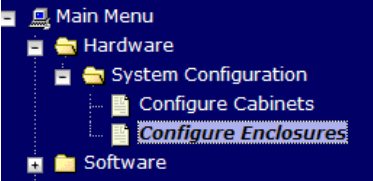
An SNMP trap destination must be added and configured using the Onboard Administrator (OA), or SNMP must be disabled.

5.3.3 Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to the PM&C

5.3.3: Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to PM&C

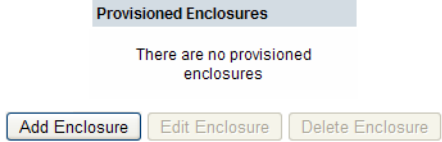
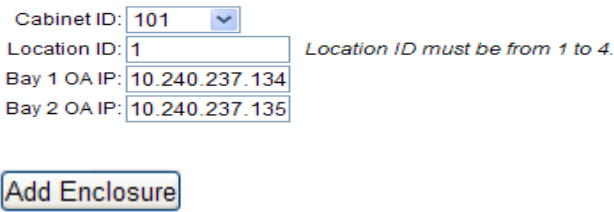
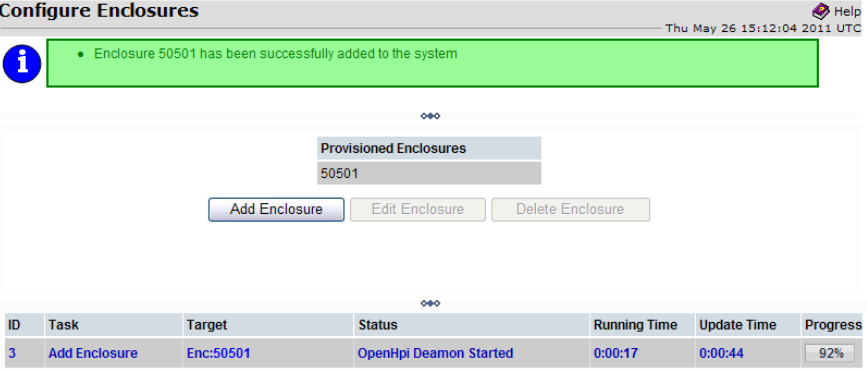
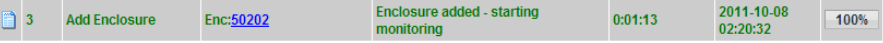
<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure provides instructions to add a cabinet and an enclosure to the PM&C system inventory.</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <p>Before beginning this procedure, you must have configured the PM&C application.</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The cabinet ID (cabinet_id), a number from 1 to 654. • The Location ID (location_id), a number from 1 to 4, used to uniquely identify the enclosure within the cabinet. The cabinet ID and location ID are combined to create a globally unique ID for the enclosure (for example, an enclosure in cabinet 502 at location 1 will have an enclosure ID of 50201). Enclosures are typically numbered from the bottom; that is, the enclosure in the bottom of the cabinet is location 1. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter: https://<pmac_management_network_ip> Log in as the pmacadmin user.</p> 
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Configure Cabinets</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Hardware -> System Configuration -> Configure Cabinets.</p> 

5.3.3: Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to PM&C

<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Add Cabinet</p>	<p>On the Configure Cabinets panel click on Add Cabinet...</p> 
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Enter Cabinet ID</p>	<p>Enter Cabinet ID and press Add Cabinet.</p> 
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Check errors</p>	<p>If no error is reported to the user you will see the following:</p>  <p>Or you will see an error message:</p> 
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PM&C GUI: Go to Configure HPC Enclosures</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Hardware -> System Configuration -> Configure Enclosures.</p> 


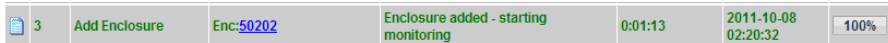

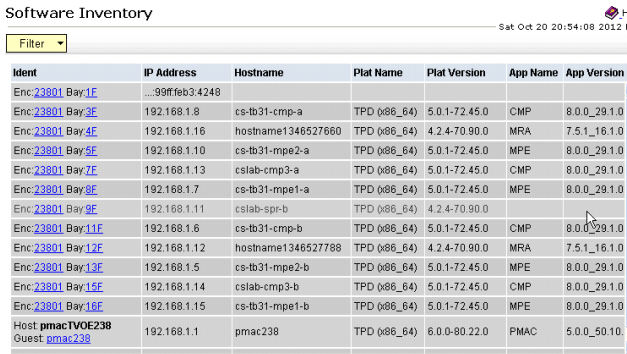
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.3.3: Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to PM&C

<p>7.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Go to Add Enclosure</p>	<p>On the Configure Enclosures panel click on Add Enclosure...</p> 														
<p>8.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Add Enclosure</p>	<p>On the Add Enclosure panel, enter the Cabinet ID, Location ID, and two OA IP addresses (the enclosure's active and standby OA).</p> <p>Then click on Add Enclosure.</p>  <p>Notes: Location ID is used to uniquely identify the enclosure within the cabinet. It can have a value of 1, 2, 3 or 4. The cabinet id and location id will be combined to create a globally unique id for the enclosure (for example, an enclosure in cabinet 502 at location 1, will have an enclosure id of 50201).</p> <p>Enclosures are typically numbered from the bottom. i.e. Enclosure in the bottom of the cabinet is location = 1.</p>														
<p>9.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Monitor the Enclosure discovery status</p>	<p>When the task is complete, the text will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p>  <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Running Time</th> <th>Update Time</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Add Enclosure</td> <td>Enc:50501</td> <td>OpenHpi Deamon Started</td> <td>0:00:17</td> <td>0:00:44</td> <td>92%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Update Time	Progress	3	Add Enclosure	Enc:50501	OpenHpi Deamon Started	0:00:17	0:00:44	92%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Update Time	Progress										
3	Add Enclosure	Enc:50501	OpenHpi Deamon Started	0:00:17	0:00:44	92%										
<p>10.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Background Task monitoring</p>	<p>This page allows the user to monitor status updates:</p>  <p>NOTE: DO NOT click the button as this will delete the selected task from the Background Task Monitoring status screen.</p>														

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

5.3.3: Adding the Cabinet and the Enclosure to PM&C

<p>11.</p> 	<p>PM&C GUI: Wait until the Add Enclosure task finishes</p>	<p>The color of the progress bar will change to green when complete:</p>  <p>If the Add Enclosure task fails the Status will display information concerning the failed step and the color of the Progress bar will change to red.</p>
<p>12.</p> 	<p>PM&C GUI: Verify Software Inventory</p>	<p>Software → Software Inventory</p> <p>If the control network is properly configured, the blades have TPD installed (at minimum), and the Enclosure switches have a control network configured, the Software Inventory form will show blade server information.</p> <p>Example below:</p>  <p>NOTE: The procedure to configure the Enclosure switches, if they have not been previously configured, is yet to be performed.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>

5.3.4 Configure Blade Server iLO Password for Administrator Account

The file *change_ilo_admin_password.xml* is provided on the Policy Management ISO image file and is used by the PM&C netConfig tool to push the configuration to the switches. The file may change from one release to the next. Edit this file for your installation and copy it to the PM&C server after it is installed.

Prerequisite:

Before beginning this procedure, you must configure the OA IP addresses.

Use this mandatory procedure to set iLO passwords for the **Administrator** and **root** accounts on all servers:

1. On the PM&C server, in the directory `/usr/TKLC/smac/html`, create the following subdirectory:
`/ilo_passwd`

2. Set the directory permissions to an appropriate level. For example:

```
$ sudo chmod go+x /usr/TKLC/smac/html/ilo_passwd
```

3. Locate the file `change_ilo_admin_password.xml` on the Policy Management ISO image file. For example:

```
$ sudo find . -name change_.* -print ./TPD/872-2544-102-9.1.0_28.1.0-cmp-x86_64/upgrade/change_ilo_admin_passwd.xml
```

4. Copy the file to the following directory:

```
/usr/TKLC/smac/html/ilo_passwd
```

5. Set the file permissions to an appropriate level. For example:

```
$ sudo chmod 777 change_ilo_admin_passwd.xml
```

6. Edit the file to update the *root password*, *iLO root password*, and *iLO Administrator password* fields.

7. Make a temporary copy of the file in the following directory:

```
/usr/TKLC/smac/html/public-configs/
```

8. Log in to the active OA as the user **root** and enter the following command:

```
> hponcfg all http://management_server_ip/public-configs/change_ilo_admin_passwd.xml
```

After the command finishes, verify that no errors occurred.

9. Log out from the active OA.

10. Delete the temporary copy of the file.

11. (Optional) You can verify access to the server iLO by opening a browser, entering the IP address of the server iLO system (`management_server_iLO_ip`), and logging in using the values for Administrator and iLO Administrator password.

12. (Optional) You can verify **root** access to the server iLO using an SSH session. For example:

```
# ssh root@management_server_iLO_ip password: iLO_root_password
```

5.3.5 Configuring c-Class Aggregation and Enclosure Switches Using netConfig

The c-Class environment includes paired aggregation switches and enclosure switches. You should prepare and verify network configuration files (used to configure the switches) in advance.

The Policy Management ISO image files include template configuration files in the directory `/upgrade/switchconfig/examples/netConfig/`. The templates include variables that you can replace with site- and customer-specific information. You can edit these template files to make them specific for your installation and place them on the PM&C server after it is installed. The PM&C netConfig tool uses these network configuration files to configure the switches. The following template files are provided:

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

- For 4948 aggregation enclosure switches:
 - 4948_cClass_init.xml
 - 4948_layer2_configure.xml
 - 4948_layer3_configure.xml
 - 4948_RMS_init.xml
- For 4948E aggregation enclosure switches:
 - 4948E_cClass_init.xml
 - 4948E_layer2_configure.xml
 - 4948E_layer3_configure.xml
 - 4948E_RMS_init.xml
- For 6120XG enclosure switches:
 - 6120XG_init.xml
 - 6120XG_Single_configure.xml (for connections using a single 10 Gb/s copper uplink)
 - 6120XG_LAG_Uplink_configure.xml (for connections using a bundle of four 1 Gb/s copper uplinks)
 - 6120XG_TagCtl_Uplink_configure.xml (if the Control network will be VLAN tagged)
- For 6125XLG enclosure switches:
 - 6125XLG_init.xml
 - 6125XLG_Single_configure.xml (for connections using a single 10 Gb/s copper uplink)
 - 6125XLG_LAG_Uplink_configure.xml (for connections using a bundle of four 1 Gb/s copper uplinks)

Prerequisite:

Before beginning this procedure, you must have installed PM&C and configured the initial OA settings, the netConfig repository, and the initial OA IP address. To complete this procedure you need the following software and information:

- The appropriate netConfig XML files
- The HP Miscellaneous Firmware ISO image file
- The cabinet ID, a number from 1 to 654 (cabinet_id)

The procedures to configure aggregation switches and enclosure switches using netConfig are described in the [Tekelec Platform 7.0.x, Configuration Guide](#).

Tips: To minimize errors, after you prepare the files, review and verify them.

These templates cover the common configurations, but may not cover all possible configurations. You may need to change or add to these templates for specific requirements. To avoid potential support issues, do not deviate from Oracle standards.

5.3.6 *Configuring the Application Blades*

The following procedures are applied for each enclosure.

Note: during the following OA configuration steps, the IP addresses of the Enclosure switches are set. These IP addresses are then used to configure the Enclosure switches.

5.3.7 *Updating Application Blade Firmware*

Policy Management servers must have the correct release of firmware.

The procedure for updating Oracle server firmware is described in the [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.9](#) and [HP Solutions Firmware Upgrade Pack, Software Centric Release Notes, Release 2.2.10](#).

5.3.8 *Confirming and Updating Application Blade BIOS Settings*

You need to confirm and update the BIOS boot order on the Policy Management servers.

Prerequisites:

Before beginning this procedure, you must have updated the firmware on the Policy Management servers. To complete this procedure, you need the following information:

- The **root** password *root_password* (use the **root** account instead of the **Admin** account)
- You should not need to reset the date and time

The procedure for BIOS configuration are located in section [8.3.1:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rackmount Servers](#) or [8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rackmount Servers](#) of this document. BIOS configurations are also referenced in [TPD Initial Product Manufacture,Software Installation Procedure](#). (Appendix E)

5.3.9 *Loading Policy Management Software Images onto the PM&C*

Prerequisites:

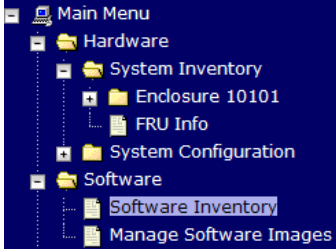
- Before beginning this procedure, you must have configured the PM&C application.
- To complete this procedure, you need the following:
 - TPD ISO image file.
 - Policy Management ISO image files (CMP, MPE, MRA, Mediation).

See [Section 4.1:Software Requirements](#)

The procedure for loading software images onto the PM&C server is described in the [Tekelec Platform 7.0.x, Configuration Guide](#) Section 3.7.9. IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C Application

5.3.10 IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C

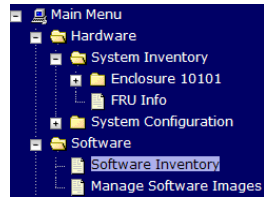
5.3.10: IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install TPD on Blade servers from PM&C.</p> <p>Prerequisites: Enclosures containing the blade servers targeted for IPM that have been configured. Appropriate version of TPD is previously added to the PM&C Software Image management.</p> <p>Check off (√) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>																																											
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PM&C GUI: Verify if PM&C Control Network is established to the blades.</p> <p>Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ident</th> <th>IP Address</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:1F</td><td>192.168.1.6</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:2F</td><td>192.168.1.12</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:3F</td><td>192.168.1.8</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:8F</td><td>192.168.1.5</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:9F</td><td>192.168.1.11</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:10F</td><td>192.168.1.10</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:11F</td><td>192.168.1.9</td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:50301 Bay:16F</td><td>192.168.1.7</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the PM&C Control network is correctly configured, the PM&C will act as a DHCP server and provide control network addresses in the range of 192.168.1.3 – 254 to the blade servers in the managed cabinets/enclosures. PM&C always takes the address of 192.168.1.1. If the server has requested an IP address from PM&C, the IP address will appear in the “IP Address” column. TPD will always do this when a server blade is booted, and also periodically after this.</p> <p>If there are no IP Addresses in this view, then either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PM&C Control Network is not correctly configured (probably a switch config issue) • The Blades do not have an OS installed. <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr><td>Enc:801 Bay:14F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:801 Bay:16F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Enc:802 Bay:1F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If there are IP addresses in this view it means that an OS has been previously installed.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:6F</td> <td>192.168.1.21</td> <td>hostnameb9d92a84cefe</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8F</td> <td>192.168.1.16</td> <td>hostname6de5d09f047e</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Proceed to the next step to IPM (install the OS) on the selected blade</p>	Ident	IP Address	Enc:50301 Bay:1F	192.168.1.6	Enc:50301 Bay:2F	192.168.1.12	Enc:50301 Bay:3F	192.168.1.8	Enc:50301 Bay:8F	192.168.1.5	Enc:50301 Bay:9F	192.168.1.11	Enc:50301 Bay:10F	192.168.1.10	Enc:50301 Bay:11F	192.168.1.9	Enc:50301 Bay:16F	192.168.1.7	Enc:801 Bay:14F					Enc:801 Bay:16F					Enc:802 Bay:1F					Enc:801 Bay:6F	192.168.1.21	hostnameb9d92a84cefe	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0	Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.16	hostname6de5d09f047e	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0
Ident	IP Address																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:1F	192.168.1.6																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:2F	192.168.1.12																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:3F	192.168.1.8																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:8F	192.168.1.5																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:9F	192.168.1.11																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:10F	192.168.1.10																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:11F	192.168.1.9																																											
Enc:50301 Bay:16F	192.168.1.7																																											
Enc:801 Bay:14F																																												
Enc:801 Bay:16F																																												
Enc:802 Bay:1F																																												
Enc:801 Bay:6F	192.168.1.21	hostnameb9d92a84cefe	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0																																								
Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.16	hostname6de5d09f047e	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.28.0																																								

5.3.10: IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C

2. **PM&C GUI: Initiate OS Install**

Navigate to **Software -> Software Inventory**.



Select the servers you want to IPM with a bootable TPD ISO image file and select Install OS button. If you want to install the same OS image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.

Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Design	Function
Enc 001 Bay 10F	192.168.1.243	mass-mra-0b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 001 Bay 11F	192.168.1.239	mass-mra-1c	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 001 Bay 14F								
Enc 001 Bay 18F								
Enc 002 Bay 1F								
Enc 002 Bay 2F	192.168.1.222	ohio-cmp-1a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 4F	192.168.1.233	ohio-cmp-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 5F	192.168.1.232	ohio-mpe-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MPE	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 8F	192.168.1.227	pcrf-cmp-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 7F	192.168.1.231	pcrf-mra-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 9F	192.168.1.226	pcrf-mpe-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MPE	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 11F	192.168.1.14	ohio-cmp-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 12F	192.168.1.235	ohio-cmp-b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 13F	192.168.1.234	ohio-mra-a	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Req		
Enc 002 Bay 14F	192.168.1.229	pcrf-cmp-b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0-08.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Req		

Pause Updates Selection active -- updates paused

Note: IPM is also a useful recovery procedure if a server is in a bad or unknown condition, or was configured with a different application, since the IPM will clean all the existing software and disk configurations off of the server, and bring the server to a clean state.

After selecting "Install OS" the Software Install –Select Image screen appears:

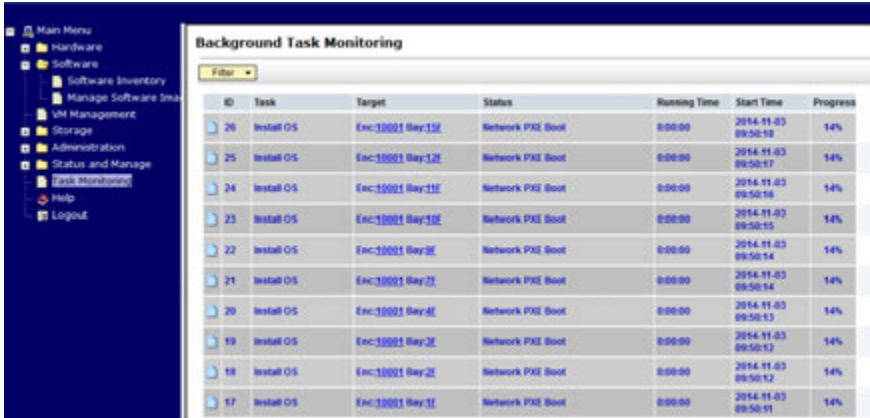
Software Install - Select Image

Entity	Status	Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description
Enc 001 Bay 0F		TPD install-6.7.0.0_1_84.18.0-CrackedLinux6.5-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	11.5.0 TPD
Enc 001 Bay 0F		TPD install-6.7.1.0.0_84.26.0-CrackedLinux6.5-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	11.5.2 TPD
		TPD install-6.7.2.0.0_84.33.0-CrackedLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	Policy 9.9.2 TPD baseline
		TPD install-7.0.0.0_86.14.0-CrackedLinux6.5-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	12.0 TPD
		TPD install-7.0.2.0_86.28.0-CrackedLinux6.6-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	12.1.1 TPD
		TPD install-7.0.3.0_86.46.0-CrackedLinux6.7-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	12.2 TPD GA (1-20-2017)
		TVOE-3.0.2.0_86.28.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64	TVOE 3.0.2 ISO for OCUDR 10.2 (1-20-2017)

Supply Software Install Arguments (Optional)

Any bootable images in the PM&C repository will present. Choose the correct bootable image to proceed with the OS installation of the selected blade and click on "Software Start Install".

5.3.10: IPM Enclosure Blades Using the PM&C

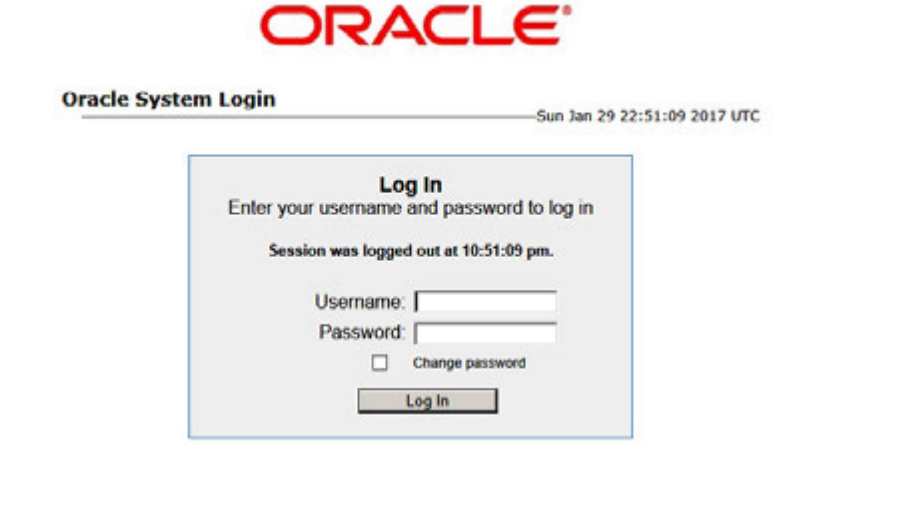
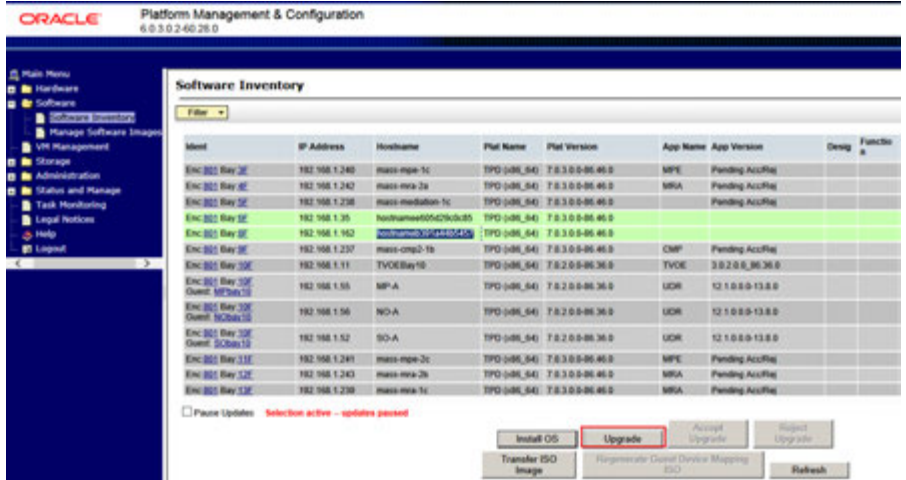
<p>3.</p>	<p>PM&C GUI: Monitor OS Install</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu > Task Monitoring to monitor the progress of the OS installation background task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.</p>  <p>When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>State</th> <th>Running Time</th> <th>Start Time</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>970</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8F</td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>0:21:52</td> <td>2017-01-29 18:12:34</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>969</td> <td>Install OS</td> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8F</td> <td>Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>0:23:00</td> <td>2017-01-29 18:12:33</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>NOTE: if the OS Install step fails, then it may be that the Control Network is not correctly established, and troubleshooting will be required.</p>	ID	Task	Target	Status	State	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	970	Install OS	Enc:801 Bay:8F	Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE	0:21:52	2017-01-29 18:12:34	100%	969	Install OS	Enc:801 Bay:8F	Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE	0:23:00	2017-01-29 18:12:33	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	State	Running Time	Start Time	Progress																			
970	Install OS	Enc:801 Bay:8F	Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE	0:21:52	2017-01-29 18:12:34	100%																			
969	Install OS	Enc:801 Bay:8F	Done: TPD.install-7.0.3.0.0_86.46.0-OracleLinux6.7-x86_64	COMPLETE	0:23:00	2017-01-29 18:12:33	100%																			
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>																										

5.3.11 Install Policy Management Software on Blades using PM&C

5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will Use this procedure to install the Policy Management software on HP c-Class servers using PM&C</p> <p>Caution: Do not mix up the enclosures when deploying the applications. The bottom enclosure in a cabinet is identified in Oracle documentation as Enclosure 1. The enclosure above this is Enclosure 2. However, PM&C GUI forms may list the enclosures with Enclosure 1 listed first, and Enclosure 2 listed below this in the form lists. This can be a source of confusion.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>Before beginning the procedure, complete hardware installation and verification as well as the IP networking plan and IP assignments.</p> <p>To complete the procedures in this section, you need the following material and information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The appropriate release and Policy Management Application iso image(s) of the Policy Management software stored on the PM&C server. Layout diagram for c-Class enclosure(s), identifying which bays will run which Policy Management application. <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
----------------------	--

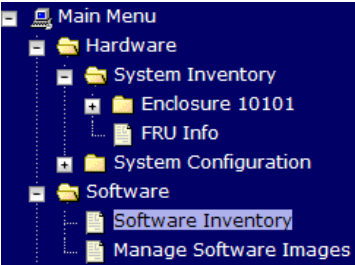
5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter: http://<management_network_ip> Login as PM&C admin user.</p> 
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>PM&C GUI: Select Servers for Application install</p>	<p>Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.</p>  <p>Select the servers on which the application is to be installed. If you want to install the same application image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</p> <p>Note: After the TPD OS has been installed the system will assign a given hostname.</p> <p>Note: 8 is the maximum number to be selected at one time.</p> <p>Click on Upgrade</p>

5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PM&C GUI: Initiate Application Install</p>	<p>The Software – Upgrade Page presents. The left side of this screen shows the servers to which the Application Software will be applied. From the list of available images presented, select the correct version and Application Software Package (CMP/MRA/MPE/Mediation) according to the system design.</p> <p>Software Upgrade - Select Image</p> <hr/> <p>Targets</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Entity</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8E</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8E</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select Image</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Image Name</th> <th>Type</th> <th>Architecture</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>cmp-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>11.5.0 CMP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>11.5.2 CMP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-12.0.0.0_45.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>12.0 CMP GA (1-20-2017)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-12.1.1.0.0_14.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>12.1.1 CMP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>12.1.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-12.2.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>12.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cmp-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>Policy 9.9.2 CMP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FW2_MISC-2.2.9.0.0_10.44.0</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>FUP 2.2.9 MISC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mediation-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>Policy 9.9.2 Mediation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mpe-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>11.5.0 MPE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mpe-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>11.5.2 MPE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mpe-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>x86_64</td> <td>12.1.2 MPE GA (1-20-2017)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Supply Software Upgrade Arguments (Optional)</p> <p><input type="text"/></p> <p><input type="button" value="Start Software Upgrade"/></p> <p>Click on Start Software Upgrade, a confirmation window will pop up, click on OK to proceed with the install</p>	Entity	Status	Enc:801 Bay:8E		Enc:801 Bay:8E		Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description	cmp-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.0 CMP	cmp-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.2 CMP	cmp-12.0.0.0_45.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.0 CMP GA (1-20-2017)	cmp-12.1.1.0.0_14.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.1 CMP	cmp-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)	cmp-12.2.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)	cmp-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	Policy 9.9.2 CMP	FW2_MISC-2.2.9.0.0_10.44.0	Upgrade	x86_64	FUP 2.2.9 MISC	mediation-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	Policy 9.9.2 Mediation	mpe-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.0 MPE	mpe-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.2 MPE	mpe-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.2 MPE GA (1-20-2017)
Entity	Status																																																											
Enc:801 Bay:8E																																																												
Enc:801 Bay:8E																																																												
Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description																																																									
cmp-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.0 CMP																																																									
cmp-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.2 CMP																																																									
cmp-12.0.0.0_45.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.0 CMP GA (1-20-2017)																																																									
cmp-12.1.1.0.0_14.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.1 CMP																																																									
cmp-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)																																																									
cmp-12.2.0.0_65.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.2 CMP GA (1-20-2017)																																																									
cmp-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	Policy 9.9.2 CMP																																																									
FW2_MISC-2.2.9.0.0_10.44.0	Upgrade	x86_64	FUP 2.2.9 MISC																																																									
mediation-9.9.2.0.0_18.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	Policy 9.9.2 Mediation																																																									
mpe-11.5.0.0_39.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.0 MPE																																																									
mpe-11.5.2.1.0_8.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	11.5.2 MPE																																																									
mpe-12.1.2.0.0_22.1.0-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64	12.1.2 MPE GA (1-20-2017)																																																									
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PM&C GUI: Monitor the installation status</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu > Task Monitoring to monitor the progress of the Application Installation task, a separate task will appear for each blade affected.</p> <p>Background Task Monitoring</p> <p>Filter <input type="text"/></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Task</th> <th>Target</th> <th>Status</th> <th>State</th> <th>Running Time</th> <th>Start Time</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>19</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>Enc:10001 Bay:9E</td> <td>Task ID assigned</td> <td>IN_PROGRESS</td> <td>0:00:00</td> <td>2015-02-24 10:22:10</td> <td>40%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>18</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>Enc:10001 Bay:1F</td> <td>Task ID assigned</td> <td>IN_PROGRESS</td> <td>0:00:01</td> <td>2015-02-24 10:22:09</td> <td>40%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>962</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>Enc:801 Bay:12E</td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>0:10:11</td> <td>2017-01-25 12:10:14</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>961</td> <td>Upgrade</td> <td>Enc:801 Bay:4E</td> <td>Success</td> <td>COMPLETE</td> <td>0:11:05</td> <td>2017-01-25 12:10:13</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".</p>	ID	Task	Target	Status	State	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	19	Upgrade	Enc:10001 Bay:9E	Task ID assigned	IN_PROGRESS	0:00:00	2015-02-24 10:22:10	40%	18	Upgrade	Enc:10001 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	IN_PROGRESS	0:00:01	2015-02-24 10:22:09	40%	962	Upgrade	Enc:801 Bay:12E	Success	COMPLETE	0:10:11	2017-01-25 12:10:14	100%	961	Upgrade	Enc:801 Bay:4E	Success	COMPLETE	0:11:05	2017-01-25 12:10:13	100%																		
ID	Task	Target	Status	State	Running Time	Start Time	Progress																																																					
19	Upgrade	Enc:10001 Bay:9E	Task ID assigned	IN_PROGRESS	0:00:00	2015-02-24 10:22:10	40%																																																					
18	Upgrade	Enc:10001 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	IN_PROGRESS	0:00:01	2015-02-24 10:22:09	40%																																																					
962	Upgrade	Enc:801 Bay:12E	Success	COMPLETE	0:10:11	2017-01-25 12:10:14	100%																																																					
961	Upgrade	Enc:801 Bay:4E	Success	COMPLETE	0:11:05	2017-01-25 12:10:13	100%																																																					
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>REPEAT the above steps for each Application</p>	<p>Repeat steps 3 and 4 for each Application beings installed at the site.</p>																																																										

5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

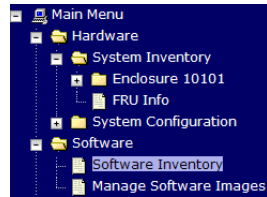
<p>6.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Verify Application installations-Accept Upgrade</p>	<p>Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.</p>  <p>At this point, all the target servers have had their correct applications newly installed and the AppVersion appears as Pending Acc/Reject.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Software Inventory</p> <p>Filter ▾</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ident</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Plat Name</th> <th>Plat Version</th> <th>App Name</th> <th>App Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc 801 Bay 6F</td> <td>192.168.1.35</td> <td>hostnamebe1a17f4da20</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</td> <td>CMP</td> <td>Pending Acc/Rej</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc 801 Bay 8E</td> <td>192.168.1.162</td> <td>hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</td> <td>CMP</td> <td>Pending Acc/Rej</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc 801 Bay 9E</td> <td>192.168.1.237</td> <td>mass-cmp2-1b</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</td> <td>CMP</td> <td>Pending Acc/Rej</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>Verify the App Name shows the correct name (CMP/MPE/MRA/Mediation) for each server on which the Applications are now installed. Also confirm the correct Enclosure and Bay position. Confirm all assignments are per the design. Now select the servers you wish to "Accept Upgrade". The "Accept Upgrade" button will now be available to press. Confirm you wish to accept the Upgrade.</p>	Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Enc 801 Bay 6F	192.168.1.35	hostnamebe1a17f4da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej	Enc 801 Bay 8E	192.168.1.162	hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej	Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.237	mass-cmp2-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version																								
Enc 801 Bay 6F	192.168.1.35	hostnamebe1a17f4da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej																								
Enc 801 Bay 8E	192.168.1.162	hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej																								
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.237	mass-cmp2-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej																								

5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

7.

Verify Application installations-Accept Upgrade

Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.



At this point, all the target servers have had their correct applications newly installed and the AppVersion appears as Pending Acc/Reject.

Software Inventory

Filter

Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.35	hostnamebeta1714da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.162	hostnamebeta2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.237	mass-cmp2-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej

Verify the App Name shows the correct name (CMP/MPE/MRA) for each server on which the Applications are now installed. Also confirm the correct Enclosure and Bay position. Confirm all assignments are per the design. Now select the servers you wish to "Accept Upgrade". The "Accept Upgrade" button will now be available to press. Confirm you wish to accept the Upgrade.

Software Inventory

Filter

Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Desig	Function
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.35	hostnamebeta1714da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.162	hostnamebeta2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.237	mass-cmp2-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.11	TVOEBay10	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	TVOE	3.0.2.0.0-86.36.0		
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.55	MP-A	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	UDR	12.1.0.0.0-13.8.0		
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.56	NO-A	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	UDR	12.1.0.0.0-13.8.0		
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.52	SO-A	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	UDR	12.1.0.0.0-13.8.0		
Enc 801 Bay 11E	192.168.1.241	mass-mpe-2c	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	MPE	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 12E	192.168.1.243	mass-mra-2b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 13E	192.168.1.239	mass-mra-1c	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	MRA	Pending Acc/Rej		
Enc 801 Bay 14E								
Enc 801 Bay 15E								
Enc 802 Bay 2E								

Pause Updates Selection active - updates paused

Buttons: Install OS, Upgrade, **Accept Upgrade**, Reject Upgrade, Transfer ISO Image, Regenerate Guest Device Mapping ISO, Refresh

Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.35	hostnamebeta1714da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.162	hostnamebeta2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Enc 801 Bay 9E	192.168.1.237	mass-cmp2-1b	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	Pending Acc/Rej
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.11	TVOEBay10	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	TVOE	3.0.2.0.0-86.36.0
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.55	MP-A	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	UDR	12.1.0.0.0-13.8.0
Enc 801 Bay 10E	192.168.1.56	NO-A	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.2.0.0-86.36.0	UDR	12.1.0.0.0-13.8.0
Enc 801 Bay 10E						

Message from webpage: Do you really want to accept the upgrades on all selected servers?

Buttons: OK, Cancel

5.3.11: Install the Policy Management Application Software on Blades using PM&C

8.	<div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-bottom: 5px;"></div> <p>Verify Application Installations</p>	<p>Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.</p> <p>Software Inventory</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Filter ▾</div> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Ident</th> <th style="text-align: left;">IP Address</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Hostname</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Plat Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Plat Version</th> <th style="text-align: left;">App Name</th> <th style="text-align: left;">App Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8F</td> <td>192.168.1.35</td> <td>hostnamebe1a17f4da20</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</td> <td>CMP</td> <td>12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Enc:801 Bay:8F</td> <td>192.168.1.162</td> <td>hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd</td> <td>TPD (x86_64)</td> <td>7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0</td> <td>CMP</td> <td>12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>You can now confirm that the “App Version” column no longer displays the “Pending Acc/Rej” status but rather shows the correct Application Version.</p>	Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.35	hostnamebe1a17f4da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0	Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.162	hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0
Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version																	
Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.35	hostnamebe1a17f4da20	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0																	
Enc:801 Bay:8F	192.168.1.162	hostnameee8a2acbb9dbd	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.3.0.0-86.46.0	CMP	12.2.0.0.0_65.1.0																	
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED																							

6. CONFIGURE POLICY APPLICATION SERVERS IN WIRELESS MODE

The following procedures configure the Policy Management Application and establish the network relationships, to a level that would allow a basic test call through the system.

The following procedures are common to c-Class and RMS environments, except for small differences noted within the procedures.

It is assumed that the Installation tasks associated with preparing the appropriate Installation Environment in Section 5 have been completed prior to proceeding with the following tasks.

The post-installation tasks consist of the following:

1. Establishing network addresses and connections for every Policy Management server
2. Configuring the first CMP server
3. Configuring the CMP Site 1 cluster to manage the Policy Management network
4. Configuring a CMP Site 2 cluster for Geo-Redundancy (optional)
5. Configuring Policy Management clusters
6. Exchanging SSH keys between Policy Management servers
7. Configuring routing on servers

[Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

[Platform Configuration User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

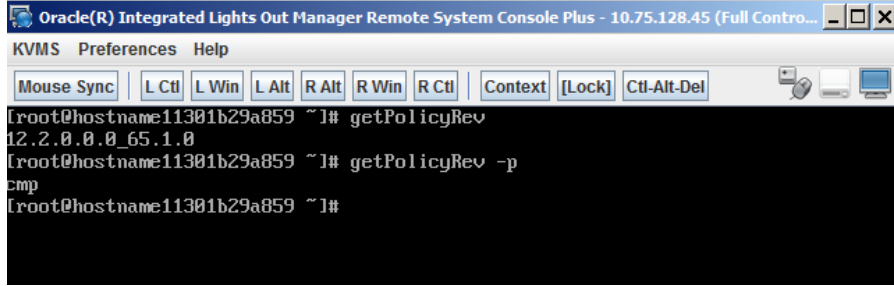
6.1 PERFORM INITIAL SERVER CONFIGURATION OF POLICY SERVERS - PLATCFG

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

STEP #	<p>You must configure the operation, administration, and management (OAM) network address of the server, as well as related networking. Execute the referenced procedure on every server in the Policy Management network.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This procedure assumes that you are using Policy Management in a Wireless or Wireless-C (Wireless with Mediation). • You need to know whether or not the server has an optional Ethernet Mezzanine card installed. • Hostname — the unique hostname for the device being configured. • OAM Real IP IPv4 Address — the IP address that is permanently assigned to this device. • OAM Default IPv4 Route — the default route of the OAM network. The MPE and MRA system may move the default route to the SIG-A interface once the topology configuration is complete. The default route remains on the OAM interface for the CMP system. • OAM Real IP IPv6 Address (optional) — the IP address that is permanently assigned to this device. • OAM Default IPv6 Route (optional) — the default route of the OAM network. Note the MPE and MRA system may move the default route to the SIG-A interface once the topology configuration is complete. The default route remains on the OAM interface for the CMP system. • NTP Server(s) — a reachable NTP server(s) (ntp_address). • DNS Server A (optional) — a reachable DNS server. • DNS Server B (optional) — a reachable DNS server. • DNS Search — the domain name appended to a DNS query. • Device — the bond interface of the OAM device. Use the default value, as changing this value is not supported. • OAM VLAN Id — the OAM network VLAN ID. • SIG A VLAN Id — the Signaling-A network VLAN ID. • SIG B VLAN Id (optional) — the Signaling-B network VLAN ID. • SIG C VLAN Id (optional) — the Signaling-C network VLAN ID. <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
---------------	---

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

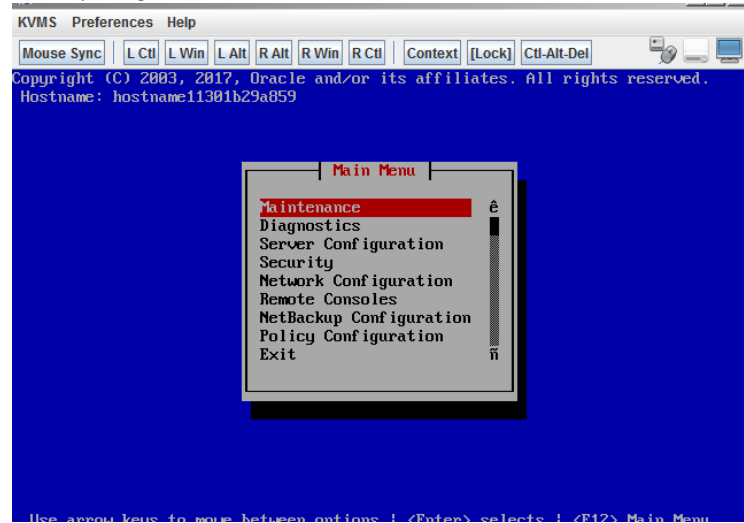
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Login to server as root via Console</p>	<p>Access the iLO GUI, and open a Remote Console session then login as root Note: iLO procedures can be found in section 8:Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Oracle(R) Integrated Lights Out Manager Remote System Console Plus - 10.75.128.45 (Full Control...)". The window has a menu bar with "KVMS", "Preferences", and "Help". Below the menu bar are several buttons: "Mouse Sync", "L Ctl", "L Win", "L Alt", "R Alt", "R Win", "R Ctl", "Context", "[Lock]", and "Ctl-Alt-Del". The terminal content displays a "NOTICE - PROPRIETARY SYSTEM" message, followed by a login prompt: "hostname11301b29a859 login: _".</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remote Console: Verify the type of server</p>	<p>Login as root, via the Remote Console, and confirm the installed Policy Management software version and server profile</p> <pre># getPolicyRev # getPolicyRev -p</pre>  <p>The screenshot shows the same terminal window as above. The terminal content now shows the output of two commands: "[root@hostname11301b29a859 ~]# getPolicyRev" which returns "12.2.0.0_65.1.0", and "[root@hostname11301b29a859 ~]# getPolicyRev -p" which returns "cmp".</p> <p>The Server Profile will be either cmp, mpe, mra or mediation</p>

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

3. Remote Console:
Login to platcfg

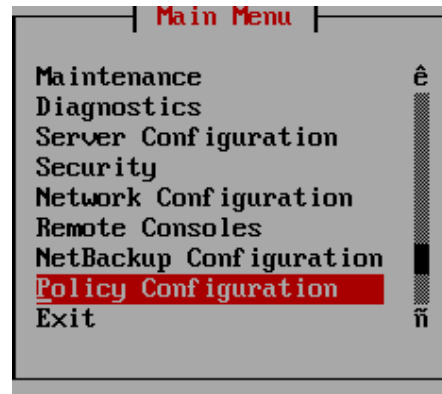
a) Run platcfg tool by executing the following command

```
# su - platcfg
```

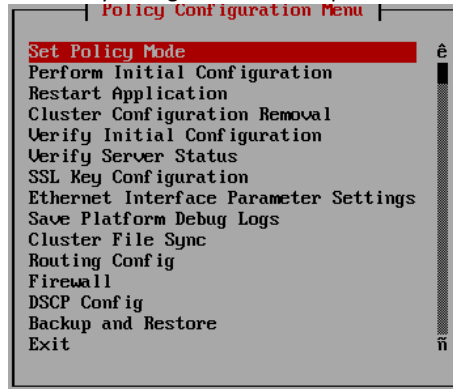


The platcfg tool opens

b) Select : Policy Configuration



The Policy Configuration Menu opens



Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

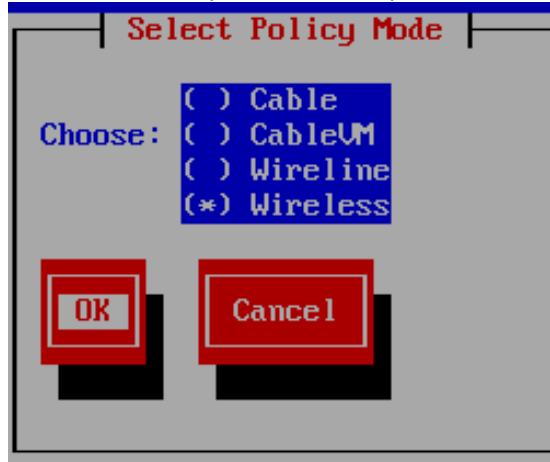
6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

4.

Remote Console: Set Policy Mode

a) Set Policy Mode from the "Select Policy Mode" menu

Select Wireless Policy mode from the options available as shown below:



b) Select: OK

Wireless is the default configuration, if the "Current Policy Mode is "Wireless" prompt is not presented then the Wireless Mode will be set.

c) Select : Yes



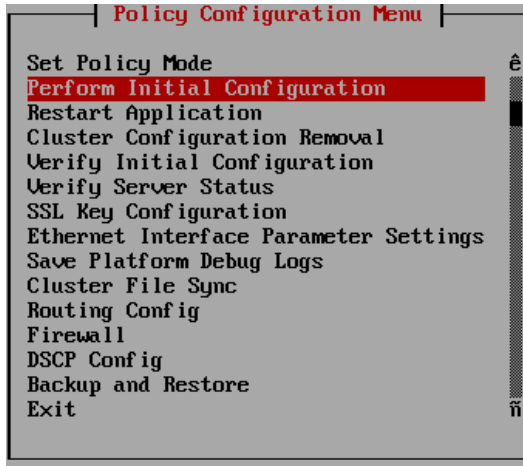
Depending on the hardware configuration you may be presented with a "Select Network Layout" screen. Refer to [Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide Release 12.2](#) (Setting Policy Management Mode) for further detail.

In the case the "Select Network Layout" screen is not presented you will be returned to the Policy Configuration Menu.

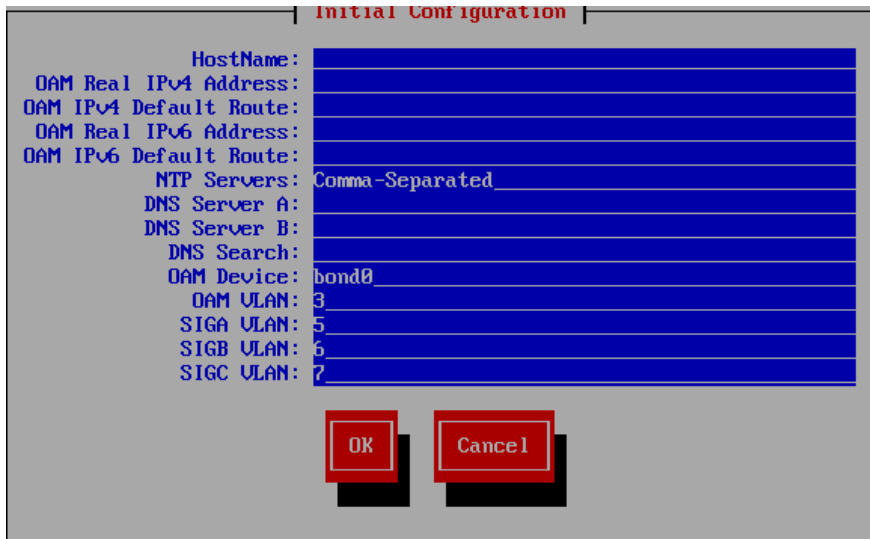
6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

5. Remote Console:
Perform Initial Configuration

From the Policy Configuration Menu select "Perform Initial Configuration"



The initial configuration form opens



Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

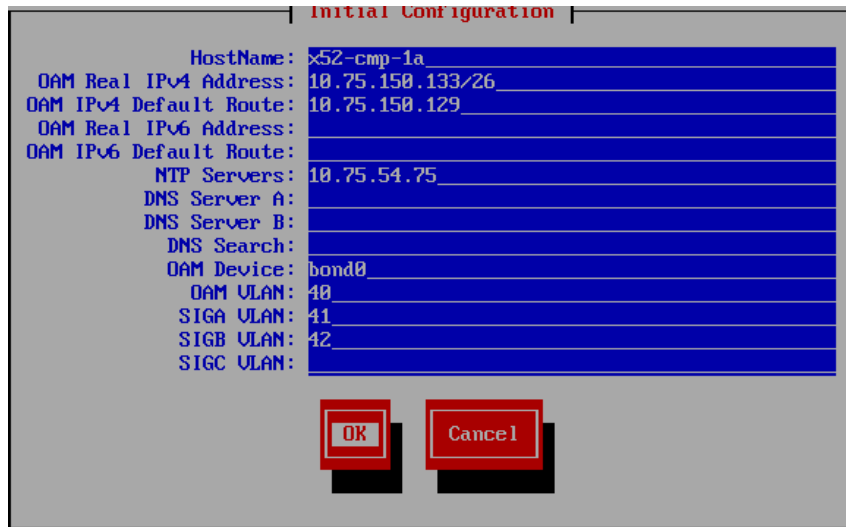
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remote Console: Perform Initial Configuration</p>	<p>Enter the configuration values and then select OK, where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• HostName--The unique name of the host for the device being configured.• OAM Real IP Address--The IP address that is permanently assigned to this device.• OAM Real IPv4 Address--The IPv4 address that is permanently assigned to this device.• OAM Default Route--The default route of the OAM network.• OAM IPv4 Default Route--The IPv4 default route of the OAM network.• OAM Real IPv6 Address--The IPv6 address that is permanently assigned to this device.• OAM IPv6 Default Route--The IPv6 default route of the OAM network.• NTP Server (required)--A reachable NTP server on the OAM network.• DNS Server A (optional)--A reachable DNS server on the OAM network.• DNS Server B (optional)--A second reachable DNS server on the OAM network.• DNS Search-- the domain name appended to a DNS query• OAM Device--The bond interface of the OAM device. Note that the default value should be used, as changing this value is not supported.• OAM VLAN--The OAM network VLAN Id (only applies to c-Class servers or Oracle X5-2 RMS; field does not display otherwise).• SIG A VLAN --The Signaling-A network VLAN Id (only applies to c-Class servers or Oracle X5-2 RMS; field does not display otherwise).• SIG B VLAN (optional)--The Signaling-B network VLAN Id (only applies to c-Class servers or Oracle X5-2 RMS; field does not display otherwise).• SIG C VLAN (optional)--The Signaling-B network VLAN Id (only applies to c-Class servers or Oracle X5-2 RMS; field does not display otherwise). <p>Note: All of the fields listed above are required, except for fields <i>DNS Server</i> and <i>DNS Search</i>, which are optional but recommended.</p> <p>Note: Every network service and IP flow that is supported by IPv4 is now supported by IPv6. Either interface or a combination of the two can be configured.</p>
------------------------------------	---	--

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

7.

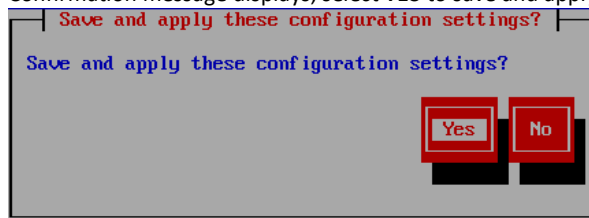
Remote Console:
Perform Initial
Configuration

For example:

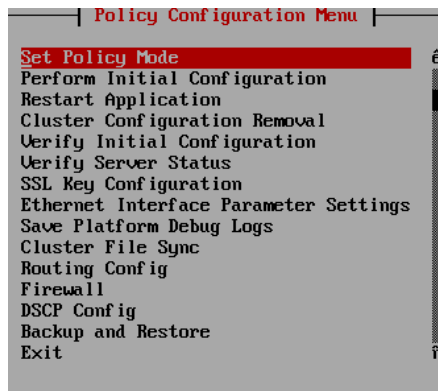


When finished completing the form, select **OK** to save and apply the configuration. At this point the screen pauses for approximately a minute. This is normal behavior.

Confirmation message displays, select **YES** to save and apply the configurations.



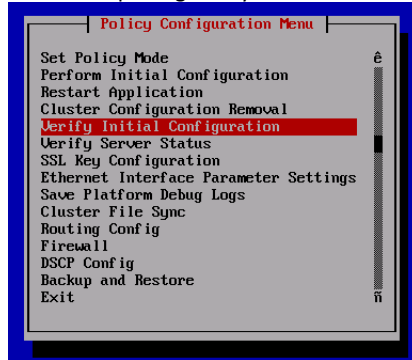
The platcfg form will process the configuration of the server, and then it will return to the platcfg menu.



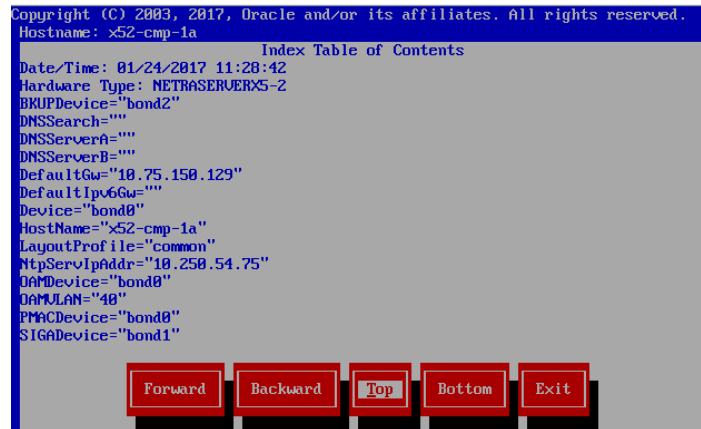
6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

8. Remote Console:
Verify Initial Configuration

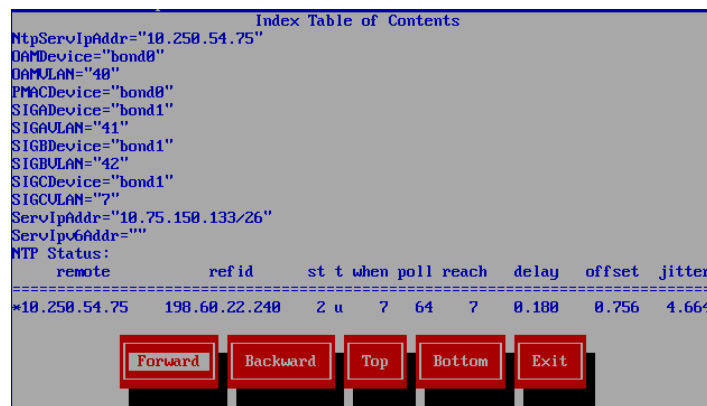
From the main menu navigate to **Policy Configuration -> Verify Initial Configuration** from within the platcfg utility.



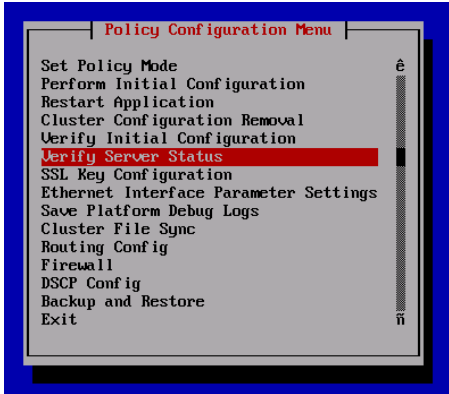
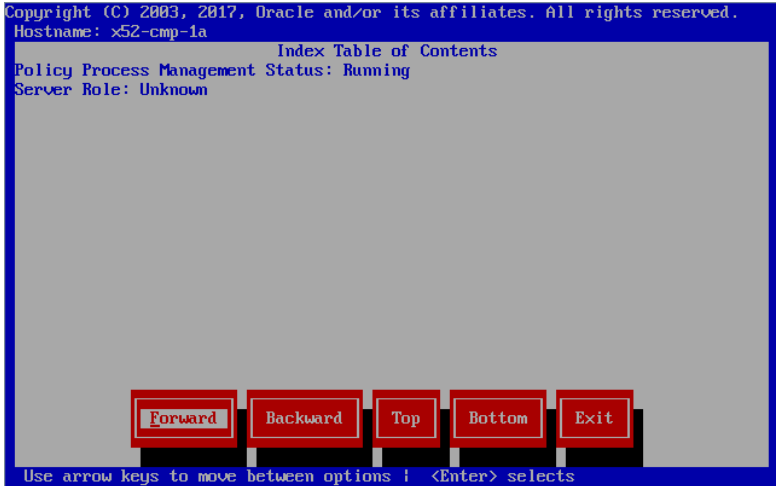
A display similar to the following is shown.



Note: The NTP status may not have updated. This is normal behavior. You may need to press the Forward button to view the NTP status.



6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

<p>9. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Remote Console: Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Exit from this screen and select Verify Server Status:</p>  <p>The server should be in a running state. For example:</p>  <p>Note: At this point in the installation procedure the Server Role will be “Unknown”. “Unknown” is a valid state during initial configuration because the cluster has not yet been formed.</p> <p>Press “Exit” repeatedly until completely exiting the platcfg utility. You will be returned back to Linux prompt screen.</p>
------------------------------------	--	--

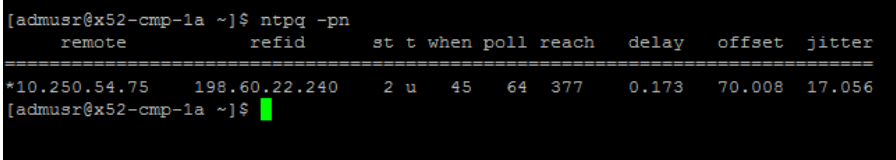
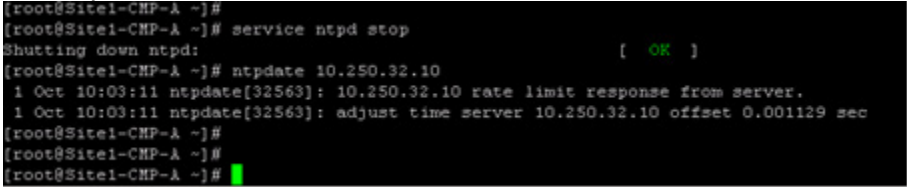
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

<p>10.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ping the OAM default gateway to verify server is available on the network</p>	<p>From the Linux command prompt ping the OAM gateway (default Gateway from the initial config procedure) to make sure the gateway is reachable.</p> <p>Ping the OAM gateway to make sure it is reachable: Using username "admusr".</p> <pre>NOTICE - PROPRIETARY SYSTEM This system is intended to be used solely by authorized users in the course of legitimate corporate business. Users are monitored to the extent necessary to properly administer the system, to identify unauthorized users or users operating beyond their proper authority, and to investigate improper access or use. By accessing this system, you are consenting to this monitoring. Last login: Thu Jan 19 16:49:33 2017 [admusr@x52-cmp-1a ~]\$ ping 10.75.150.129 PING 10.75.150.129 (10.75.150.129) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 10.75.150.129: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.441 ms 64 bytes from 10.75.150.129: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.486 ms ^C --- 10.75.150.129 ping statistics --- 2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1459ms rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.441/0.463/0.486/0.031 ms [admusr@x52-cmp-1a ~]\$</pre> <p>If the gateway is reachable it should be possible to SSH to the server IP and login as admusr</p> <p>In case you cannot SSH to the configured server or cannot reach the OAM gateway, review the initial configurations and review the network setup to ensure there are no connectivity issues.</p> <p>Execute ip -4 addr (IPv4) or ip -6 addr (IPv6) to confirm the IP addresses configured during the initialization are present.</p>
-------------------------------------	---	--

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.1: Perform Initial Server Configuration of Policy Servers - Platcfg

<p>11.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Verify NTP connectivity</p>	<p>NOTE: Server sync to Network Time Protocol (NTP) is very important to the later steps in this install.</p> <p>To sync and verify NTP server connectivity, perform these steps:</p> <pre># ntpq -pn</pre>  <pre>[admusr@x52-cmp-1a ~]\$ ntpq -pn remote refid st t when poll reach delay offset jitter ----- *10.250.54.75 198.60.22.240 2 u 45 64 377 0.173 70.008 17.056 [admusr@x52-cmp-1a ~]\$</pre> <p>The "*" sign besides the NTP server Ip indicates the NTP server is in sync.</p> <p>In case the sign is not there, you may try manually to sync with NTP server through the following steps:</p> <pre># service ntpd stop</pre> <pre># ntpdate <ntpserver address></pre> <p>Bad response: 26 Jun 16:47:25 ntpdate[16364]: no server suitable for synchronization found</p> <p>Good response:</p>  <pre>[root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# service ntpd stop Shutting down ntpd: [OK] [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# ntpdate 10.250.32.10 1 Oct 10:03:11 ntpdate[32563]: 10.250.32.10 rate limit response from server. 1 Oct 10:03:11 ntpdate[32563]: adjust time server 10.250.32.10 offset 0.001129 sec [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]#</pre> <pre># service ntpd start</pre> <p>If ntpdate has a bad response, follow up to get the needed networking, firewalls and permissions to solve this connectivity issue with the NTP server.</p> <p>NOTE: 'ntpdate' is an emergency utility; use only when you see significant time difference between system and the actual time.</p>
<p>12.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Repeat on remaining servers</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure on all Policy components' servers that are planned for service. If solution is geo-redundant, this procedure need to be performed on site1 and site2 Policy servers</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

6.2 PERFORM INITIAL CONFIGURATION OF THE POLICY SERVERS - CMP GUI

This procedure will perform initial configuration of the CMP GUI on a newly installed environment.

Note: In a deployment that has Geo-Redundant CMP servers (that is, CMP servers at two different sites), the other pair of CMP servers will be added to the network topology using the CMP server at Site 1. The CMP Site 1 cluster will push the configuration to the Site 2 (Geo-Redundant) CMP servers later.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

STEP #	<p>This procedure will configure the CMP at the Active site (CMP Site 1).</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network access to the CMP OAM REAL IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) • If network access to the CMP is not available and the installation has an Aggregation switch, then a laptop can be configured to use a port on the Aggregation switch to access the CMP GUI. If an Aggregation switch is not available, a temporary switch may be used to provide network access to the CMP GUI. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE..</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP GUI	<p>Open CMP GUI for the first time by opening the CMP OAM IP address in a supported browser: <a href="http://<cmp_real_OAM_ip>">http://<cmp_real_OAM_ip></p> <p>Note: The initial GUI configuration can be performed on either CMP that will be located at Site1. If this is not geo-redundant solution there will be no Site 2 location.</p> <p>If Network access has not been been enabled and the Installation has an Aggregation switch, then a laptop can be configured to use a port on the Aggregation switch to access the CMP GUI. Alternately, if an Aggregation switch is not available, a temporary Aggregation switch may be needed during installation.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP GUI: Set CMP Mode in 1 st selected CMP	<p>Once connected to the CMP GUI for the 1st time the , the user will be prompted to configure operation mode settings for the system, which define what functionality will be configurable from the CMP GUI. The selection depends on the customer deployment.</p> <p>The Policy Management Initial Configuration Screen presents as follows:</p>


Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

		<p>[Note: modes can be changed at a later time if needed, but the method to access to this mode selection is not documented.] Contact Oracle Support if Mode selection is required to be changed after the initial configuration.</p>
<p>3.</p>	<p>CMP GUI: Set CMP Mode in 1st selected CMP</p>	<p>Below is an example of a configuration that will provide basic functionality for a Policy 12.2.x Wireless solution. The wireless mode of operation will have already been confirmed in earlier procedures. (Checkboxes are for example only).</p> <p>For greater detail refer to the Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide – CMP Modes section</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI


Policy Management Initial Configuration Screen

CMP is not currently configured in an operational mode. Please configure it before proceeding.

Important: Options marked as **Restricted** are for use within specific environments and should not be enabled without authorization.

Mode

Cable	
PCMM	<input type="checkbox"/>
DQOS (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Diameter AF	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wireless	
Diameter 3GPP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Diameter 3GPP2 (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
PCC Extensions (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quotas Gx	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Quotas Gy (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
LI (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
SCE-Gx (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gx-Lite (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cisco Gx (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
DSR (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wireless-C (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
SMS	
SMPP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
CMPP (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
XML (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
SPR	
Subscriber Profiles (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Quota (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Wireline (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
SPC (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
RADIUS (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
BoD	
PCMM	<input type="checkbox"/>
Diameter (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
RDR (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>

Manage Policy Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Manage MA Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Policies	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Manage MRAs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Manage BoDs	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Mediation Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage SPR Subscriber Data	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Geo-Redundant	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manager is HA (clustered)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Manage Analytic Data	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Direct Link	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>


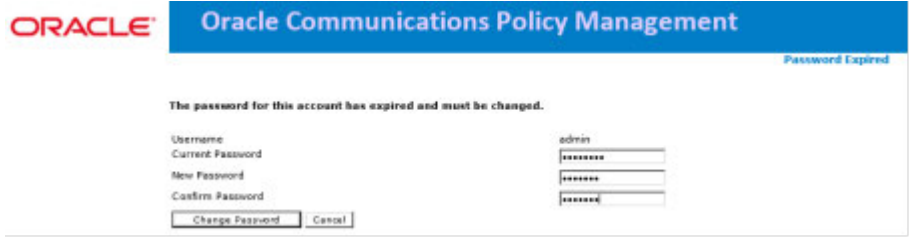
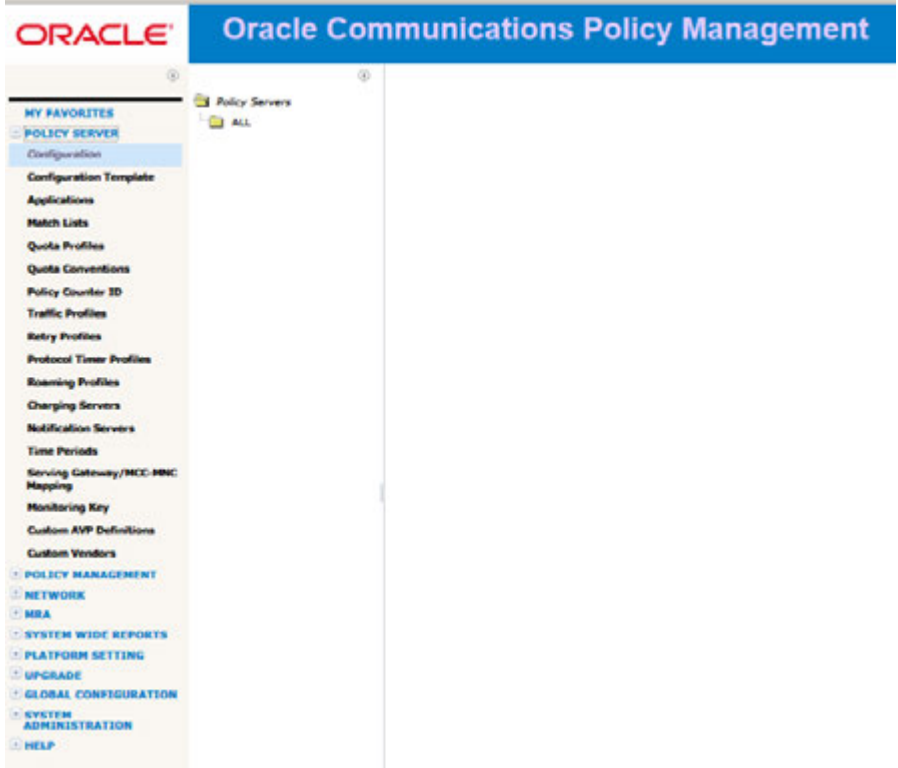
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

		<p>For a Wireless-C network:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wireless: Diameter 3GPP, Quotas Gx, DSR, Wireless-C; SMS: CMPP • Manage Policy Servers • Manage Policies • Manage MRAs • Manage Mediation Servers • Manage SPR Subscriber Data • Manager is HA (clustered) <p>About using Wireless-C Mode:</p> <p>Wireless-C : Supports a wireless system supporting a Mediation server; SMS Notification Statistics; and SCTP counters</p> <p>To support a Mediation server, the Policy Management system must be configured for Wireless-C mode and have “Manage Mediation Servers” enabled.</p> <p>The Mediation server provides the interface between a Subscriber Profile Repository (SPR) server and a business and operation support system (BOSS) client to manage subscriber data. The Mediation server uses SOAP messaging over HTTP/HTTPS protocol to process subscriber profile and service subscription data.</p> <p>Additional Information:</p> <p>Diameter 3GPP, 3GPP2(Restricted) and Gx-Lite (Restricted) enable the functionality required to support these protocols in a Policy Management Solution</p> <p>LI (Restricted) is used if the MPE installation will perform LI (Lawful Intercept)functions. To use this option the LI version of the MPE ISO image must have been installed on the MPEs in the Policy Management Solution. Contact Oracle Support for additional Information.</p> <p>Manage Policy Servers & Manage Policies are basic functions of the Policy Management Solution</p> <p>Manage MRAs is only needed if MRAs, which are optional, are planned in the deployment</p> <p>Manager is HA (clustered) provides High Availability functionality for a clustered pair of servers and is typically used in customer deployments.</p> <p>Manager is NW CMP & Manager is S-CMP are specific to a “Tiered CMP System” deployment. Refer to Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide for the procedure to deploy a Tiered CMP System.</p> <p>Note: The mode selections on this form depend on the customer deployment and should conform with the engineering team responsible for the planned Policy Management Solution deployment.</p>
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: Login to CMP GUI</p>	<p>After finishing the policy mode selection and pressing “OK”, login screen below would be displayed:</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

		 <p>The image shows the Oracle Configuration Management Platform (CMP) welcome screen. It features the Oracle logo at the top left, followed by the word 'WELCOME' in yellow. Below this, a message reads: 'Welcome to the Configuration Management Platform (CMP). Please enter your user name and password below to access the CMP desktop. If you do not have an existing user name or password, or if you have misplaced either, please contact the system administrator.' At the bottom, there is a yellow box with a message: 'You have logged out or your session has timed out. Please enter your username and password to start a new session.' Below this message are two input fields for 'USERNAME' and 'PASSWORD', and a 'Login' button.</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: Set admin password</p>	<p>Initial, default login is admin/policies After login, the system will prompt the user to change the admin password.</p>  <p>The image shows the Oracle Communications Policy Management password change screen. It has a blue header with the Oracle logo and the text 'Oracle Communications Policy Management'. On the right side of the header, it says 'Password Expired'. Below the header, a message states: 'The password for this account has expired and must be changed.' There are four input fields: 'Username' (with 'admin' pre-filled), 'Current Password', 'New Password', and 'Confirm Password'. At the bottom, there are 'Change Password' and 'Cancel' buttons.</p> <p>Enter the default old password then the new password twice and press “Change Password” button.</p>
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: Verify that the CMP GUI is displayed, with expected menus.</p>	 <p>The image shows the main menu of the Oracle Communications Policy Management GUI. It features a blue header with the Oracle logo and the text 'Oracle Communications Policy Management'. Below the header, there is a navigation pane on the left with a tree view of menus. The 'POLICY SERVER' menu is expanded, showing sub-menus like 'Configuration', 'Configuration Template', 'Applications', 'Match Lists', 'Quota Profiles', 'Quota Conventions', 'Policy Counter ID', 'Traffic Profiles', 'Retry Profiles', 'Protocol Timer Profiles', 'Roaming Profiles', 'Charging Services', 'Notification Services', 'Time Periods', 'Serving Gateway/MCC-MNC Mapping', 'Monitoring Key', 'Custom AVP Definitions', and 'Custom Vendors'. Other main menu items include 'POLICY MANAGEMENT', 'NETWORK', 'MRA', 'SYSTEM WIDE REPORTS', 'PLATFORM SETTING', 'UPGRADE', 'GLOBAL CONFIGURATION', 'SYSTEM ADMINISTRATION', and 'HELP'.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

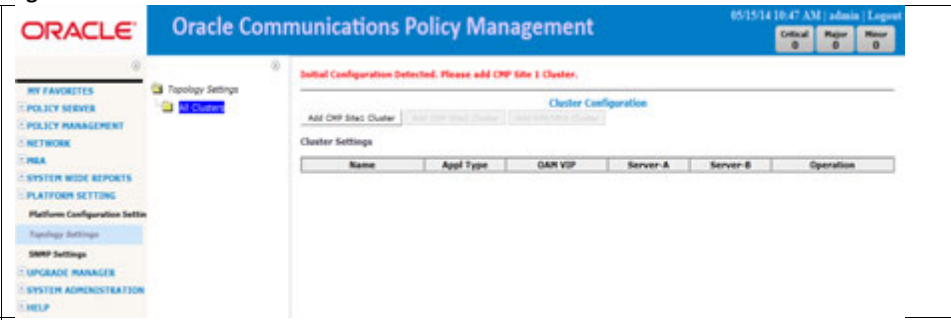
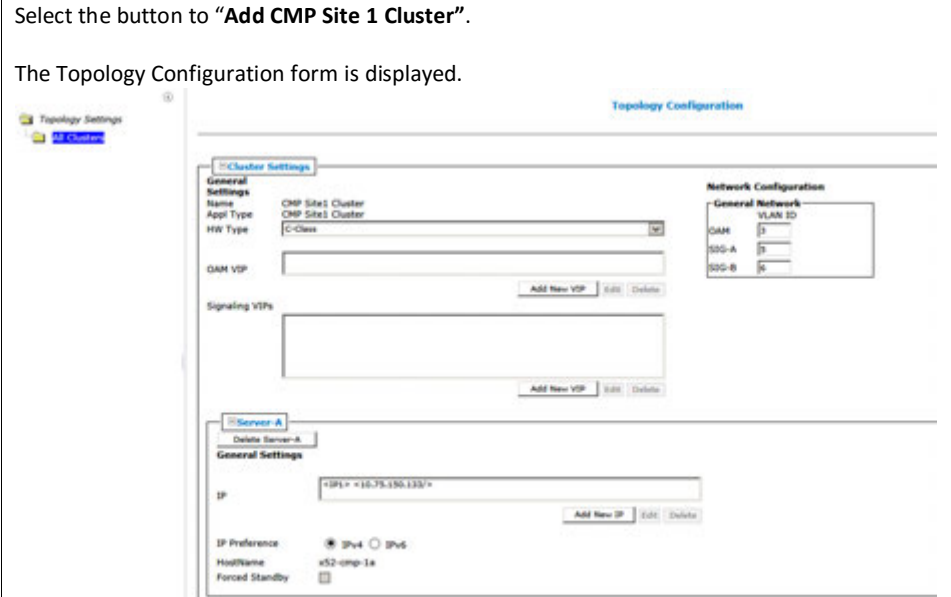
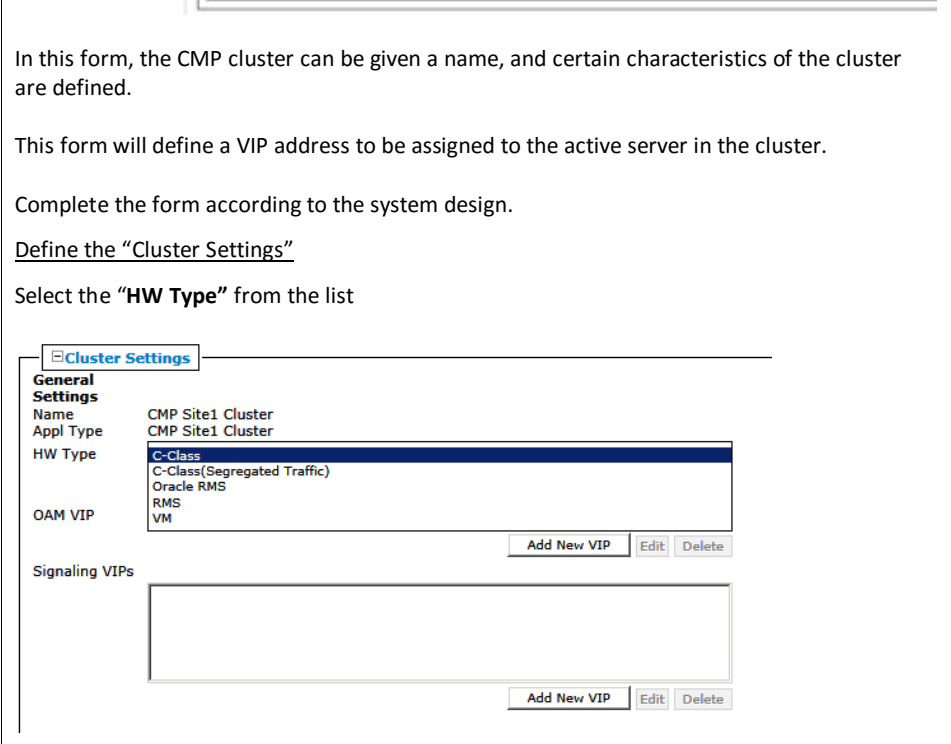
6.3 CMP SITE1 CLUSTER CONFIGURATION

This procedure will perform initial configuration of the CMP GUI, CMP Site 1 cluster

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>You must configure the active site (Site 1) CMP cluster.</p> <p>Note: In a deployment that has Geo-Redundant CMP servers (that is, CMP servers at two different sites), the other pair of CMP servers will be added to the network topology using the CMP server at Site 1. The CMP Site 1 cluster will push the configuration to the Site 2 (Geo-Redundant) CMP servers later.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OAM VIP — IP address and netmask for the cluster VIP address on the OAM network. • Hostname — The names you choose for each server in the cluster. • Signaling VIPs (optional) — Up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and netmasks of the signaling VIP addresses. For each, select None, SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. If you specify either SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C you must enter a Signaling VIP value. • The admin password (cmp_password) you previously defined. • Cluster Name — The name you choose for the CMP cluster (the default is CMP Site 1 Cluster). • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select c-Class, c-Class (segregated traffic), or Netra hardware, VLANs are required. For RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • Network VLAN IDs — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. • SNMP configuration (optional)— snmp_sys_location (the enclosure name), snmp_community_string (the community string), and snmp_trap_destination (the trap destination), which you previously defined. • Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: View Topology Settings</p>	<p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in Oracle Communications Policy Management 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later • Google Chrome version 40.0 or later • <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p> <p>Select: Menu → Platform Settings → Topology Settings → all clusters</p> <p>The initial form will open, and display a message that initial configuration detected and CMP Site 1 Cluster should be added.</p>

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

		
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Add CMP Site 1 Cluster – Server A</p>	<p>Select the button to “Add CMP Site 1 Cluster”.</p> <p>The Topology Configuration form is displayed.</p>  <p>In this form, the CMP cluster can be given a name, and certain characteristics of the cluster are defined.</p> <p>This form will define a VIP address to be assigned to the active server in the cluster.</p> <p>Complete the form according to the system design.</p> <p><u>Define the “Cluster Settings”</u></p> <p>Select the “HW Type” from the list</p> 

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

Available options are:

- C-Class (default) – HP Enterprise ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8/Gen9 server
- C-Class (Segregated Traffic) (a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment) – HP Enterprise ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8/Gen9
- Oracle RMS (rack-mounted servers using tagged VLANs)
- RMS (for a rack-mounted server not using VLANs)
- VM (virtual machine)

If you selected C-Class, C-Class (Segregated Traffic), or Oracle RMS, enter the General Network - VLAN IDs.

Enter the **OAM**, **SIG-A**, and (optionally) SIG-B virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.

VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:

- OAM – 3
- SIG-A – 5
- SIG-B – 6

Select OAM VIP “Add New VIP”.

The New OAM VIP dialog box appears: Enter the OAM VIP and the mask.

This is the IP address the CMP server uses to communicate with a Policy Management cluster.

Note: Enter the IPv4 address in standard dot format and its subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0 to 32, or the IPv6 address in standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format and its subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0 to 128.

Click “**Save**”.

The OAM VIP and mask are saved. Repeat this step for a second OAM VIP, if needed.

Note: Typically Signaling VIPs are not added to the CMP

Define the settings for **Server-A** in the Server-A section of the page

The “**IP**” address and “**Host Name**” of **Server-A** will be the IP address and Host Name used during the “Initial Configuration” of the server from section 6.1 of this document. They must match exactly. If Server-A is network reachable from the CMP it is recommended to use the “load” button once the IP address and IP Preference have been defined. The CMP will attempt to load the hostname from the ip reachable server. This will not only confirm network connectivity but will also minimize the possibility of th incorrectly defining the Host Name.

To configure Server-A, in the Server-A section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPV6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
 - If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.
- b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the ip address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

Server-A example:

The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Server-A" with a "Delete Server-A" button. Under "General Settings", there is an "IP" field containing "<IP1> <10.75.150.133/>". To the right of this field are three buttons: "Add New IP", "Edit", and "Delete". Below the IP field, the "IP Preference" section has two radio buttons: "IPv4" (which is selected) and "IPv6". The "HostName" field contains "x52-cmp-1a" and the "Forced Standby" checkbox is unchecked.

Topology Configuration of the HW Type "Oracle RMS" example:

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

Cluster Settings

General Settings

Name: CMP Site1 Cluster
 Appl Type: CMP Site1 Cluster
 HW Type: Oracle RMS

OAM VIP: <OAM VIP1> <10.75.150.132/26>

Signaling VIPs:

Network Configuration

General Network

OAM: 40
 SIG-A: 41
 SIG-B: 42

Server-A

General Settings

IP: <IP1> <10.75.150.133/>

IP Preference: IPv4 IPv6
 HostName: x52-cmp-1a
 Forced Standby:

Save Cancel

When done, **Save** the form and select **OK**.

If the configuration contains VLAN IDs you will be prompted to confirm the VLAN IDs.

VLAN Confirmation

The VLAN IDs on the page must match the VLAN IDs configured on the server. A mismatch will cause HA to fail. Please confirm that the VLAN IDs are correct before saving.

Site	OAM	SIG-A	SIG-B
Primary	40	41	42

Then the following confirmation prompt appears. Click <OK>

Warning

Active Server will restart and you will be logged out.

At this point you will be logged out of CMP GUI.

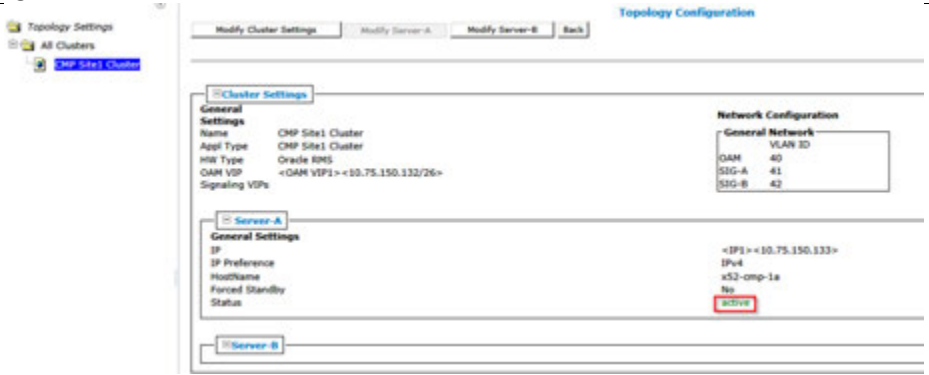
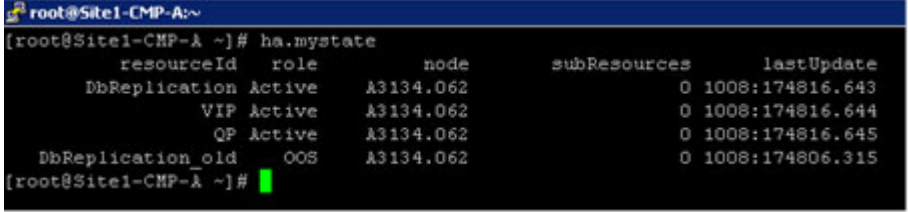
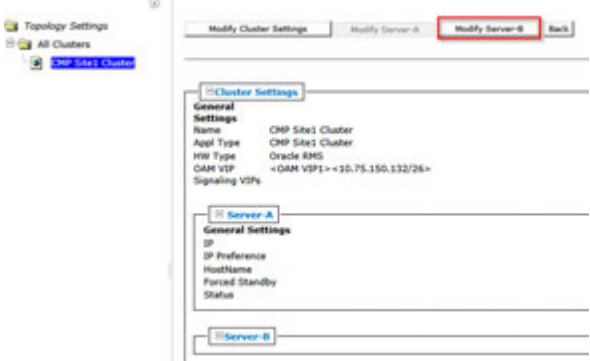
3.

CMP GUI: Login using the CMP cluster VIP.

After the Topology Configuration is saved, the CMP VIP address will be taken by the Active CMP server of the cluster. This may take a minute.

Login to the CMP GUI using the VIP address, then navigate to **Platform Settings** → **Topology Settings** → **all clusters** → **CMP Site1 Cluster**

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

		
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>SSH to CLI: If the CMP VIP is not available</p>	<p>Verify the configured CMP server is now in “Active” state</p> <p>SSH to the CMP Real IP address of the CMP server to confirm the server role is “active” as shown below</p> <pre># ha.mystate</pre>  <p>NOTE: “DbReplication_old” with role “OOS” is not an indication of a problem and can be ignored.</p> <p>It is still possible to login to the CMP server with its Real IP address, if needed, to verify that the Topology Configuration was done correctly.</p>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: Modify CMP Site 1 Cluster – add Server B</p>	<p><i>Modify CMP Site 1 Cluster – add Server B</i></p> <p>Select: Menu → Platform Settings → Topology Settings Select View for CMP Site 1 Cluster Select Modify Server B</p>  <p>The Topology Configuration now presents Server-B for configuration.</p>

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

Cluster Settings

General Settings

Name: CMP Site1 Cluster
 Appl Type: CMP Site1 Cluster
 HW Type: Oracle RMS
 OAM VIP: <OAM VIP1><10.75.150.132/26>
 Signaling VIPs:

Network Configuration

General Network	
	VLAN ID
OAM	40
SIG-A	41
SIG-B	42

Server-A

General Settings

IP: <IP1><10.75.150.133>
 IP Preference: IPv4
 HostName: x52-cmp-1a
 Forced Standby: No
 Status: active

Server-B

Delete Server-B

General Settings

IP:

Add New IP Edit Delete

IP Preference: IPv4 IPv6

HostName: Load

Forced Standby:

Define the settings for **Server-B** in the Server-B section of the page

To configure Server-B, in the Server-B section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPV6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.


- b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

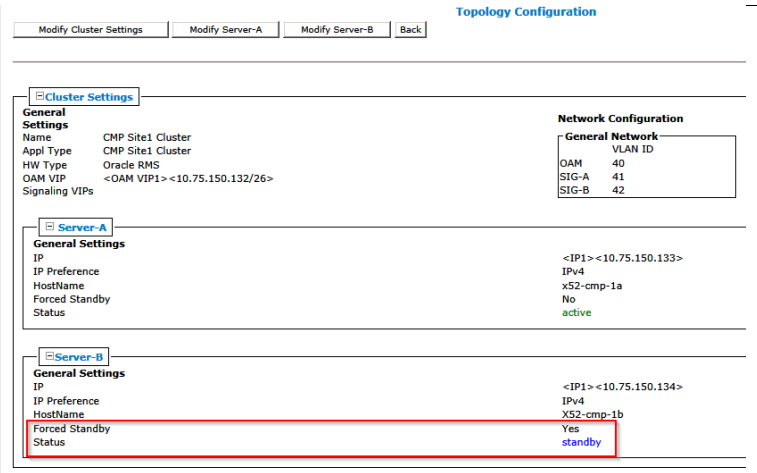
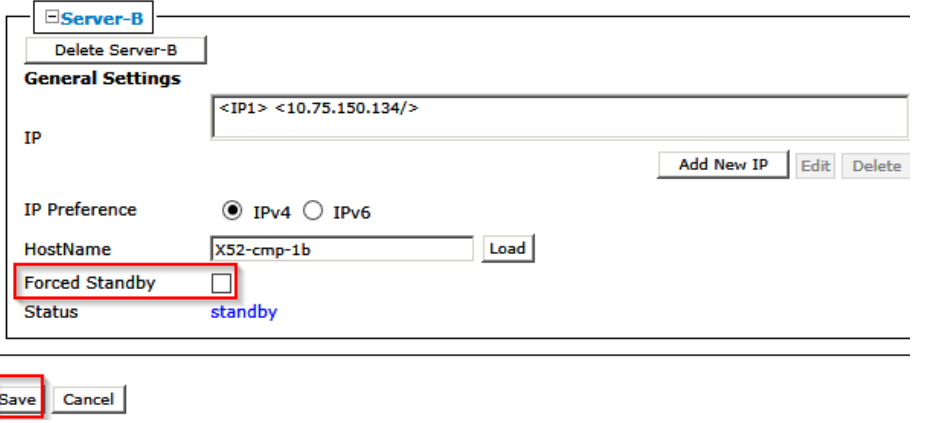
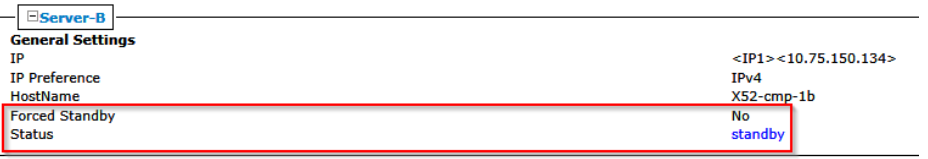
Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the ip address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

Example of Site1 CMP Cluster Server B Topology Configuration

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

		<div> <p>Server-B</p> <p>Delete Server-B</p> <p>General Settings</p> <p>IP: <IP1> <10.75.150.134></p> <p>IP Preference: <input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6</p> <p>HostName: X52-cmp-1b <input type="button" value="Load"/></p> <p>Forced Standby: Automatically set</p> <p><input type="button" value="Add New IP"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/></p> </div> <div> <p><input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div> <p>a. Select "save" then "OK" on the following confirmation message.</p> <div> <p>Warning</p> <p>Active Server will restart and you will be logged out.</p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div> <p>The server status will be "out-of-service" for few minutes and that is expected until the cluster forms.</p> <div> <p>Server-B</p> <p>General Settings</p> <p>IP: <IP1> <10.75.150.134></p> <p>IP Preference: IPv4</p> <p>HostName: X52-cmp-1b</p> <p>Forced Standby: Yes</p> <p>Status: out-of-service</p> </div> <p>Note: Wait for any Alarms, such as the following, to clear. This takes about 5 minutes</p> <div> <p>31282 The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault</p> </div>
<p>6.</p> 	<p>CMP GUI: Verify Server B is added</p>	<p>Refresh the CMP GUI screen: Menu → Topology → CMP Site 1 Cluster</p>

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

		 <p>Verify status is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forced Standby = yes (automatically set upon entering CMP Server-B information) • Status = standby (after refreshing the page)
<p>7.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Remove Force Standby on Server B</p>	<p>Click Modify Server-B button and uncheck “Force Standby”, then click Save when finished and OK to the following confirmation message:</p>  <p>Verify status becomes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forced Standby = no • Status = Standby 
<p>8.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Verify CMP cluster</p>	<p>SYSTEM ADMINISTRATION → Reports</p> <p>Verify both CMP servers are present , with one “Active” and the other in “standby” status and also the status of the cluster is “On-line”:</p>

6.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Topology Configuration

Blades	State	Blade Failures	Overall	Uptime
10.75.150.133 (Server-A)	Active	2		5 hours 54 mins 20 secs
10.75.150.134 (Server-B)	Standby	3		15 mins 23 secs

9. **CMP GUI: Verify CMP cluster**

SYSTEM WIDE REPORTS → Active Alarms
Verify that there are no active alarms on CMP(s).

10. **CMP GUI: Add SNMP Servers**

PLATFORM SETTING → SNMP Settings
Make the appropriate configuration for SNMP destination, version and community string and then select save.

NOTE: De-select the checkbox for “traps enabled” until ready to go live.

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

6.4 CONFIGURING ADDITIONAL CLUSTERS

You must configure the management relationships between the active-site CMP cluster and the other servers as well as the cluster assignments. After you complete these procedures, the status of the servers will be available from the CMP system.

You can configure clusters at remote sites even if those sites are not yet fully networked or configured. In this case the CMP system reports alarms and will continue to try to establish the management services to the clusters until it can reach them. When the clusters become available, the CMP system will update status and the alarms will clear.


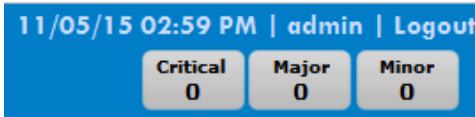
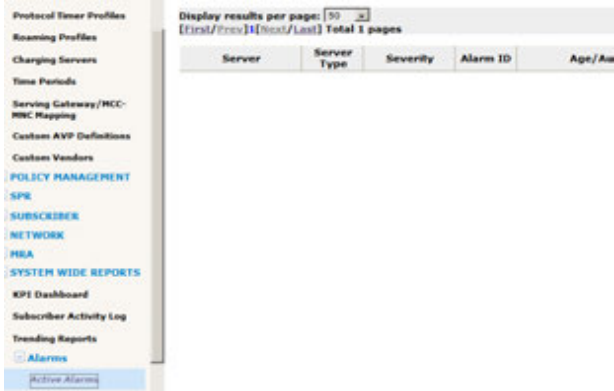
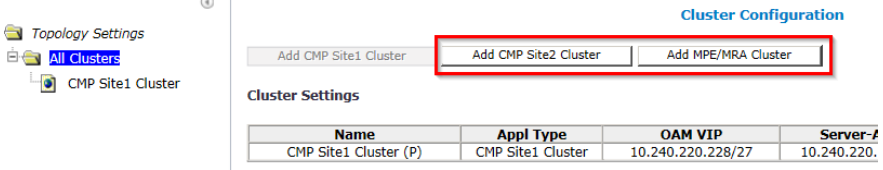
Note: For the full management relationships to be established, certain IP network services must be allowed between the CMP Site 1 cluster and the other clusters in the network. Incorrectly configured firewalls in the network can cause the management relationships to fail and alarms to be raised at the CMP system.

6.4.1 Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

STEP #	<p>This procedure will configure a Geo-Redundant CMP Site2 Cluster. After this procedure a Site2 CMP Cluster will be visible on the CMP GUI: Platform Setting → Topology Settings</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Certain IP network services must be allowed between the CMP Site1 cluster and the CMP Site2 cluster in the network, in order for the Geo-Redundant CMP relationship to be established. Incorrectly configured Firewalls in the network can cause issues. It is highly recommended that any network issues are resolved before performing this procedure.</p> <p>Prerequisites: Before beginning this procedure, verify that you have HTTP access to the CMP server. The Policy Management CMP software must be installed on the target servers which will form the CMP Site2 Cluster and they must have been configured with network time protocol (NTP), IP routing, and OAM IP addresses. See Section 5:Preparing the System Environment in this document.</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select c-Class, c-Class (segregated traffic), or Netra hardware, VLANs are required. For RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • OAM VIP — The IP address and netmask the CMP cluster uses to communicate with an MPE or MRA cluster. • Network VLAN IDs (depends on HW Type) — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. • The information that you previously configured for the CMP Site 1 cluster. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	CMP GUI: Login to CMP Server GUIs (using VIP)	<p>From Browser, enter CMP Server VIP in Navigation string.</p> <p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in OCM 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later • Google Chrome version 40.0 or later <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p>

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

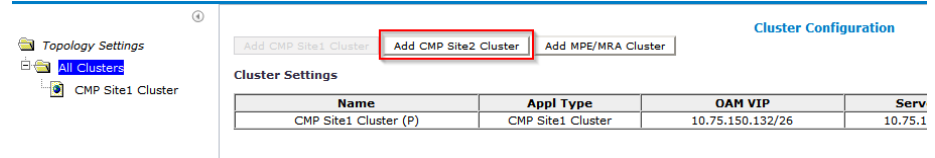
		 <p>ORACLE WELCOME</p> <p>Welcome to the Configuration Management Platform (CMP). Please enter your user name and password below to access the CMP desktop. If you do not have an existing user name or password, or if you have misplaced either, please contact the system administrator.</p> <p>You have logged out or your session has timed out. Please enter your username and password to start a new session.</p> <p>USERNAME: <input type="text"/> PASSWORD: <input type="password"/> <input type="button" value="Login"/></p>								
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: View Active Alarms</p>	<p>It is recommended to View the Active Alarms in the system before performing Configuration work. Check Alarm information and determine if any Alarms present may affect configuration activities.</p>  <p>11/05/15 02:59 PM admin Logout</p> <p>Critical 0 Major 0 Minor 0</p> <p>View of Alarms from CMP GUI upper right banner</p>  <p>View of Alarms from System Wide Reports -> Active Alarms</p> <p>IMPORTANT: In Policy 12.2.x, there is On-line help provided for Alarm descriptions. In the Alarm views, click on the alarm Id to open the Alarm description help page. Alternatively, from the Menu select On-Line Help, and select Troubleshooting Guide. Search this for the Alarm Id.</p>								
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP: View Topology Settings</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p>  <p>Topology Settings</p> <p>All Clusters</p> <p>CMP Site1 Cluster</p> <p>Cluster Configuration</p> <p>Add CMP Site1 Cluster Add CMP Site2 Cluster Add MPE/MRA Cluster</p> <p>Cluster Settings</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Appl Type</th> <th>OAM VIP</th> <th>Server-IP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td> <td>10.240.220.228/27</td> <td>10.240.220.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The Topology Settings screen allows for the selection of adding a CMP Site2 Cluster (used for CMP Cluster Geo-Redundancy) or adding an (MPE/MRA) Cluster.</p> <p>Note: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster does not require the “Manage Geo-Redundant” mode option to be selected. This option is for adding Geo-Redundant MPE/MRA/Mediation clusters.</p>	Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Server-IP	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.240.220.228/27	10.240.220.
Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Server-IP							
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.240.220.228/27	10.240.220.							

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

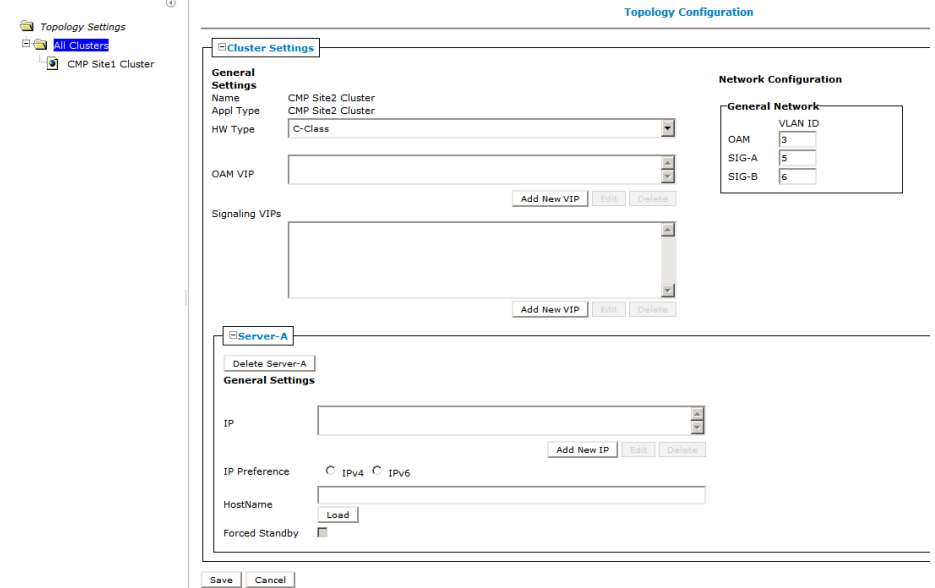
4. **CMP GUI: Add Site 2 CMP Cluster**

Adding a CMP Site2 CMP cluster is optional. If the Policy Management Solution design calls for “Geo-Redundant” CMP clusters, the “Site 2 CMP Cluster” must be configured from the “CMP Site1 Cluster” GUI.

PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings



Select “Add CMP Site2 Cluster” and the Topology Configuration from presents



Complete the form according to the system design.

Define the “Cluster Settings”

Select the “HW Type” from the list.

Available options are:

- C-Class (default) – HP Enterprise ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8/Gen9 server
- C-Class (Segregated Traffic) (a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment) – HP Enterprise ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8/Gen9
- Oracle RMS (rack-mounted servers using tagged VLANs)
- RMS (for a rack-mounted server not using VLANs)
- VM (virtual machine)

If you selected C-Class, C-Class (Segregated Traffic), or Oracle RMS, enter the General Network - VLAN IDs.

Enter the **OAM**, **SIG-A**, and (optionally) **SIG-B** virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:

- OAM – 3
- SIG-A – 5
- SIG-B – 6

Select OAM VIP **“Add New VIP”**.

OAM VIP

The New OAM VIP dialog box appears: Enter the OAM VIP and the mask.

This is the IP address the CMP server uses to communicate with a Policy Management cluster.

Note: Enter the IPv4 address in standard dot format and its subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0 to 32, or the IPv6 address in standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format and its subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0 to 128.

Click **“Save”**.

The OAM VIP and mask are saved. Repeat this step for a second OAM VIP, if needed.

Note: Typically Signaling VIPs are not added to the CMP.

Define the settings for **Server-A** in the Server-A section of the page

The **“IP”** address and **“Host Name”** of **Server-A** will be the IP address and Host Name used during the **“Initial Configuration”** of the server from section 6.1 of this document. They must match exactly. If Server-A is network reachable from the CMP it is recommended to use the **“load”** button once the IP address and IP Preference have been defined. The CMP will attempt to load the hostname from the IP reachable server. This will not only confirm network connectivity but will also minimize the possibility of incorrectly defining the Host Name.

To configure Server-A, in the Server-A section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPV6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this is a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required

For example: Here the HostName has been populated by clicking on the “load” button.

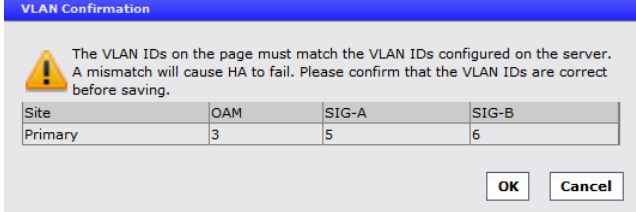

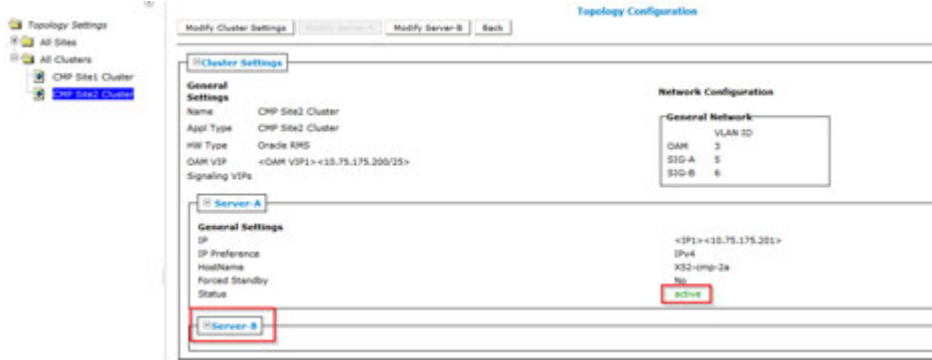
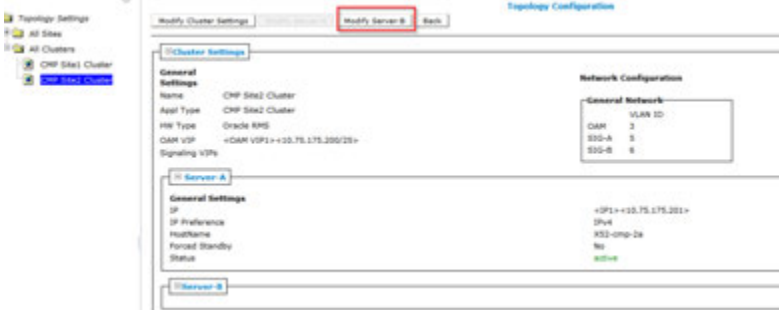
The screenshot shows the configuration form for 'Server-A'. The 'General Settings' section includes an IP field with a dropdown menu showing '<IP1><10.75.175.201>'. Below the IP field are buttons for 'Add New IP', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. The 'IP Preference' section has radio buttons for 'IPv4' (selected) and 'IPv6'. The 'HostName' field contains the text 'X52-cmp-2a', which is highlighted with a red box. A 'Load' button is positioned below the HostName field. The 'Forced Standby' checkbox is unchecked.

An example of the completed form for HW Type “Oracle RMS”.

The screenshot displays the 'Topology Configuration' window. On the left, a tree view shows 'CMP Site2 Cluster' selected. The main area is divided into 'Cluster Settings' and 'Server-A' sections. The 'Cluster Settings' section includes: 'Name' (CMP Site2 Cluster), 'Appl Type' (CMP Site2 Cluster), 'HW Type' (Oracle RMS), and 'DAM VIP' (+DAM VIPs <10.75.175.200/25>). The 'Network Configuration' section shows a table for 'General Network' with columns for 'VLAN ID', 'DAM', 'SIG-A', and 'SIG-B'. The 'Server-A' section is identical to the previous screenshot, with the 'Load' button highlighted in red. At the bottom of the window are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

“Save” the completed form and confirm the VLAN IDs if needed

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

		 <p>The VLAN IDs on the page must match the VLAN IDs configured on the server. A mismatch will cause HA to fail. Please confirm that the VLAN IDs are correct before saving.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Site</th> <th>OAM</th> <th>SIG-A</th> <th>SIG-B</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Primary</td> <td>3</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>OK Cancel</p> <p>There will be a transition period and some alarms that will clear after a few minutes while the “Site1 CMP Cluster” configures the GeoRedundant “CMP Site2 Server-A”. When complete the Geo-Redundant “CMP Site2 Cluster” is now visible in PLATFORM SETTINGS →Topology Settings</p>  <p>Note: For further detail of regarding the relationship between the Primary Site1 CMP Cluster (P) and the Site2 CMP Cluster (S) refer to Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide</p> <p>Confirm the newly added “Site2 CMP Cluster” Server-A is “active”.</p> <p>PLATFORM SETTINGS →Topology Settings→CMP Site2 Cluster</p>  <p>Note: Server-B is now visible and will be used for the next step</p>	Site	OAM	SIG-A	SIG-B	Primary	3	5	6
Site	OAM	SIG-A	SIG-B							
Primary	3	5	6							
<p>5.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Add Site 2 CMP Cluster</p>	<p>CMP-Site2 Cluster will need Server-B added to complete the cluster configuration. From the “Topology Setting” menu click on CMP Site2 Cluster.</p> <p>Click on “Modify server-B”.</p> 								

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy

Define the settings for **Server-B** in the Server-B section of the page

To configure Server-B, in the Server-B section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPv6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

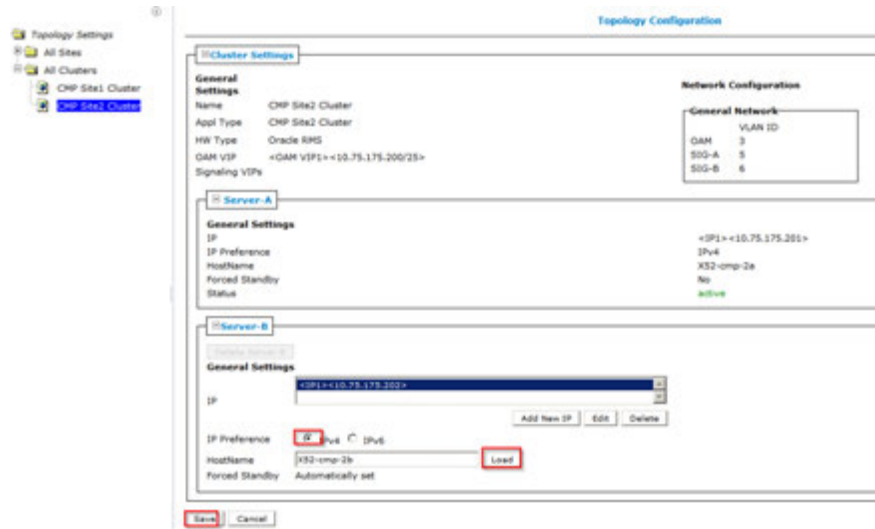
- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

- b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

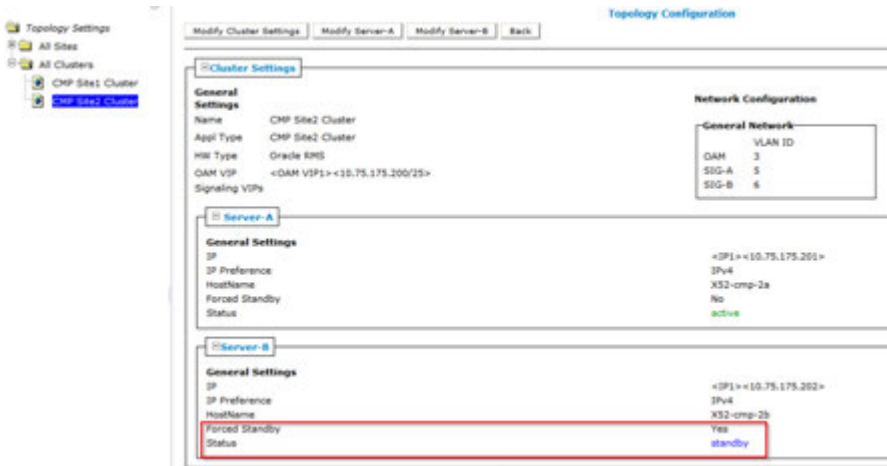
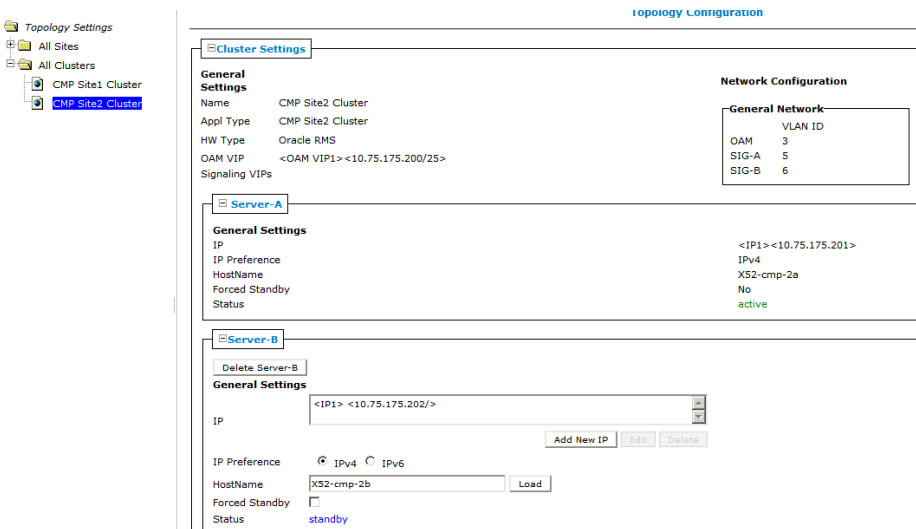

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

For example:



There will be a transition period and several alarms that will clear after a few minutes while the Site1 CMP Cluster configures the GeoRedundant CMP Site2 Server-B. Wait for all the alarms to clear and then then confirm that Server B in the CMP Site2 Cluster is now *standby*.

6.4.1: Adding a CMP Site2 Cluster for CMP Geo-Redundancy


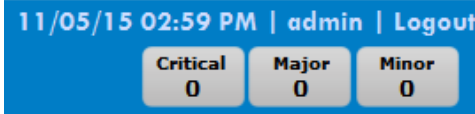
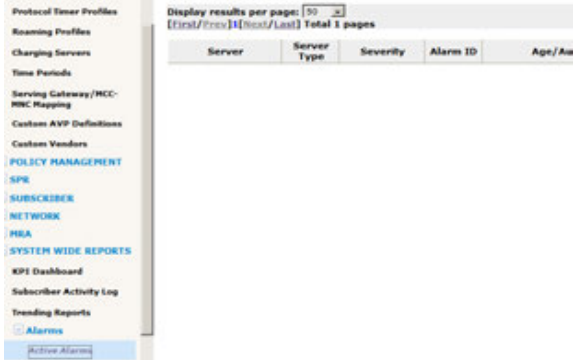
		<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings → CMP Site2 Cluster</p>  <p>Note: Forced Standby of Server-B status is Yes.</p>																								
<p>6. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: Clear “Forced Standby” – Server-B</p>	<p>From the “Topology Settings” menu select the CMP Site2 Cluster and click on the “Modify Server-B” again to uncheck the “Forced Standby” state of “Server-B” by unchecking the “Forced Standby” box. “Save” the configuration.</p>  <p>The Geo-Redundant Site2 cluster configuration has been completed. The CMP Site1 Cluster will be marked with a (P) for primary and the CMP Site2 Cluster will be marked with an (S) for secondary.</p> <p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings →</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Appl Type</th> <th>Site Preference</th> <th>OAM VIP</th> <th>Server-A</th> <th>Server-B</th> <th>Server-C</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>10.75.175.200/25</td> <td>10.75.175.201</td> <td>10.75.175.202</td> <td>10.75.175.203</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster (S)</td> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>10.75.175.200/25</td> <td>10.75.175.201</td> <td>10.75.175.202</td> <td>10.75.175.203</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Appl Type	Site Preference	OAM VIP	Server-A	Server-B	Server-C	Operation	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.201	10.75.175.202	10.75.175.203	N/A	CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.201	10.75.175.202	10.75.175.203	N/A
Name	Appl Type	Site Preference	OAM VIP	Server-A	Server-B	Server-C	Operation																			
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.201	10.75.175.202	10.75.175.203	N/A																			
CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.201	10.75.175.202	10.75.175.203	N/A																			
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>																										

6.4.2 Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will configure the management relationships between the CMP and other Non-CMP clusters in Wireless Mode.</p> <p>A non-CMP cluster includes one of the following server types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MPE • MRA • Mediation <p>IMPORTANT: Certain IP network services must be allowed between the CMP Site 1 cluster and the other clusters in the network, in order for the full management relationships to be established. Incorrectly configured Firewalls in the network can cause the Management relations to fail, and Alarms to be raised at the CMP.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>Before beginning this procedure, verify that you have HTTP access to the CMP server.</p> <p>Before defining a non-CMP cluster, ensure the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The server software is installed on all servers in the cluster. • The servers have been configured with network time protocol (NTP), IP Routing, and OAM IP addresses. • The server IP connection is active. See Section 5:Preparing the System Environment in this document. <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select c-Class, c-Class (segregated traffic), or Netra hardware, VLANs are required. For RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • OAM VIP (optional) — The IP address and netmask a CMP cluster uses to communicate with an MPE or MRA cluster. • Signaling VIPs (required) — The IP address a policy charging and enforcement function (PCEF) uses to communicate with a cluster. At least one signaling VIP is required. Define up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and netmasks of the signaling VIP addresses. For each, select None, SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. You must enter a Signaling VIP value if you specify either SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C. • Network VLAN IDs — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: Login to CMP Server GUIs (using VIP)</p> <p>From Browser, enter CMP Server VIP in Navigation string.</p> <p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in OCOMP 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later • Google Chrome version 40.0 or later <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p>

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		 <p>ORACLE[®]</p> <p>WELCOME</p> <p>Welcome to the Configuration Management Platform (CMP). Please enter your user name and password below to access the CMP desktop. If you do not have an existing user name or password, or if you have misplaced either, please contact the system administrator.</p> <p><small>You have logged out or your session has timed out. Please enter your username and password to start a new session.</small></p> <p>USERNAME <input type="text"/></p> <p>PASSWORD <input type="password"/></p> <p>Login</p> <p>Login as admin (or a user with admin privileges)</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: View Active Alarms</p>	<p>It is recommended to View the Active Alarms in the system before performing Configuration work. Check Alarm information and determine if any Alarms present may affect configuration activities.</p>  <p>11/05/15 02:59 PM admin Logout</p> <p>Critical 0 Major 0 Minor 0</p> <p>View of Alarms from CMP GUI upper right banner</p>  <p>View of Alarms from System Wide Reports -> Active Alarms</p> <p>IMPORTANT: In Policy 12.2.x, there is On-line help provided for Alarm descriptions. In the Alarm views, click on the alarm Id to open the Alarm description help page. Alternatively, from the Menu select On-Line Help, and select Troubleshooting Guide. Search this for the Alarm Id.</p>
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Mode Configuration Considerations</p>	<p>The proper Modes must be selected during the initial GUI configuration for all the options in this procedure to be available for configuration on the CMP. To add a Non-CMP cluster the following Mode Options must be selected on the CMP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MPE (Manage Policy Servers) • MRA (Manage MRAs) • Mediation (Manage Mediation Servers)

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		<div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Policy Servers <input type="checkbox"/> Manage MA Servers <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Policies <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage MRAs <input type="checkbox"/> Manage BoDs <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Mediation Servers <input type="checkbox"/> Manage SPR Subscriber Data <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Geo-Redundant <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manager is HA (clustered) <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Analytic Data <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Direct Link <input type="checkbox"/> Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted) <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted) </div> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mediation Servers are used with Wireless-C Mode enabled. This is a restricted setting. For further details on using the Wireless-C mode contact your Oracle Support representative. Mediation Servers are not needed for most Wireless configurations. • If “Manage Geo-Redundant” mode is selected proceed to the next procedure 6.4.4: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation). <p>Modes can be changed at a later time if needed, but the method to access this mode selection is not documented. Contact Oracle Support if Mode selection is required to be changed after the initial configuration.</p>												
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 24px; display: inline-block;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p> <div> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Appl Type</th> <th>OAM VIP</th> <th>Ser</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td> <td>10.75.150.132/26</td> <td>10.75.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster (S)</td> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td> <td>10.75.175.200/25</td> <td>10.75.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>On the cluster Configuration page select “Add MPE/MRA/Mediation”</p> <p>Note: Mediation will only be present if “Manage Mediation Servers” was selected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting “Appl Type” which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively. <p>The Topology Configuration page presents:</p>	Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Ser	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.75.150.132/26	10.75.	CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.
Name	Appl Type	OAM VIP	Ser											
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.75.150.132/26	10.75.											
CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.											

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

The screenshot shows the 'Topology Configuration' interface. On the left, a tree view shows 'Topology Settings' with sub-items 'All Clusters', 'CMP Site1 Cluster', and 'CMP Site2 Cluster'. The main area is divided into sections: 'Cluster Settings' and 'Server-A' (with 'Server-B' partially visible). 'Cluster Settings' includes fields for Name, Appl Type (MPE), HW Type (C-Class), OAM VIP, and Signaling VIPs. A 'Network Configuration' box on the right shows a 'General Network' table with VLAN IDs for OAM (3), SIG-A (5), SIG-B (6), and SIG-C (7). 'Server-A' settings include IP, IP Preference (IPv4/IPv6), HostName, and Forced Standby. Buttons for 'Add New VIP', 'Delete', 'Add New IP', and 'Delete' are present throughout the form.

5.

CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters

Complete the form according to the system design.

It is allowed to add both Server-A and Server-B at the same time.

Notes:

- It is possible to come back at a later time and modify any settings made at this time.
- The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting "Appl Type" which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively.

Define the "Cluster Settings"

Name (required) — Name of the cluster. Enter up to 250 characters, excluding quotation marks(") and commas (,).

Appl Type — Select the type of server: **MPE** (default) **MRA** or **Mediation**

HW Type — Select the type of hardware:

- C-Class (default) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8 server
- C-Class (Segregated Traffic) (a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8
- Oracle RMS – Oracle Server X5-2 or Oracle Netra Server X5-2
- RMS (rack-mounted server) – HP ProLiant DL360 Gen6 or HP ProLiant DL380 Gen8/Gen9 server
- VM (virtual machine)
- VM(Automated) (VM managed by NF Agent)

If you selected C-Class, C-Class (Segregated Traffic), or Oracle RMS, enter the General Network

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

- VLAN IDs.

Enter the **OAM**, **SIG-A**, and (optionally) **SIG-B** virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.

VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:

- OAM – 3
- SIG-A – 5
- SIG-B – 6

OAM VIP — The OAM VIP is not typically used for Non-CMP clusters. The Real IP address is used by the CMP to communicate with the Non-CMP cluster.

Signaling VIPs (required) — The signaling VIP is the IP address a PCEF (or Gateway) device uses to communicate with a cluster. Click **Add New VIP** to add a VIP to the system. A cluster supports the following redundant communication channels for carriers that use redundant signaling channels.

- SIG-A
- SIG-B
- SIG-C

At least one signaling VIP is required.

For Example:

General Settings

Site Name:

HW Type:

OAM VIP:

Signaling VIPs:

Use Site Configuration

Network Configuration

	VLAN ID
OAM	<input type="text" value="40"/>
SIG-A	<input type="text" value="41"/>
SIG-B	<input type="text" value="42"/>
SIG-C	<input type="text"/>

Define the settings for **Server-A** in the Server-A section of the page

The “**IP**” address and “**Host Name**” of **Server-A** will be the IP address and Host Name used during the “Initial Configuration” of the server from section 6.1 of this document. They must match exactly. If Server-A is network reachable from the CMP it is recommended to use the “load” button once the IP address and IP Preference have been defined. The CMP will attempt to load the hostname from the IP reachable server. This will not only confirm network connectivity but will also minimize the possibility of incorrectly defining the Host Name.

To configure Server-A, in the Server-A section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPV6.

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

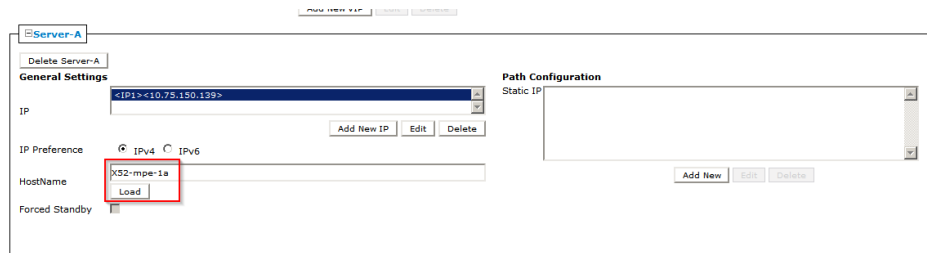
- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

For example:



Define the settings for **Server-B** in the Server-B section of the page

To configure Server-B, in the Server-B section of the page:

a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPv6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

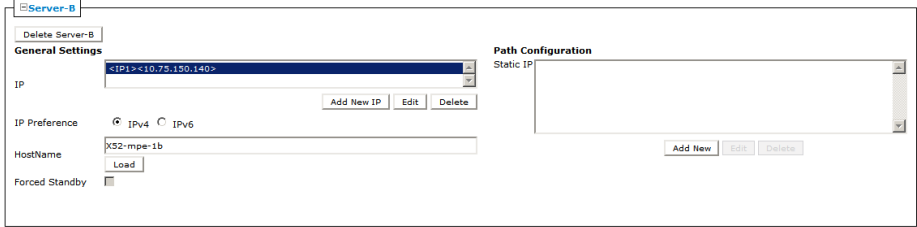
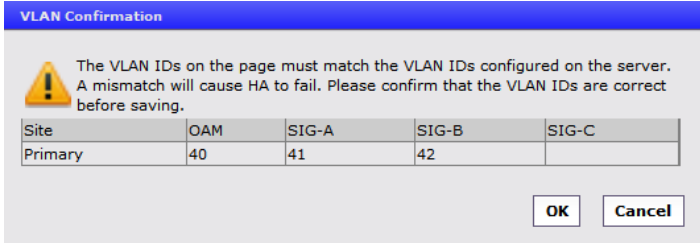
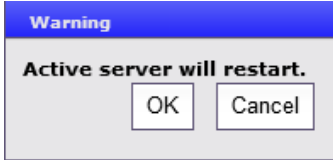


- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

b) Enter the HostName of the server.

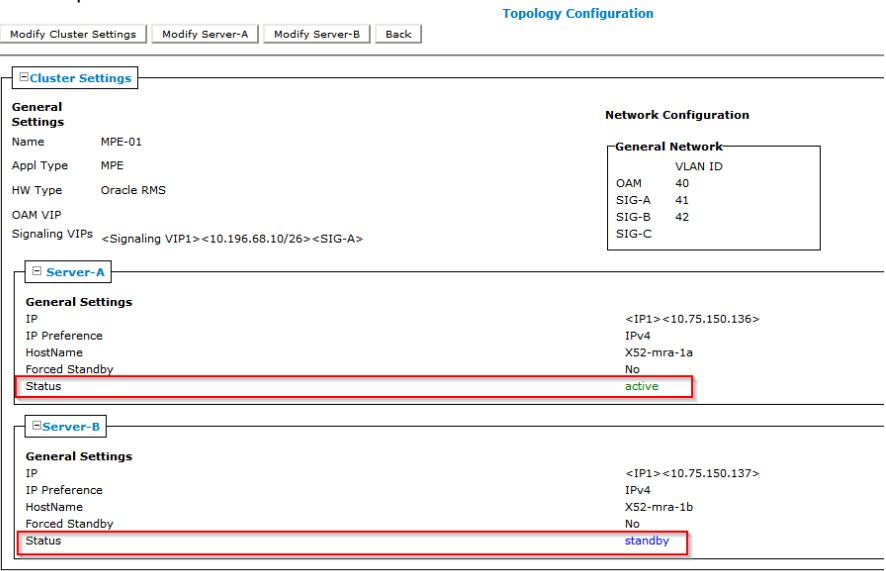
This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)


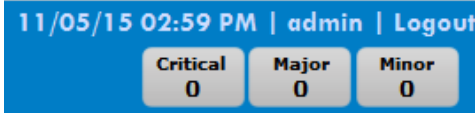
		<p>For example:</p>  <p>Note: These settings are only an example of a likely configuration. An actual deployment will be specific to customer requirements.</p>
<p>6.</p>	<p>CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters</p>	<p>“Save” the Topology Configuration from the bottom of the Topology Configuration page.</p> <p>Confirm the VLAN configuration if the hardware type requires VLANs</p>  <p>Click <OK> to confirm</p>  <p>If the cluster has been added successfully it will now be visible on the Cluster Configuration page. The Cluster Configuration page presents:</p> 
<p>7.</p>	<p>CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters</p>	<p>Confirm the Cluster has been added successfully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The following shows an example of adding a Non-CMP cluster of “Appl Type” <MPE> <p>Check that all alarms have cleared and then click on “View” for the Cluster that has just been added</p> 

6.4.2: Setting Up a Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

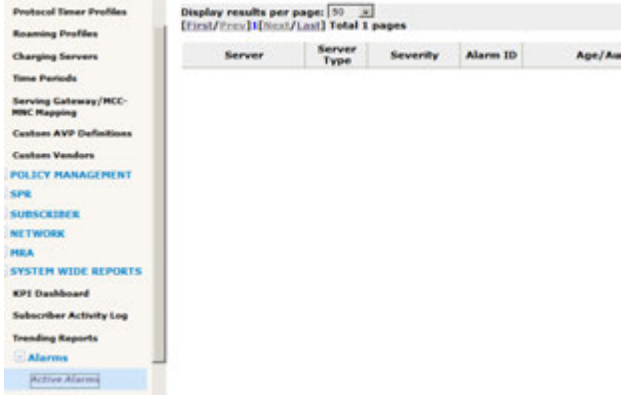

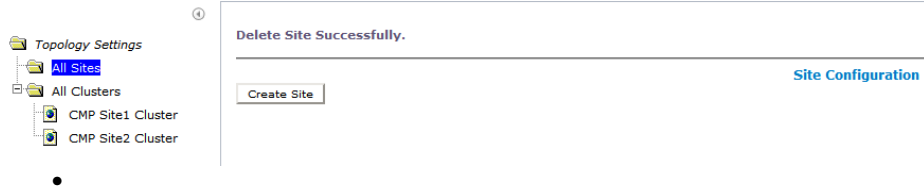
		<p>The “Topology Configuration presents” for the newly Non CMP cluster</p> <p>There should be an “active” and a “standby” server. It does not matter which server is active. If this is the case, and there are no alarms, then the cluster has been added successfully.</p> <p>For Example:</p>  <p>Note: If the topology configuration is performed at a time when there is no network connectivity between the CMP and the MRA/MPE/Mediation servers being added to the topology, the status of these newly added servers will show as “offline” and alarms will be generated due the offline state. These alarms will persist until such time as the servers become reachable from the CMP. The CMP will continually retry connecting to the servers that have been newly added in the topology. In this case no further configuration can be performed until the network connectivity between the CMP and the target servers is available. Do not proceed further but rather return to this step at such time the network connectivity from the CMP to the target servers is available. If the servers are reachable then proceed to the next step.</p> <p>The new cluster has now been successfully added.</p>
<p>8. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Repeat the previous step for additional clusters</p>	<p>A list of Clusters to be configured can be added to this step as a reminder.</p> <p>The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting “Appl Type” which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively.</p>
<p>9. <input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>If the CMP will Manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.</p>	<p>If the CMP will Manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.</p> <p>a) Configure these clusters, but Return to the Verify Steps above after the connectivity has been established.</p> <p>-- OR --</p> <p>b) Configure these clusters at a later time when the connectivity is established.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

6.4.3 Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site

6.4.3: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will create “Sites” that will be used if Geo-Redundant Clusters will be added to the CMP Topology. A Geo-Redundant Cluster will be associated with these “Sites” in the next procedure. If Geo-Redundant Clusters will not be needed than this procedure can be skipped.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before beginning this procedure, verify that you have HTTP access to the CMP server. • Names of Sites to be created <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
<p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: Login to CMP Server GUIs (using VIP)</p> <p>From Browser, enter CMP Server VIP in Navigation string.</p> <p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in OCMF 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later • Google Chrome version 40.0 or later <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p>  <p>Login as admin (or a user with admin privileges)</p>
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>CMP GUI: View Active Alarms</p> <p>It is recommended to View the Active Alarms in the system before performing Configuration work. Check Alarm information and determine if any Alarms present may affect configuration activities.</p>  <p>View of Alarms from CMP GUI upper right banner</p>

6.4.3: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site

		 <p>View of Alarms from System Wide Reports -> Active Alarms</p> <p>IMPORTANT: In Policy 12.2.x, there is On-line help provided for Alarm descriptions. In the Alarm views, click on the alarm Id to open the Alarm description help page. Alternatively, from the Menu select On-Line Help, and select Troubleshooting Guide. Search this for the Alarm Id.</p>																										
<p>3.</p> 	<p>CMP: View Topology Settings</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p> <p>Confirm that “All Sites” appears in the Topology Settings Menu.</p>  <p>Note: Sites may only be created when Manage Geo-Redundant mode is enabled.</p> <table border="0"> <tr><td>Manage Policy Servers</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage MA Servers</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Policies</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage MRAs</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage BoDs</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Mediation Servers</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage SPR Subscriber Data</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Geo-Redundant</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manager is HA (clustered)</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Analytic Data</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Direct Link</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted)</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> <tr><td>Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted)</td><td><input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> </table> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/></p> <p>Note: If Manage Geo-Redundant mode was not selected during initial configuration of the Site1 CMP Cluster, the CMP modes can be changed now if needed, but the method to access this mode selection is not documented. Contact Oracle Support if Mode selection is required to be changed after the initial configuration.</p>	Manage Policy Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage MA Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>	Manage Policies	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage MRAs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage BoDs	<input type="checkbox"/>	Manage Mediation Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>	Manage SPR Subscriber Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage Geo-Redundant	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manager is HA (clustered)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage Analytic Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Manage Direct Link	<input type="checkbox"/>	Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>	Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Manage Policy Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage MA Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Policies	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage MRAs	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage BoDs	<input type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Mediation Servers	<input type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage SPR Subscriber Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Geo-Redundant	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manager is HA (clustered)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Analytic Data	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Direct Link	<input type="checkbox"/>																											
Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>																											
Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted)	<input type="checkbox"/>																											

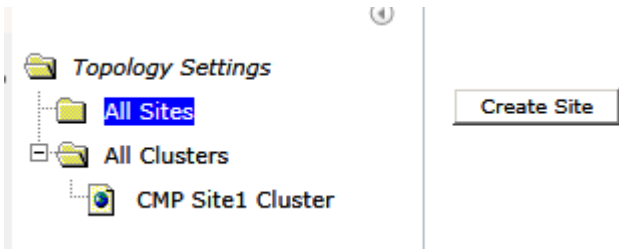
6.4.3: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site

4. **CMP GUI: Create Sites for Geo-Redundant Configuration**

For a Geo-Redundant Configuration at least 2 Sites must be created before proceeding with this procedure. This step is preparation for adding Geo-Redundant MPE/MRA/Mediation clusters and is not needed to add a Geo-Redundant CMP Cluster. If Geo-Redundancy is not anticipated this step may be skipped.

PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings → All Sites

a. Select **Create Site**



The Site Configuration form opens.

Site Configuration

New Site

Name

Max Primary Site Failure Threshold

HW Type

Network Configuration

General Network

	VLAN ID
OAM	<input type="text"/>
SIG-A	<input type="text"/>
SIG-B	<input type="text"/>
SIG-C	<input type="text"/>

User Defined Network

	VLAN ID
REP	<input type="text"/>

b. Select the HW Type from the list.

The available options are:

- C-Class (default)
- C-Class(Segregated Traffic) (for a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment)
- Oracle RMS (rack-mounted servers using tagged VLANs)
- RMS (for a rack-mounted server)
- VM (for a virtual machine)
- VM (Automated) (for a VM managed by NF Agent)

If you selected C-Class, C-Class(Segregated Traffic), or NETRA, enter the General Network - VLAN IDs.

c. Enter the OAM, SIG-A, and (optionally) SIG-B virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.

VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:

- OAM – 3
- SIG-A – 5
- SIG-B – 6

6.4.3: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Site

d. Name the new Site and Save.

New Site

Name: City1

Max Primary Site Failure Threshold: 0

HW Type: RMS

Buttons: Save, Cancel

The newly named site will be present in the Topology Settings menu.

Topology Settings

- All Sites
 - City1
- All Clusters
 - CMP Site1 Cluster
 - CMP Site2 Cluster

Site	Max Primary Site Failure Threshold
City1	0

e. Create a 2nd Site and Save.

New Site

Name:

Max Primary Site Failure Threshold: 0

HW Type: C-Class

Network Configuration

General Network

VLAN ID

OAM:

SIG-A:

SIG-B:

SIG-C:

User Defined Network

VLAN ID

REP:

Buttons: Save, Cancel

The newly named site will be present in the Topology Settings menu.

Topology Settings

Create Site Successfully.

- All Sites
 - City1
 - City2
- All Clusters
 - CMP Site1 Cluster
 - CMP Site2 Cluster

Site	Max Primary Site Failure Threshold
City1	0
City2	0


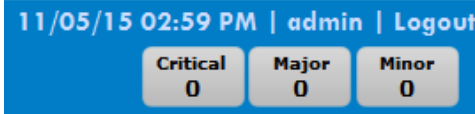
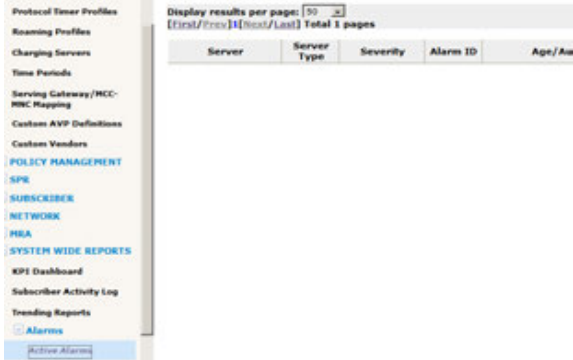
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

6.4.4 Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

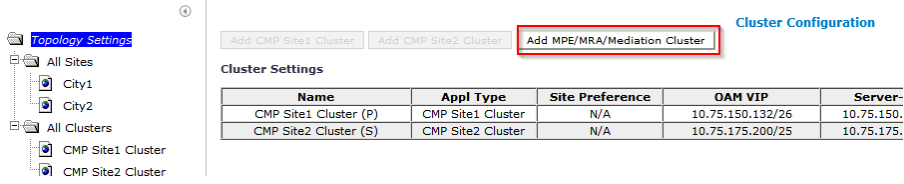
6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will configure the management relationships between the CMP and other Geo-Redundant Non-CMP in Wireless Mode.</p> <p>A non-CMP cluster includes one of the following server types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MPE • MRA • Mediation <p>IMPORTANT: Certain IP network services must be allowed between the CMP Site 1 cluster and the other clusters in the network, in order for the full management relationships to be established. Incorrectly configured Firewalls in the network can cause the Management relations to fail, and Alarms to be raised at the CMP.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>Before beginning this procedure, verify that you have HTTP access to the CMP server.</p> <p>Before defining a non-CMP cluster, ensure the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The server software is installed on all servers in the cluster. • The servers have been configured with network time protocol (NTP), IP Routing, and OAM IP addresses. • The server IP connection is active. See Section 5:Preparing the System Environment in this document. • Procedure 6.4.3: Setting Up a GeoRedundant Site has been completed. <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select c-Class, c-Class (segregated traffic), or Netra hardware, VLANs are required. For RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • OAM VIP (optional) — The IP address and netmask a CMP cluster uses to communicate with an MPE or MRA cluster. • Signaling VIPs (required) — The IP address a policy charging and enforcement function (PCEF) uses to communicate with a cluster. At least one signaling VIP is required. Define up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and netmasks of the signaling VIP addresses. For each, select None, SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. You must enter a Signaling VIP value if you specify either SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C. • Network VLAN IDs — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; display: inline-block;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Login to CMP Server GUIs (using VIP)</p> <p>From Browser, enter CMP Server VIP in Navigation string.</p> <p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in OCMP 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later • Google Chrome version 40.0 or later <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p>

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		 <p>ORACLE[®]</p> <p>WELCOME</p> <p>Welcome to the Configuration Management Platform (CMP). Please enter your user name and password below to access the CMP desktop. If you do not have an existing user name or password, or if you have misplaced either, please contact the system administrator.</p> <p><small>You have logged out or your session has timed out. Please enter your username and password to start a new session.</small></p> <p>USERNAME <input type="text"/></p> <p>PASSWORD <input type="password"/></p> <p>Login</p> <p>Login as admin (or a user with admin privileges)</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: View Active Alarms</p>	<p>It is recommended to View the Active Alarms in the system before performing Configuration work. Check Alarm information and determine if any Alarms present may affect configuration activities.</p>  <p>11/05/15 02:59 PM admin Logout</p> <p>Critical 0 Major 0 Minor 0</p> <p>View of Alarms from CMP GUI upper right banner</p>  <p>View of Alarms from System Wide Reports -> Active Alarms</p> <p>IMPORTANT: In Policy 12.2.x, there is On-line help provided for Alarm descriptions. In the Alarm views, click on the alarm Id to open the Alarm description help page. Alternatively, from the Menu select On-Line Help, and select Troubleshooting Guide. Search this for the Alarm Id.</p>
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Mode Configuration Considerations</p>	<p>The proper Modes must be selected during the initial GUI configuration for all the options in this procedure to be available for configuration on the CMP. To add a Non-CMP cluster the following Mode Options must be selected on the CMP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MPE (Manage Policy Servers) • MRA (Manage MRAs) • Mediation (Manage Mediation Servers) • Manage Geo-Redundant

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		<div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Policy Servers <input type="checkbox"/> Manage MA Servers <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Policies <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage MRAs <input type="checkbox"/> Manage BoDs <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Mediation Servers <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage SPR Subscriber Data <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Geo-Redundant <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manager is HA (clustered) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Manage Analytic Data <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Direct Link <input type="checkbox"/> Manager is NW-CMP (Restricted) <input type="checkbox"/> Manage Segment Management Servers (Restricted) </div> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mediation Servers are used with Wireless-C Mode enabled. This is a restricted setting. For further details on using the Wireless-C mode contact your Oracle Support representative. • “Manage Geo-Redundant” mode provides the ability to configure “Primary” and “Secondary” sites as well as adding a Server-C (spare) to each Non-CMP cluster in the Topology. <p>Modes can be changed at a later time if needed, but the method to access this mode selection is not documented. Contact Oracle Support if Mode selection is required to be changed after the initial configuration.</p>															
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 23px; display: inline-block;"></div>	<p>CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p> <div>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Appl Type</th> <th>Site Preference</th> <th>OAM VIP</th> <th>Server-</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>10.75.150.132/26</td> <td>10.75.150.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster (S)</td> <td>CMP Site2 Cluster</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>10.75.175.200/25</td> <td>10.75.175.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>On the cluster Configuration page select “Add MPE/MRA/Mediation”.</p> <p>Note: “Mediation Cluster” will only be present if “Manage Mediation Servers” was selected in mode options.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting “Appl Type” which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively. 	Name	Appl Type	Site Preference	OAM VIP	Server-	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	N/A	10.75.150.132/26	10.75.150.	CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.
Name	Appl Type	Site Preference	OAM VIP	Server-													
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	N/A	10.75.150.132/26	10.75.150.													
CMP Site2 Cluster (S)	CMP Site2 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.													

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

The Topology Configuration page presents:

The screenshot shows the 'Topology Configuration' page. It includes a sidebar with a tree view showing 'All Sites', 'All Clusters', and 'All Clusters' sub-items. The main content area is titled 'Topology Configuration' and contains several sections:

- Cluster Settings:** Fields for Name, Appl Type (set to 'mra'), Site, and Preference. Includes checkboxes for DRCP Marking, Replication Stream, Clust, and Backup Heartbeat.
- Primary Site Settings:** Sub-sections for General Settings (Site Name, Site Type, OAM VIP, Signaling VIPs) and Network Configuration (General Network and User Defined Network).
- Server A:** General Settings (IP, IP Preference, Hostname, Forced Standby) and Path Configuration (State IP).
- Server B:** A section with an 'Add Server B' button.
- Secondary Site Settings:** Similar to Primary Site Settings, including General Settings and Network Configuration.
- Server C:** A section with an 'Add Server C' button.

 At the bottom, there are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Notes:

- “All Sites” will be present in the Topology Settings menu.
- “Primary Site Settings” and “Secondary Site Settings” will be present on the Topology Configuration page.
- Server-C will be present Under “Secondary Site Settings”.

5.



CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters

Complete the form according to the system design.

It is allowed to add both Server-A, Server-B and Server-C at the same time. To add Server-C expand the Server-C option by clicking on the “+” sign for Server-C.

Notes:

- It is possible to come back at a later time and modify any settings made at this time.
- The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting “Appl Type” which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively.

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

Define the “Cluster Settings”

Name (required) — Name of the cluster. Enter up to 250 characters, excluding quotation marks(") and commas (,).

Appl Type — Select the type of server: **MPE** (default) **MRA** or **Mediation**

Site Preference – NORMAL (default)

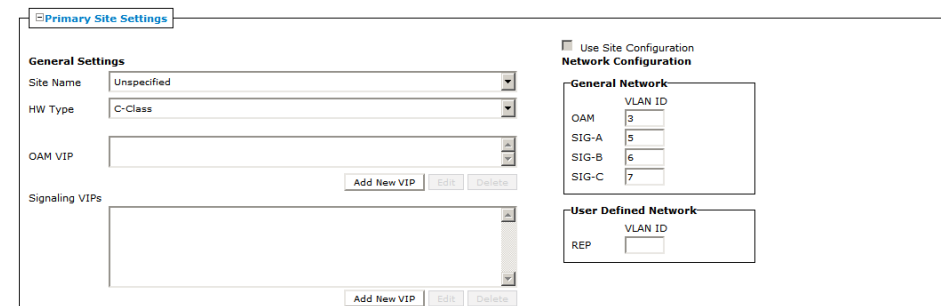
DSCP Marking = PHB(None)is the default
 Replication Stream Count = 1 through 8. 1 is the default.
 Replication and Heartbeat = None is the default. OAM is typically preferred.
 Backup Heartbeat = None (default) or OAM

For Example:



Note: A warning icon (⚠) indicates that you cannot select a network until you define a static IP address on all servers of both sites.

Define the “Primary Site Settings” (General Settings)



Site Name –Here the added server can be associated with a previously configured site in the drop down tab if this will be Geo-Redundant topology

HW Type — Select the type of hardware:

- C-Class (default) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8 server
- C-Class (Segregated Traffic) (a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8
- Oracle RMS – Oracle Server X5-2 or Oracle Netra Server X5-2
- RMS (rack-mounted server) – HP ProLiant DL360 Gen6 or HP ProLiant DL380 Gen8/Gen9 server
- VM (virtual machine)
- VM(Automated) (VM managed by NF Agent)

Define the “**Network Configuration**” if you selected C-Class, C-Class(Segregated Traffic), or Oracle RMS, enter the General Network - VLAN IDs.

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

Enter the OAM, SIG-A, and (optionally) SIG-B virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.

VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:

- OAM – 3
- SIG-A – 5
- SIG-B – 6

If the hardware type is **C-Class** or **C-Class(Segregated Traffic)**, for the **User Defined Network**, enter the **REP VLAN ID**.

Note: Virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs are in the range of 1–4095.

OAM VIP — The OAM VIP is not typically used for Non-CMP clusters. The Real IP address is used by the CMP to communicate with the Non-CMP cluster.

Signaling VIPs (required) — The signaling VIP is the IP address a PCEF (or Gateway) device uses to communicate with a cluster. Click **Add New VIP** to add a VIP to the system. A cluster supports the following redundant communication channels for carriers that use redundant signaling channels.

- SIG-A
- SIG-B
- SIG-C

At least one signaling VIP is required.

Define the settings for **Server-A** in the “Primary Site Settings” section of the page

Note: The “IP” address and “Host Name” of Server-A will be the IP address and Host Name used during the “Initial Configuration” of the server from section 6.2 of this document. They must match exactly. If Server-A is network reachable from the CMP it is recommended to use the “load” button once the IP address and IP Preference have been defined. The CMP will attempt to load the hostname from the IP reachable server. This will not only confirm network connectivity but will also minimize the possibility of incorrectly defining the Host Name.

The screenshot shows the configuration page for 'Server-A'. It has a 'Delete Server-A' button at the top left. The page is divided into two main sections: 'General Settings' and 'Path Configuration'.
 In 'General Settings':
 - 'IP' is a text input field with a dropdown arrow on the right.
 - 'IP Preference' has radio buttons for 'IPv4' (selected) and 'IPv6'.
 - 'HostName' is a text input field with a 'Load' button below it.
 - 'Forced Standby' is a checkbox.
 In 'Path Configuration':
 - 'Static IP' is a text input field with a dropdown arrow on the right.
 - There are 'Add New IP', 'Edit', and 'Delete' buttons below the IP input field.

To configure Server-A, in the Server-A section of the page:

- a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPv6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

c) In the **Path Configuration section**, to add a **Static IP**, click **Add New**.

The **New Path** dialog box appears.

Note: If an alternate replication path and secondary HA heartbeat path is used, a server **Static IP** address must be entered in this field.

1. Enter a **Static IP** address and **Mask**.

2. Select the **Interface**:

- SIG-A
- SIG-B
- SIG-C
- REP
- BKUP

Define the settings for **Server-B** in the Server-B section of the page

Select “Add Server-B” on the Topology Configuration page

Add Server-B

The “Server-B” configuration form opens

To configure Server-B, in the Server-B section of the page:

a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.

The Add New IP dialog box appears.

1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPv6.

The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.

- If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected.
- If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected.

b) Enter the HostName of the server.

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

c) In the **Path Configuration section**, to add a **Static IP**, click **Add New**.

The **New Path** dialog box appears.

Note: If an alternate replication path and secondary HA heartbeat path is used, a server **Static IP** address must be entered in this field.

1. Enter a **Static IP** address and **Mask**.

2. Select the **Interface**:

- SIG-A
- SIG-B
- SIG-C
- REP
- BKUP

Define the “Secondary Site Settings”

The screenshot shows the 'Secondary Site Settings' configuration interface. It is divided into two main sections: 'General Settings' and 'Network Configuration'.
General Settings:
 - Site Name: Unspecified (dropdown)
 - HW Type: C-Class (dropdown)
 - OAM VIP: (text input field)
 - Signaling VIPs: (text input field with 'Add New VIP', 'Edit', and 'Delete' buttons)
Network Configuration:
 - Use Site Configuration: (checkbox)
 - General Network:
 - OAM: 3 (VLAN ID)
 - SIG-A: 5 (VLAN ID)
 - SIG-B: 6 (VLAN ID)
 - SIG-C: 7 (VLAN ID)
 - User Defined Network:
 - REP: (VLAN ID field)

Site Name –Here the added server can be associated with a previously configured site in the drop down tab if this will be Geo-Redundant topology

HW Type — Select the type of hardware:

- C-Class (default) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8 server
- C-Class (Segregated Traffic) (a configuration where Signaling and other networks are separated onto physically separate equipment) – HP ProLiant BL460 Gen6/Gen8
- Oracle RMS – Oracle Server X5-2 or Oracle Netra Server X5-2
- RMS (rack-mounted server) – HP ProLiant DL360 Gen6 or HP ProLiant DL380 Gen8/Gen9 server
- VM (virtual machine)
- VM(Automated) (VM managed by NF Agent)

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		<p>Define the “Network Configuration” if you selected C-Class, C-Class(Segregated Traffic), or Oracle RMS, enter the General Network - VLAN IDs.</p> <p>Enter the OAM, SIG-A, and (optionally) SIG-B virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs.</p> <p>VLAN IDs are in the range 1–4095. The default values are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OAM – 3 • SIG-A – 5 • SIG-B – 6 <p>If the hardware type is C-Class or C-Class(Segregated Traffic), for the User Defined Network, enter the REP VLAN ID.</p> <p>Note: Virtual LAN (VLAN) IDs are in the range of 1–4095.</p> <p>OAM VIP — The OAM VIP is not typically used for Non-CMP clusters. The Real IP address is used by the CMP to communicate with the Non-CMP cluster.</p> <p>Signaling VIPs (required) — The signaling VIP is the IP address a PCEF (or Gateway) device uses to communicate with a cluster. Click Add New VIP to add a VIP to the system. A cluster supports the following redundant communication channels for carriers that use redundant signaling channels.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIG-A • SIG-B • SIG-C <p>At least one signaling VIP is required.</p> <p><u>Define the settings for Server-C in the “Secondary Site Settings” section of the page</u></p> <p>Select “Add Server-C” on the Topology Configuration page</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin: 5px 0;">Add Server-C</div> <p>The “Server-C” configuration form opens</p> <p>a) (Required) To enter the IP address, click Add New IP.</p> <p>The Add New IP dialog box appears.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the IP address in either IPv4 or IPv6 format. <p>This is the IP address of the server. For an IPv4 address, enter it in the standard IP dot-format. For an IPv6 address, enter it in the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Select the IP Preference: IPv4 or IPV6. <p>The server will preferentially use the IP address in the specified format for communication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv6 cannot be selected. • If neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, IPv4 cannot be selected. <p>b) Enter the HostName of the server.</p>
--	--	---

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (the output of the Linux command `uname -n`).

Note: If the server has a configured server IP, you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If the retrieve fails, this a sign that the IP address configured is not accessible across the network. Alternately, you may enter the host name manually but it is recommended to do any network troubleshooting that may be required.

For example:

In the **Path Configuration section**, to add a **Static IP**, click **Add New**.
The **New Path** dialog box appears.

Note: If an alternate replication path and secondary HA heartbeat path is used, a server **Static IP** address must be entered in this field.

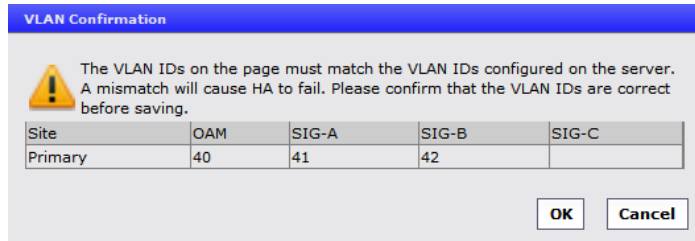
1. Enter a **Static IP** address and **Mask**.
2. Select the **Interface**:
 - SIG-A
 - SIG-B
 - SIG-C
 - REP
 - BKUP

Note: These settings are only an example of a likely configuration. An actual deployment will be specific to customer requirements.

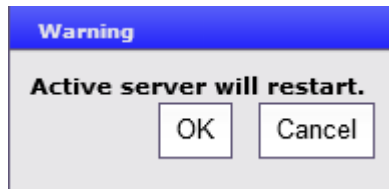
10. **CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters**

“Save” the Topology Configuration from the bottom of the Topology Configuration page.

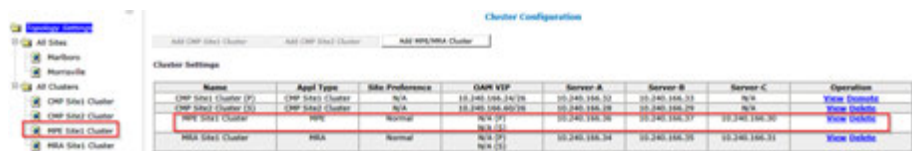
Confirm the VLAN configuration if the hardware type requires VLANs



Click <OK> to confirm



If the cluster has been added successfully it will now be visible on the Cluster Configuration page. The Cluster Configuration page presents:



6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

11. **CMP GUI: Add MPE/MRA/Mediation Clusters**

Confirm the Cluster has been added successfully.

- The following shows an example of adding a Non-CMP cluster of “Appl Type” <MPE>

Check that all alarms have cleared and then click on “View” for the Cluster that has just been added

Name	Appl Type	Site Preference	OAM VIP	Server-A	Server-B	Server-C	Operation
CMR Site1 Cluster (1)	CMR Site1 Cluster	N/A	10.75.150.113	10.75.150.114	N/A	N/A	View Details
CMR Site2 Cluster (2)	CMR Site2 Cluster	N/A	10.75.175.200/25	10.75.175.201	10.75.175.202	N/A	View Details
MPE1	MPE	Normal	N/A (1)	10.75.155.138	10.75.155.140	N/A	View Details
			N/A (2)				

“Server-A” and “Server-B” should be an “active” and “standby”. It does not matter which server is active. Server-C should show a status of “Spare”. If this is the case, and there are no alarms, then the Geo-Redundant cluster has been added successfully.

For Example:

Topology Configuration

Modify Cluster Settings | Modify Primary Site | Modify Secondary Site | Delete Secondary Site | Back

Cluster Settings

Name: MPE Site1 Cluster
 Appl Type: MPE
 Site Preference: Normal
 DSCP Marking: P0(0)
 Replication Stream Count: 1
 Backup Heartbeat: None

Primary Site Settings

General Settings
 Site Name: Marlboro
 HW Type: C-Class
 OAM VIP: <OAM VIP>
 Signaling VIPs: <Signaling VIP1> <10.196.165.15/26> <SIG-A>

Network Configuration

General Network
 VLAN ID
 OAM: 90
 SIG-A: 91
 SIG-B: 92
 SIG-C

User Defined Network
 VLAN ID
 REP

Server A

General Settings
 IP: <IP1> <10.240.166.36>
 IP Preference: IPv4
 HostName: po1-mpe-a
 Forced Standby: No
 Status: active

Path Configuration
 Static IP

Server B

General Settings
 IP: <IP1> <10.240.166.37>
 IP Preference: IPv4
 HostName: po1-mpe-b
 Forced Standby: No
 Status: standby

Path Configuration
 Static IP

Secondary Site Settings

General Settings
 Site Name: Marlboro
 HW Type: C-Class
 OAM VIP: <OAM VIP>
 Signaling VIPs: <Signaling VIP1> <10.196.165.15/26> <SIG-A>

Network Configuration

General Network
 VLAN ID
 OAM: 90
 SIG-A: 91
 SIG-B: 92
 SIG-C

User Defined Network
 VLAN ID
 REP

Server C

General Settings
 IP: <IP1> <10.240.166.30>
 IP Preference: IPv4
 HostName: ohio-mpe-a
 Forced Standby: No
 Status: Spare

Path Configuration
 Static IP

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

Note: If the topology configuration is performed at a time when there is no network connectivity between the CMP and the MRA/MPE/Mediation servers being added to the topology, the status of these newly added servers will show as “offline” and alarms will be generated due the offline state. These alarms will persist until such time as the servers become reachable from the CMP. The CMP will continually retry connecting to the servers that have been newly added in the topology. In this case no further configuration can be performed until the network connectivity between the CMP and the target servers is available. Do not proceed further but rather return to this step at such time the network connectivity from the CMP to the target servers is available. If the servers are reachable then proceed to the next step.

Confirm the newly added Non-CMP clusters have been associated with the correct “Site”.

Topology Settings→All Sites→<Site Name>

For example: Here “MPE Site1 Cluster” is associated to the Morrisville Site as a “Primary Site Cluster”. This would be “Server-A” and “Server-B”.

Topology Settings

- All Sites
 - Marlboro
 - Morrisville
- All Clusters
 - CMP Site1 Cluster
 - CMP Site2 Cluster
 - MPE Site1 Cluster
 - MRA Site1 Cluster

Configuration

Name: Morrisville

Max Primary Site Failure Threshold: 0

HW Type:

Network Configuration

General Network

VLAN ID

OAM

SIG-A

SIG-B

SIG-C

User Defined Network

VLAN ID

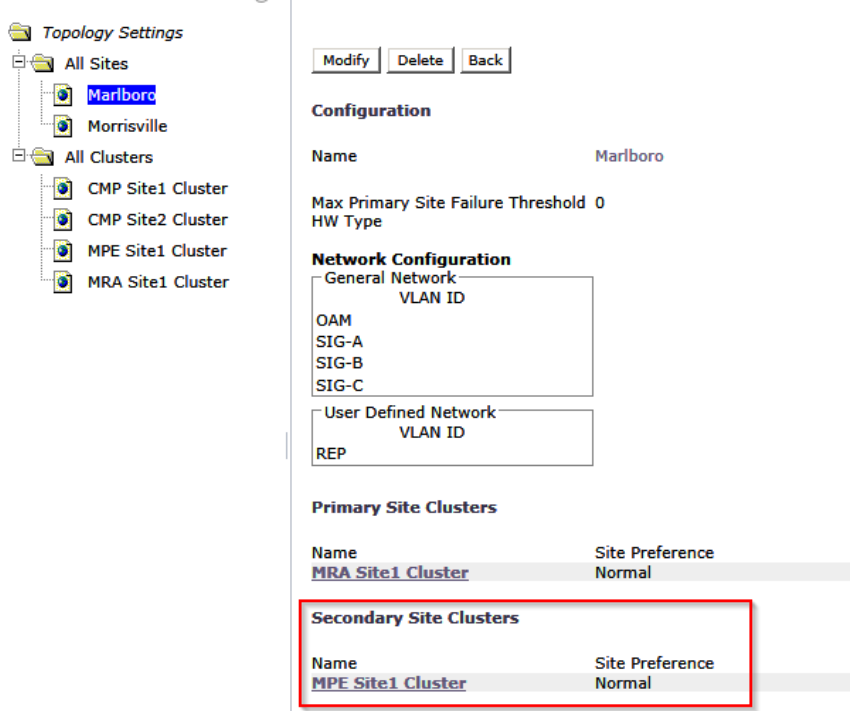
REP

Primary Site Clusters	
Name	Site Preference
MPE Site1 Cluster	Normal

Secondary Site Clusters	
Name	Site Preference
MRA Site1 Cluster	Normal

Here “MPE Site1 Cluster” is associated to the Marlboro Site as a “Secondary Site Cluster”. This would be “Server-C”.

6.4.4: Setting Up a Geo-Redundant Non-CMP Cluster (MPE/MRA/Mediation)

		 <p>The new cluster has now been successfully added.</p>
<p>12.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Repeat the previous step for additional clusters</p>	<p>A list of Clusters to be configured can be added to this step as a reminder.</p> <p>The procedure for adding an MPE/MRA or Mediation Cluster is the same except for selecting "Appl Type" which will be MPE/MRA or Mediation respectively.</p>
<p>13.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>If the CMP will Manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.</p>	<p>If the CMP will Manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.</p> <p>a) Configure these clusters, but Return to the Verify Steps above after the connectivity has been established.</p> <p>-- OR --</p> <p>b) Configure these clusters at a later time when the connectivity is established.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

6.5 PERFORMING SSH KEY EXCHANGES

You must exchange SSH keys between the CMP, MPE, MRA, and Mediation servers. Perform this procedure whenever you add additional servers to the Policy Management topology. You can execute the command multiple times, even if keys were previously exchanged

Note: After the topology is set up and SSH keys are exchanged, it is possible that a server in the topology changes its keys. This happens when:

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

- A new server is added to the topology
- A server is re-installed
- A server is replaced by another server
- A server has its SSH keys recreated manually

In any of the above scenarios, reexecute this procedure. The SSH provisioning utility will recheck the existing SSH key exchanges in the entire topology and provision any key exchanges not yet executed. You can execute the command multiple times, even if keys were previously exchanged.

6.5 Performing SSH Key Exchanges

STEP #	Prerequisite: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CMP Site 1 cluster is configured and GUI available - Before beginning this procedure, the systems that are exchanging keys must be configured and reachable. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Execute Key Exchanges to all servers	<p>Use SSH to connect to the active server at the CMP Site 1 cluster as the user admusr.</p> <p>Enter the command sudo ha.mystate to determine if the server is the active server in the HA cluster. The following example shows an active server:</p> <pre> login as: admusr Using keyboard-interactive authentication. Password: [admusr@cmp236 ~]\$ sudo ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Active A0582.070 0 0425:164256.062 VIP Active A0582.070 0 0425:164256.064 QP Active A0582.070 0 0425:164256.104 DbReplication_old OOS A0582.070 0 0425:164245.744 [admusr@cmp236 ~]\$ </pre>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Execute Key Exchanges to all servers	<p>a) Enter the following command:</p> <p>\$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --prov (double dash)</p> <p>You are prompted: <i>The password of admusr in topology:</i></p> <p>b) Enter the admusr password (admusr_password).</p> <p>The procedure exchanges keys with the rest of the servers in the Policy Management topology. If the key exchange is successful, the procedure displays the message SSH keys are OK. The following example shows a successful key exchange:</p> <p>c) Enter the Password of admusr</p>

6.5 Performing SSH Key Exchanges

		<pre> C[admusr@x52cmp-1a ~]\$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --prov The password of admusr in topology: Connecting to admusr@x52mpe-1b ... Connecting to admusr@x52mra-1b ... Connecting to admusr@x52mpe-1a ... Connecting to admusr@x52mra-1a ... Connecting to admusr@x52cmp-1a ... Connecting to admusr@x52cmp-1b ... [1/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52mpe-1b ... [2/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52mra-1b ... [3/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52mra-1a ... [4/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52mpe-1a ... [5/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52cmp-1a ... [6/6] Provisioning SSH keys on x52cmp-1b ... SSH keys are OK. </pre>
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Verify Key Exchanges to all servers</p>	<p>Enter the following command to verify that the keys are successfully exchanged:</p> <p>\$sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --check --verbose</p> <p>You are prompted: The password of admusr in topology:</p> <p>Enter the admusr password (admusr_password).</p> <p>The procedure verifies keys with the rest of the servers in the Policy Management topology and displays the results of each exchange. The following example shows all keys have been checked and have been exchanged successfully:</p>

6.5 Performing SSH Key Exchanges

```
[admusr@x52cmp-1a ~]$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --check --verbose
The password of admusr in topology:
Connecting to admusr@x52mpe-1b ...
Connecting to admusr@x52mra-1b ...
Connecting to admusr@x52mpe-1a ...
Connecting to admusr@x52mra-1a ...
Connecting to admusr@x52cmp-1a ...
Connecting to admusr@x52cmp-1b ...

[1/6] Checking SSH keys on x52mpe-1b ...
[2/6] Checking SSH keys on x52mra-1b ...
[3/6] Checking SSH keys on x52mra-1a ...
[4/6] Checking SSH keys on x52mpe-1a ...
[5/6] Checking SSH keys on x52cmp-1a ...
[6/6] Checking SSH keys on x52cmp-1b ...

From root@x52cmp-1b (10.240.220.230):
to root@x52cmp-1b (10.240.220.230): OK
to root@x52mra-1a (10.240.220.232): OK
to root@x52cmp-1a (10.240.220.229): OK
to root@x52mpe-1b (10.240.220.236): OK
to root@x52mpe-1a (10.240.220.235): OK
to root@x52mra-1b (10.240.220.233): OK

From root@x52mra-1a (10.240.220.232):
to root@x52mra-1b (10.240.220.233): OK

From root@x52cmp-1a (10.240.220.229):
to root@x52cmp-1b (10.240.220.230): OK
to root@x52mra-1a (10.240.220.232): OK
to root@x52cmp-1a (10.240.220.229): OK
to root@x52mpe-1b (10.240.220.236): OK
to root@x52mpe-1a (10.240.220.235): OK
to root@x52mra-1b (10.240.220.233): OK

From root@x52mpe-1b (10.240.220.236):
to root@x52mpe-1a (10.240.220.235): OK

From root@x52mpe-1a (10.240.220.235):
to root@x52mpe-1b (10.240.220.236): OK

From root@x52mra-1b (10.240.220.233):
to root@x52mra-1a (10.240.220.232): OK

SSH keys are OK.

[admusr@x52cmp-1a ~]$
```

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

6.6 CONFIGURE ROUTING ON YOUR SERVERS

On the MPE and MRA servers, the default route is initially configured to route all traffic via the OAM interface for remote servers. This facilitates clustering and topology configurations. However, in many networking environments, it is desirable to route signaling traffic (that is, Diameter messages) using the Signaling interfaces of the servers and switches, and OAM traffic (that is, replication, configuration, alarms, and reports) using the OAM interface. This requires configuring routing on the servers.

If you are using the Signaling interfaces, you must configure the required static routes on the MPE and MRA servers to separate OAM and Signaling traffic. The recommended method to provide separation is:

- Add static routes on the OAM network to management servers (CMP, NTP, SNMP, PM&C).

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

Note: Administration of the MPE and MRA servers that require SSH access may be impacted by moving the default gateway and may need static routes as well.

- Change the default route on the servers to the Sig-A network.

In this way, traffic to other signaling points in the network will follow the default route over the Sig-A network.

Other routing configurations may be required, depending on your needs.

Prerequisite:

Before beginning this procedure, verify that you have SSH access to the MPE and MRA servers.

You need the following information to complete this procedure:

- The root account password (root_password)
- At a minimum, the following static routes:
 - Site 1 and 2 CMP OAM network (if not co-located)
 - Server C for georedundant MPE and MRA clusters
 - NTP server
 - DNS server
 - snmp_trap_destination (SNMP trap destination)
 - Remote backup archives
 - External syslog servers
 - Any host you wish the MPE or MRA server to access over the OAM network (that is, routes to mates in georedundant networks)

The procedure for configuring routing on your servers is described in the [Platform Configuration User's Guide](#).

Tip: During this procedure, ensure that access to the server ILOM or iLO remote console is always available in case a route change impacts remote access to get back into the server. Using SSH from the CMP system to connect to the MRA or MPE servers is recommended to minimize such impacts.

Note: You must perform this procedure for every MPE and MRA server. You should perform this procedure only for the MPE and MRA servers, as the CMP system should retain the default route on the OAM interface.

6.7 CONFIGURE POLICY COMPONENTS

This section will cover procedures to configure the Policy Servers to a minimum level to execute a test call. Additional details can be found in the [Configuration Management Platform Wireless User's Guide](#)



6.7.1 Adding MPE and MRA to CMP Menu

This procedure will configure the Policy Server (MPE) and MRA applications.

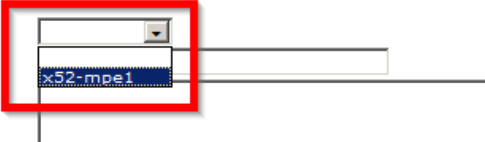

6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

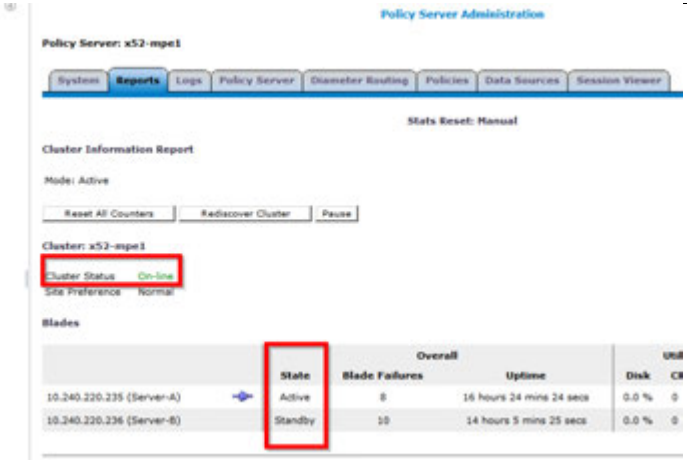
6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu

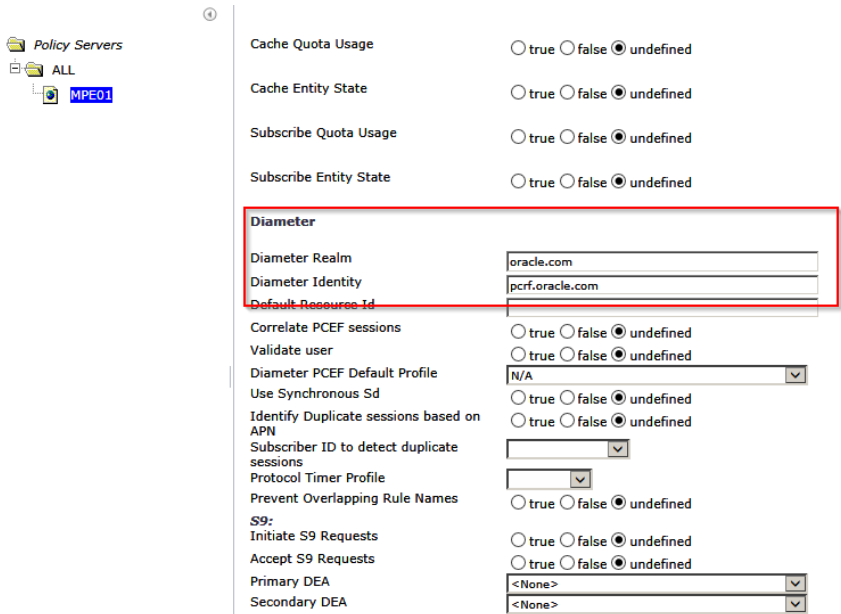
STEP #	<p>This procedure will perform the configuration of MPE/Policy Server and MRA applications</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http)- MRA and MPE clusters have been added to the CMP Topology <p>Note: Only the following Web Browsers are supported in OCMP 12.2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Mozilla Firefox® release 31.0 or later• Google Chrome version 40.0 or later <p>*Internet Explorer in not supported for this procedure</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Create Policy Server in CMP GUI</p> <p>Select: Policy Server → Configuration → Policy Servers</p>  <p>Click “Create Policy Server” in the Policy Server Administration screen:</p>  <p>Enter values for the configuration attributes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">Associated Cluster (required) — Select the cluster with which to associate this MPE device. MPE clusters already configured in Topology Settings will be listed.Name — Name of this MPE device. The default is the associated cluster name.Description / Location (optional) — Information that defines the function or location of this MPE device.Secure Connection — Designates whether or not to use the HTTPS protocol for communication (certificates must be configured to use this option) between Policy

6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu



		<p>Management devices. If selected, devices communicate over port 8443.</p> <p>e) Type — Defines the policy server type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oracle (default) — The policy server is an MPE device and can be fully managed by the CMP. • Unmanaged — The policy server is not an MPE device and therefore cannot be actively managed by the CMP. This selection is useful when an MPE device is routing traffic to a non-Oracle policy server. <p>Note: When configuring an “Associated Cluster”, the drop down tab will only be populated with MPE clusters that have been configured in the CMP Topology from previous steps.</p> <p>New Policy Server</p> <p>Configuration</p> <p>Associated Cluster Name Description / Location</p>  <p>After completing the form, Click “Save” and confirm Configured Policy Server status is “On-line”:</p> 
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Check MPE cluster in Reports tab</p>	<p>Select: Policy Server→Configuration -> <MPE>→ Reports tab</p>

6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu

		 <p>Validate that MPE cluster status is “On-line” and that both Active and Standby servers displayed correctly.</p>
--	--	---


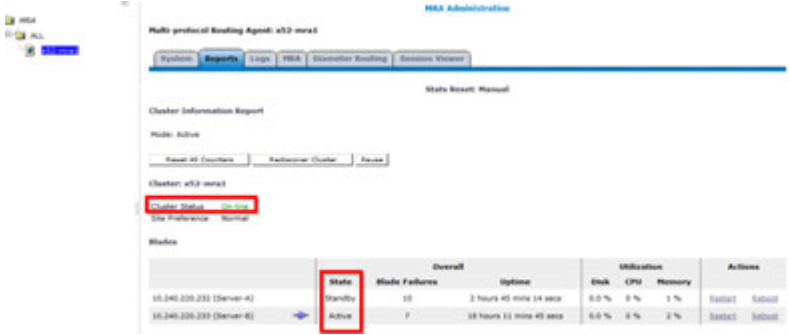
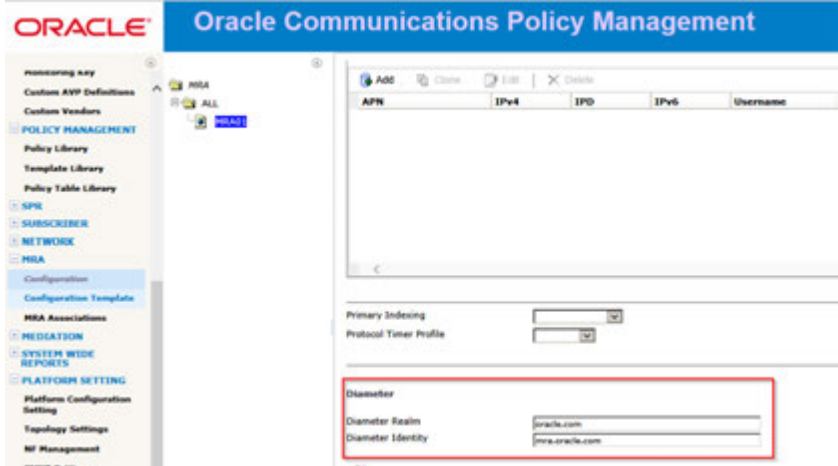
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Diameter configuration of MPE</p>	<p>Select: Policy Server → Configuration → MPE → Policy Server tab</p> <p>There are many configurations on Policy Server tab of a newly associated MPE. The most important is to define Diameter Realm and identity to allow Diameter connections.</p>  <p>To define these Diameter parameters, click the “Modify” button on top of page then fill in the Diameter Realm and Identity that your network will be using and click “Save”:</p>
--	---	--

6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu

		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Diameter Realm</td> <td>The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter Identity</td> <td>The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For example:</p> <p>Diameter</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Diameter Realm</td> <td>oracle.com</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter Identity</td> <td>pcrf.oracle.com</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default Resource Id</td> <td><None></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Correlate PCEF sessions</td> <td>Yes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Validate user</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter PCEF Default Profile</td> <td><None></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Use Synchronous Sd</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Identify Duplicate sessions based on APN</td> <td>No</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Subscriber ID to detect duplicate sessions</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Prevent Overlapping Rule Names</td> <td>false</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Protocol Timer Profile</td> <td>undefined</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Attribute	Description	Diameter Realm	The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.	Diameter Identity	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).	Diameter Realm	oracle.com	Diameter Identity	pcrf.oracle.com	Default Resource Id	<None>	Correlate PCEF sessions	Yes	Validate user	No	Diameter PCEF Default Profile	<None>	Use Synchronous Sd	No	Identify Duplicate sessions based on APN	No	Subscriber ID to detect duplicate sessions		Prevent Overlapping Rule Names	false	Protocol Timer Profile	undefined
Attribute	Description																													
Diameter Realm	The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.																													
Diameter Identity	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).																													
Diameter Realm	oracle.com																													
Diameter Identity	pcrf.oracle.com																													
Default Resource Id	<None>																													
Correlate PCEF sessions	Yes																													
Validate user	No																													
Diameter PCEF Default Profile	<None>																													
Use Synchronous Sd	No																													
Identify Duplicate sessions based on APN	No																													
Subscriber ID to detect duplicate sessions																														
Prevent Overlapping Rule Names	false																													
Protocol Timer Profile	undefined																													
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Create MRA in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: MRA → Configuration → ALL</p>  <p>Click “Create Multi-protocol Routing Agent” in the MRA Administration screen:</p>  <p>Enter information as appropriate for the MRA cluster:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Associated Cluster (required) — Select the MRA cluster from the list. Name (required) — Enter a name for the MRA cluster. Description/Location (optional) — Free-form text. Enter up to 250 characters. Secure Connection — Select to enable a secure HTTP connection (HTTPS) instead of a normal connection (HTTP). The default is a non-secure (HTTP) connection. Stateless Routing — Select to enable stateless routing. In stateless routing, the MRA cluster only routes traffic; it does not process traffic. The default is stateful routing. <p>Then Click “Save” and confirm Configured MRA status is “On-line”:</p>																												

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

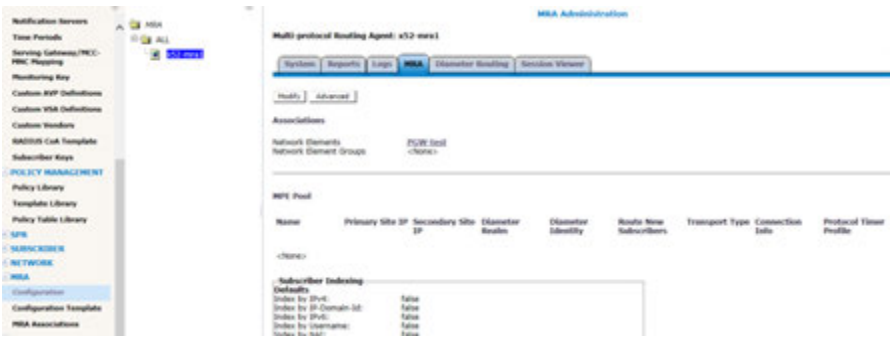
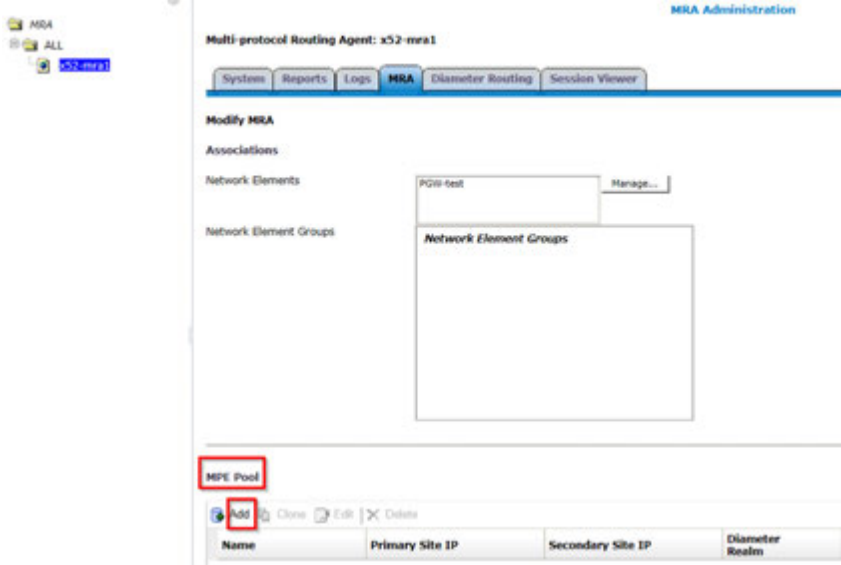
6.7.1: Adding MPE and MRA to the CMP Menu

		
<p>5.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Check MRA cluster in Reports tab</p>	<p>Select: MRA -> Configuration -> MRA -> Reports tab</p>  <p>Validate that MPE cluster status is “On-line” and that both Active and Standby servers displayed correctly.</p>
<p>6.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Diameter configuration for MRA</p>	<p>Select: MRA -> Configuration -> MRA -> MRA tab</p> <p>It is important to define Diameter Realm and identity to enable Diameter messaging to function correctly:</p>  <p>To define these Diameter parameters, click the “Modify” button on top of page then fill in the Diameter Realm and Identity that your network will be using and click “Save”:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Diameter</p> <p>Diameter Realm oracle.com</p> <p>Diameter Identity mra.oracle.com</p> </div>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

6.7.2 Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End)

If MRAs (Policy Front End) are used in the Policy Management System, the MPEs for which the MRA will act as the Policy Front End, must be added to the MPE Pool on the MRA. If MPEs are not used in the Policy Solution this procedure can be skipped.

6.7.2: Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End)

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will add the MPE clusters to the MPE Pool of the MRA (Policy Front End)</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - MRA and MPE clusters have been added to the CMP Menu <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 20px; margin: 5px 0;"></div>	<p>Create Network Element in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: MRA → Configuration → <MRA> → MRA tab</p>  <p>Click "Modify" in the MRA Administration screen: The "MPE Pool" configuration form is presented.</p> 

6.7.2: Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End)

Click **“Add”** under **“MPE Pool”**: The **“Add Diameter MPE Peer”** form opens.

Add Diameter MPE Peer

MPE Type: Internal

Associated MPE: x52-mpe1

Name: x52-mpe1

Primary Site IP: 10.196.239.38

Secondary Site IP:

Diameter Realm: oracle.com

Diameter Identity: x52-mpe1.oracle.com

Protocol Timer Profile: undefined

Route New Subscribers:

Transport

TCP

Connections: 1

SCTP

Max Incoming Streams: 8

Max Outgoing Streams: 8

Save Cancel

Click the **“Associated MPE”** drop down on the **“Add Diameter MPE Peer”** form. MPE clusters previously configured in the CMP topology and added to the CMP menu will be listed here.

Add Diameter MPE Peer

MPE Type: Internal

Associated MPE: x52-mpe1

Name: x52-mpe1

Primary Site IP:

Secondary Site IP:

Diameter Realm:

Diameter Identity:

Protocol Timer Profile: undefined

Route New Subscribers:

Transport

TCP

Connections: 1

SCTP

Max Incoming Streams: 8

Max Outgoing Streams: 8

Save Cancel

6.7.2: Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End)

Choose an MPE cluster from the drop down tab.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Diameter MPE Peer' dialog box. The 'Associated MPE' dropdown menu is highlighted with a red box and contains the value 'x52-mpe1'. Other fields include 'MPE Type' (Internal), 'Name' (x52-mpe1), 'Primary Site IP' (10.196.239.38), 'Diameter Realm' (oracle.com), and 'Diameter Identity' (x52-mpe1.oracle.com). The 'Save' button at the bottom is also highlighted with a red box.

The required fields will auto-populate. Click “Save”

Note: The Diameter Realm and Diameter Identity must have already been data-filled on the MPE.

The added MPE cluster now appears in the MPE Pool.

MPE Pool

Name	Primary Site IP	Secondary Site IP	Diameter Realm	Diameter Identity
x52-mpe1	10.196.239.38		oracle.com	x52-mpe1.oracle.com

Navigate to the bottom of the form and click “Save” again.

The screenshot shows the bottom part of the configuration form. The 'Diameter Identity' field is set to 'netramra.oracle.com'. Below it, there are fields for 'Primary DEA' and 'Secondary DEA', both set to '<None>'. The 'Save' button at the bottom is highlighted with a red box.

The added MPE cluster can now be seen in the “MPE Pool”.

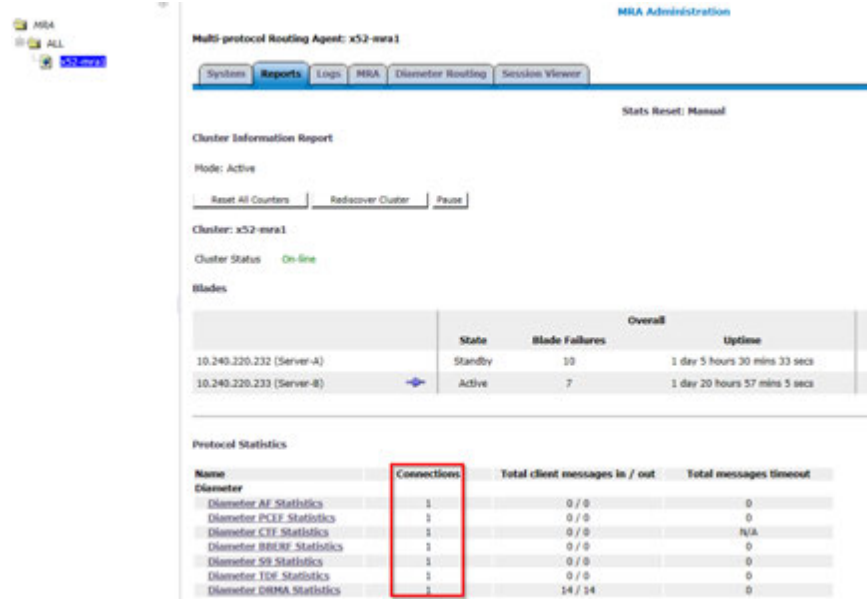
MPE Pool

Name	Primary Site IP	Secondary Site IP	Diameter Realm	Diameter Identity	Route New Subscribers	Transport Type	Connection Info
x52-mpe1	10.196.239.38		oracle.com	x52-mpe1.oracle.com	true	TCP	Connections : 1

6.7.2: Configure MPE Pool on MRA (Policy Front End)

Confirm the Diameter connection to the MPE from the MRA on the MRA Reports tab

Select: [MRA](#) -> [Configuration](#) -> [MRA](#) -> [Reports Tab](#)



A 1401 Log can be noted in the MPE Trace Log that the Diameter connection between the MRA and the MPE has been established.

1401 Warning Diameter:Transport connection opened with peer 10.196.68.10:34824

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

6.7.3 Define and Add Network Elements

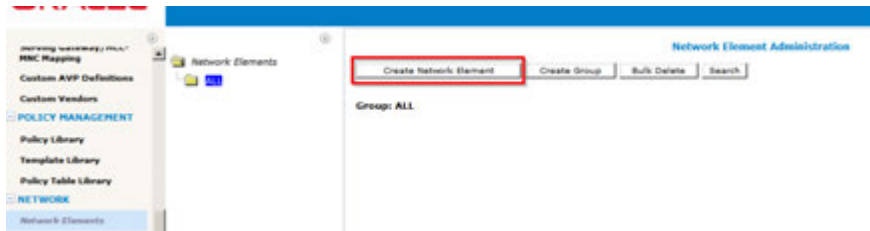
Network elements are configured in the CMP to define the External systems that the Policy Server will communicate with.

6.7.3: Define and Add Network Elements

STEP #	This procedure will add the Network elements that are configured in the CMP to define the External systems that the Policy Server will communicate with.	
	Prerequisite: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - MRA and MPE clusters have been added to the CMP Menu Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.	
	IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.	
1.	Create Network Element	Select: Network→Network Elements→All

6.7.3: Define and Add Network Elements

in CMP GUI



Click “Create Network Element” in the “Network Element Administration” screen:



Enter information for the network element:

- a) **Name** (required) — The name you assign to the network element.
- b) **Host Name/IP Address** (required) — Registered domain name, or IP address in IPv4 or IPv6 format, assigned to the network element.
- c) **Backup Host Name** (optional) — Alternate address that is used if communication between the MPE device and the network element’s primary address fails.
- d) **Description/Location** (optional)— Free-form text. Enter up to 250 characters.
- e) **Type** (required) — Select the type of network element.

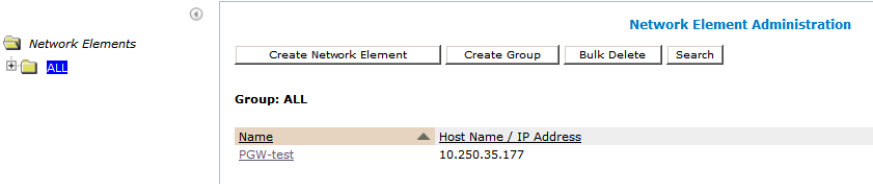
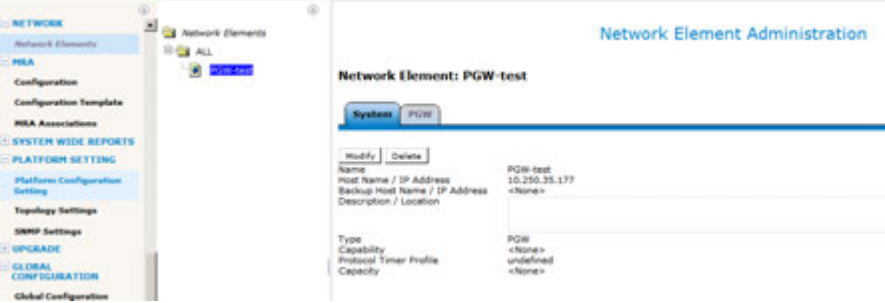
The supported types are:

Note: This list varies depending on the configuration of the CMP system.

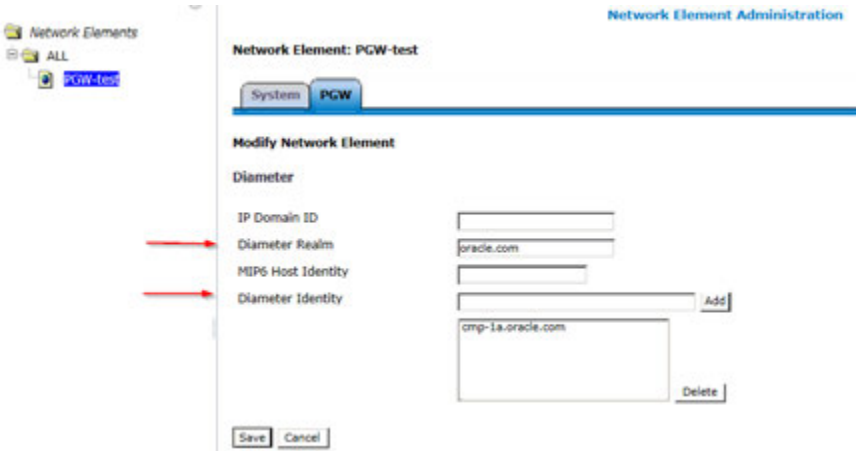
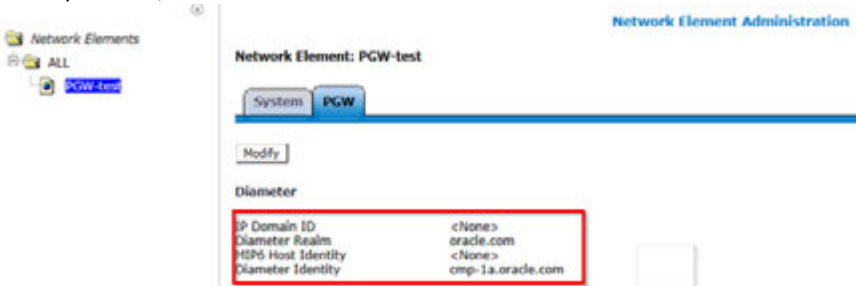
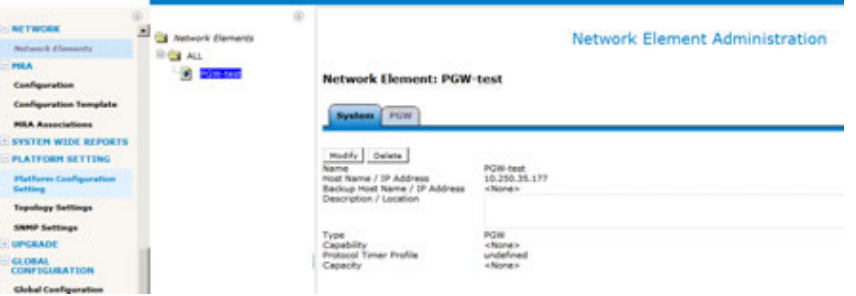
- **PDSN** — Packet Data Serving Node (with the sub-types **Generic PDSN** or **Starent**)
- **HomeAgent** — Customer equipment Home Agent
- **GGSN** (default) — Gateway GPRS Support Node
- **Radius-BNG** — RADIUS broadband network gateway
- **HSGW** — HRPD Serving Gateway
- **PGW** — Packet Data Network Gateway
- **SGW** — Serving Gateway
- **DPI** — Deep Packet Inspection device
- **DSR** — Diameter Signaling Router device
- **NAS** — Network Access Server device
- f) **Protocol Timer Profile**—select a protocol timer profile. For information on creating protocol timers, see *Managing Protocol Timer Profiles* in the CMP Wireless User’s Guide
- g) **Capacity** — Not applicable.

When you finish, click **Save**.

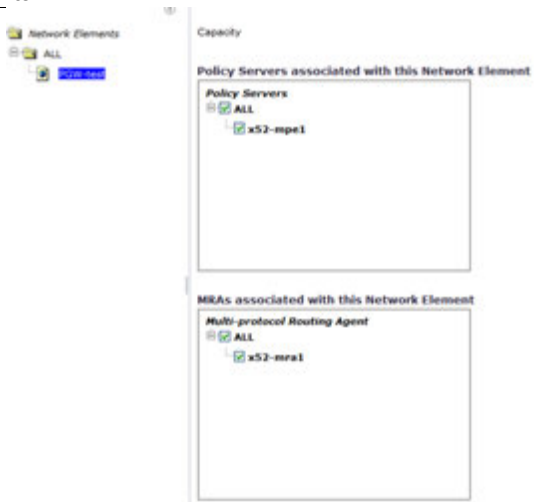
6.7.3: Define and Add Network Elements

		<p>For this example a “PGW” Network Element has been defined.</p> <p>New Network Element</p> <p>Name <input type="text"/></p> <p>Host Name / IP Address <input type="text"/></p> <p>Backup Host Name <input type="text"/></p> <p>Description / Location <input type="text"/></p> <p>Type PGW</p> <p>Protocol Timer Profile undefined</p> <p>Capability Usage-Report-26</p> <p>Capacity <input type="text"/></p> <p>After completing the form, Click “Save” .</p>  <p>The new Network Element has now been created.</p>
<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Configure Network Element in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: Network→Network Elements→Network Element entity</p>  <p>The newly created Network Element will display on the “System” tab, showing the configuration from the previous step. For an initial call to the Policy Management System, the Network Element will need connectivity to the Policy Management System. In addition the Network Element will need a Diameter Identity assigned that will be used to authenticate the Diameter connection from the Network Element.</p> <p>Click on the “PGW” tab of the Network Element to assign the Diameter Identity that will be used to authenticate to the Policy Management System.</p> <p>Click “Modify”.</p>

6.7.3: Define and Add Network Elements

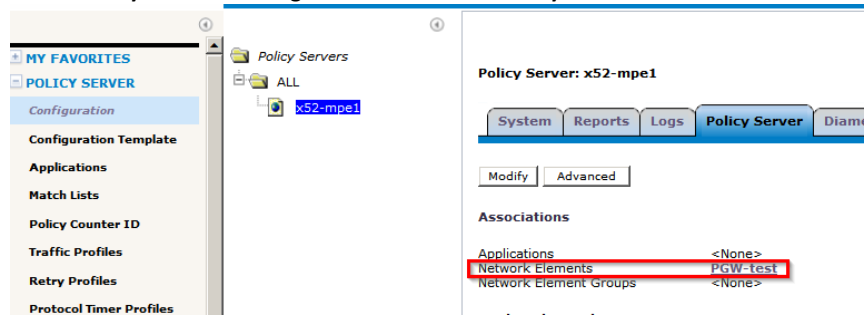
		 <p>Note: This tab is dependent on the Network Element “Type” that was configured during the previous step. In this example the Network Element “Type” used is a “PGW” (Packet Gateway) which will be used to establish a Diameter connection to the Policy Management System.</p> <p>When you finish, click Save.</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>IP Domain ID</td> <td><None></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter Realm</td> <td>oracle.com</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIP6 Host Identity</td> <td><None></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter Identity</td> <td>cmp-1a.oracle.com</td> </tr> </table>	IP Domain ID	<None>	Diameter Realm	oracle.com	MIP6 Host Identity	<None>	Diameter Identity	cmp-1a.oracle.com
IP Domain ID	<None>									
Diameter Realm	oracle.com									
MIP6 Host Identity	<None>									
Diameter Identity	cmp-1a.oracle.com									
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Deploy Network Element in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: Network→Network Elements →<Network Element entity></p>  <p>Click “Modify” in the Network Element Administration screen and check the boxes as appropriate to deploy the network element to the MPE and MRA if present.</p>								

6.7.3: Define and Add Network Elements



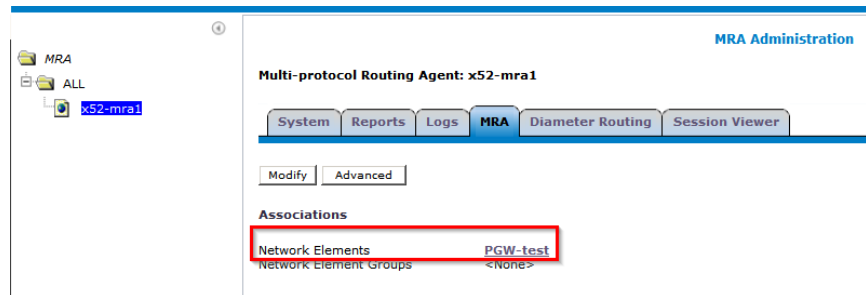
When you finish, click "Save".

Select: Policy Server → Configuration → <MPE> → Policy Server tab



Confirm the deployed Network Element has now been associated with the MPE.

Select: MRA → Configuration → <MRA> → MRA tab



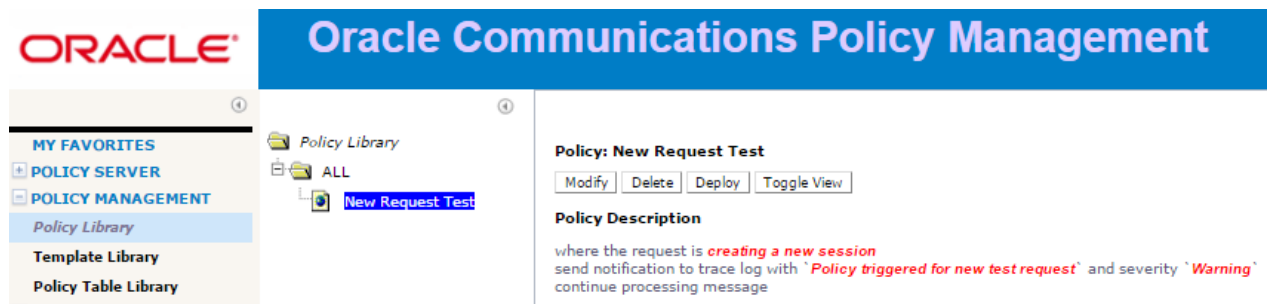
Confirm the deployed Network Element has now been associated with the MRA.

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

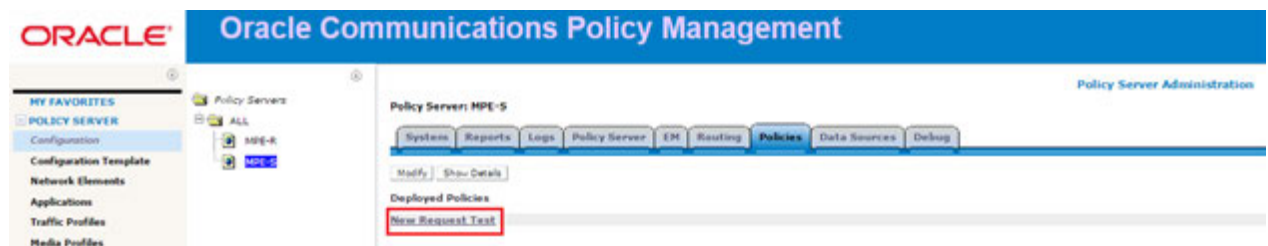
6.8 LOAD POLICIES AND RELATED POLICY DATA

This step is optional. Policies are not required to process a test call but for the purpose of verification, a basic Policy can be installed manually, or using an import action and an xml file. The policy must be deployed to the MPE which will process the test call.

Here is an example of a very simple policy that can be used to confirm session creation for a test call by viewing the trace logs on the MPE that processes the test call.

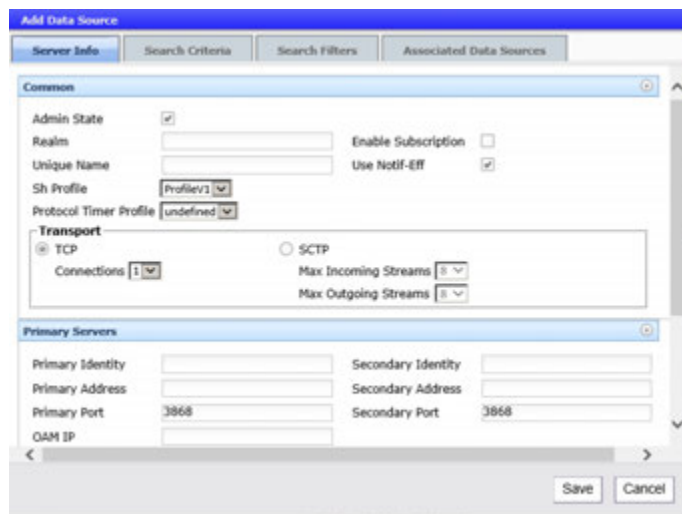


Note that this policy needs to be deployed to the relevant MPE that will process Diameter session requests. Deployed Policies can be verified from the “Policies” tab of the MPE that will process the test request:



6.9 ADD A DATA SOURCE

This step is optional. When the test call is received by the MPE, the MPE can be configured to perform a Subscriber lookup to an appropriately configured Subscriber Database. Refer to [CMP Wireless User's Guide](#) for more information.



Here is a sample configuration. This form will be specific to the customer site.

6.10 PERFORM TEST CALL

A basic test call will confirm that the system is ready for testing of call scenarios defined by the customer. The test call will be initiated from the network element that has been previously created. For example, a PGW (Packet Gateway) will first establish a Diameter connection with the PCRF and then initiate the test call by sending an Initial Diameter CCR-I message.

Note: Customer specific information such as “Indexing” and “Diameter Realm and Diameter Identity” may be required on the on the MPE →Policy Server tab for the test call. The following is a sample for reference only.

6.11 PRE-PRODUCTION CONFIGURATIONS

There are other steps required to verify the Operations configuration of the system. For example, to verify that the SNMP traps (Alarms) are being delivered to the customer Network Management centers. These are outside the scope of this document, but also need to be planned and executed.

Please reference the following document for information on configuring SNMP:

[SNMP User's Guide 12.2](#)

Additional Procedures can be referenced from the following documents:

[Platform Configuration User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

[CMP Wireless User's Guide 12.2](#)

Changes in the behavior of Release 12.2 are documented in the [Oracle® Communications Policy Management Release Notes Release 12.2](#)

Behavior Modifications

Removal of Manual Statistics Mode (Statistics Mode Unification) - ER 22534128

As of this release, the manual statistics mode is no longer available. The default and only available mode in this release is interval mode statistics. In prior releases, manual stats mode is the default.

Firewall Enabled by Default - ER 22536198

Firewall functionality is now enabled by default. Server firewall protects Policy Management against DDoS, flooding attacks, and unwanted connections. The settings are not altered upon upgrade.

7. CONFIGURE POLICY APPLICATION SERVERS IN CABLE MODE

The following procedures configure the Policy Management Application in Cable Mode and establish the network relationships, to a level that would allow a basic test call through the system.

The following procedures are common to HP and Oracle RMS environments, except for small differences noted within the procedures.

For the greater detail please refer the following documents as found in the reference section of this document.

[Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

[Platform Configuration User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

7.1 PERFORM INITIAL CONFIGURATION OF POLICY SERVERS - PLATCFG

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

STEP #	<p>You must configure the operation, administration, and management (OAM) network address of the server, as well as related networking. Execute the referenced procedure on every server in the Policy Management network.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This procedure assumes that you are using Policy Management in a cable network. • You need to know whether or not the server has an optional Ethernet Mezzanine card installed. • Hostname — the unique hostname for the device being configured. • OAM Real IP IPv4 Address — the IP address that is permanently assigned to this device. • OAM Default IPv4 Route — the default route of the OAM network. The MPE, BOD and MA system will move the default route to the SIG-A interface once the topology configuration is complete. The default route remains on the OAM interface for the CMP system. • OAM Real IP IPv6 Address (optional) — the IP address that is permanently assigned to this device. • OAM Default IPv6 Route (optional) — the default route of the OAM network. Note the MPE,BOD and MA system will move the default route to the SIG-A interface once the topology configuration is complete. The default route remains on the OAM interface for the CMP system. • NTP Server(s) — a reachable NTP server(s) (ntp_address). • DNS Server A (optional)— a reachable DNS server. • DNS Server B (optional) — a reachable DNS server. • DNS Search — the domain name appended to a DNS query. • Device — the bond interface of the OAM device. Use the default value, as changing this value is not supported. • OAM VLAN Id — the OAM network VLAN ID for Oracle X5-2 RMS. • SIG A VLAN Id — the Signaling-A network VLAN ID for Oracle X5-2 RMS. • SIG B VLAN Id (optional) — the Signaling-B network VLAN ID for Oracle X5-2 RMS. • SIG C VLAN Id — SIG-C is not supported in Cable mode <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p>
---------------	--

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Login to server as root via Console</p>	<p>Access the iLO GUI, and open a Remote Console session then login as root Note: iLO procedures can be found in Section 8: Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window</p> <pre>NOTICE - PROPRIETARY SYSTEM This system is intended to be used solely by authorized users in the course of legitimate corporate business. Users are monitored to the extent necessary to properly administer the system, to identify unauthorized users or users operating beyond their proper authority, and to investigate improper access or use. By accessing this system, you are consenting to this monitoring. hostnameef153e93d6590 login:</pre>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Verify the type of server logged in to</p>	<p>Login as root, via Console.</p> <pre># getPolicyRev -p</pre> <p>Output will be either bod, cmp, ma, or mpe as in the following example for cmp policy server:</p> <pre>[root@hostnameef153e93d6590 ~]# getPolicyRev -p cmp [root@hostnameef153e93d6590 ~]# _</pre>

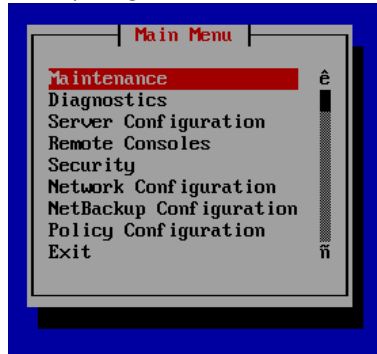
7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

3.

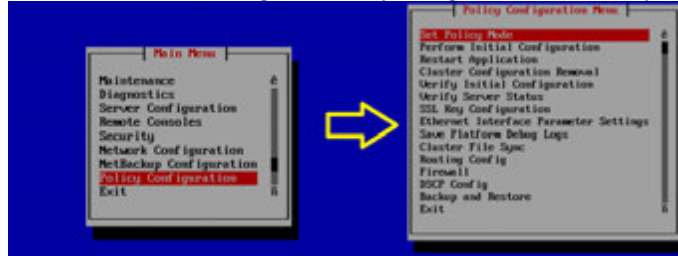
Verify Policy Mode in platcfg

Run platcfg tool:

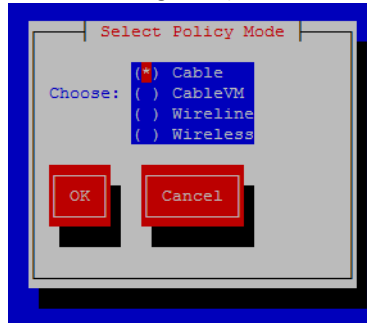
su - platcfg



From the main menu navigate to Policy Configuration -> Set Policy Mode



Choose the relevant Policy mode from the deployment as shown below (in this procedure we are choosing Cable):



Confirm switching the policy mode from the default "Wireless" to "Cable":



Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Perform Initial Configuration</p>	<p>After mode is set, system will return back to the Policy Configuration menu. Scroll to “Perform Initial Configuration” to start performing the initial configuration of the server:</p>  <p>Fill in the initial configuration values for the server:</p> 
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

5.

Enter the configuration values and then select **OK**, where:

- **HostName**--The unique name of the host for the device being configured.
- **OAM Real IP Address**--The IP address that is permanently assigned to this device.
- **OAM Real IPv4 Address**--The IPv4 address that is permanently assigned to this device.
- **OAM Default Route**--The default route of the OAM network.
- **OAM IPv4 Default Route**--The IPv4 default route of the OAM network.
- **OAM Real IPv6 Address**--The IPv6 address that is permanently assigned to this device.
- **OAM IPv6 Default Route**--The IPv6 default route of the OAM network.
- **NTP Server (required)**--A reachable NTP server on the OAM network.
- **DNS Server A (optional)**--A reachable DNS server on the OAM network.
- **DNS Server B (optional)**--A second reachable DNS server on the OAM network.
- **DNS Search**--A directive to a DNS resolver (client) to append the specified domain name (suffix) before sending out a DNS query.
- **OAM Device**--The bond interface of the OAM device. Note that the default value should be used, as changing this value is not supported.
- **BackPlane Device [Only available in Cable mode]** -- the bond interface of the backplane device Note that the default value should be used, as changing this value is not supported.
- **BackPlane IP Prefix [Only available in Cable mode]** -- The Ip address prefix assigned for the Backplane direct link.

In case the H/W used is Oracle X5-2 or NETRA RMS, VLANs can be used and the following parameters will be available for configuration in this menu:

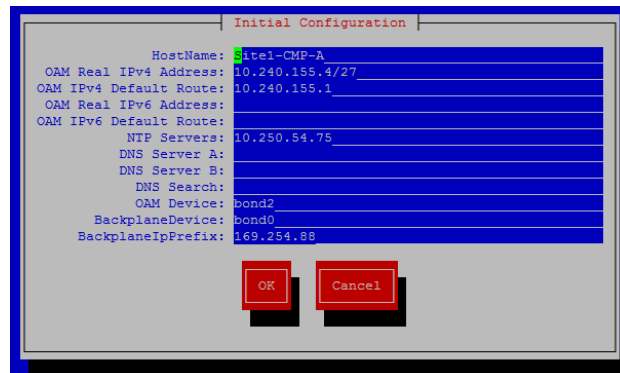
- **OAMVLAN**--The OAM network VLAN Id
- **SIG A VLAN** --The Signaling-A network VLAN Id
- **SIG B VLAN** --The Signaling-B network VLAN Id
- **SIG C VLAN** --**Not supported in Cable mode**

Note:

1. All of the fields listed above are required, except for fields *DNS Server* and *DNS Search*, which are optional but recommended
2. Every network service and IP flow that is supported by IPv4 is now supported by IPv6. Either interface or a combination of the two can be configured.

When finished completing the form, select **OK** to save and apply the configuration.

The configuration in the following snapshot is only an example for HP RMS H//W. Actual configuration should be in accordance with network design requirements



```
Initial Configuration
-----
HostName: site1-CMP-A
OAM Real IPv4 Address: 10.240.155.4/27
OAM IPv4 Default Route: 10.240.155.1
OAM Real IPv6 Address:
OAM IPv6 Default Route:
NTP Servers: 10.250.54.75
DNS Server A:
DNS Server B:
DNS Search:
OAM Device: bond2
BackplaneDevice: bond0
BackplaneIpPrefix: 169.254.88
[OK] [Cancel]
```

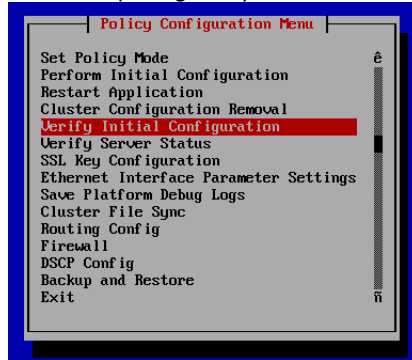
The platcfg form will process the configuration of the server, and then it will return to the platcfg menu.

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

6.

Verify Config

From the main menu navigate to Policy Configuration -> **Verify Initial Configuration** from within the platcfg utility.



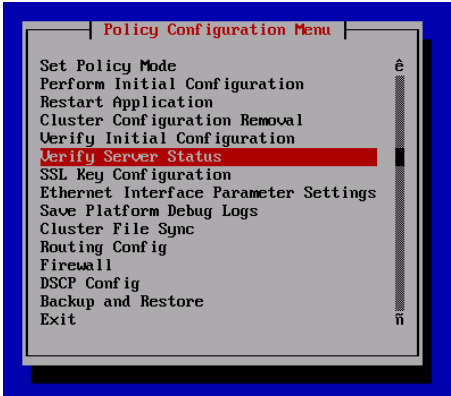
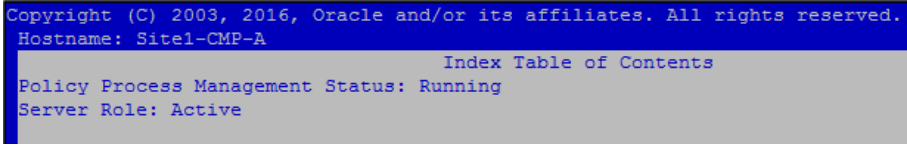
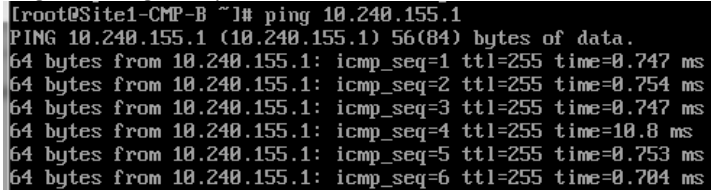
A display similar to the following is shown.



Note: The NTP status may not have updated. This is normal behavior. You may need to press the Forward button to view the NTP status.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Verify Server Status</p>	<p>Exit from this screen and select Verify Server Status:</p>  <p>The server should be in a running state. For example:</p>  <p>Press "Exit" repeatedly until completely exiting the platcfg utility. You will be returned back to Linux prompt screen.</p>
<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ping the OAM default gateway to verify server is available on the network</p>	<p>From the Linux command prompt ping the OAM gateway (default Gateway from the initial config procedure) to make sure the gateway is reachable.</p> <p>Ping the OAM gateway to make sure it is reachable:</p>  <p>If the gateway is reachable it should be possible to SSH to the server IP and login as admusr</p> <p>In case you cannot SSH to the configured server or cannot reach the OAM gateway, review the initial configurations and review the network setup to ensure there are no connectivity issues.</p> <p>Execute ip -4 addr (IPv4) or ip -6 addr (IPv6) to confirm the IP addresses configured during the initialization are present.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.1: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers- Platcfg

<p>9.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Verify NTP connectivity</p>	<p>NOTE: Server sync to Network Time Protocol (NTP) is very important to the later steps in this install.</p> <p>To sync and verify NTP server connectivity, perform these steps:</p> <p># ntpq -pn</p> <pre>[root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# ntpq -pn remote refid st t when poll reach delay offset jitter ----- *10.250.54.75 192.5.41.40 2 u 766 1024 377 0.218 -0.091 2.371 [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]#</pre> <p>The "*" sign besides the NTP server Ip indicates the NTP server is in sync.</p> <p>In case the sign is not there, you may try manually to sync with NTP server through the following steps:</p> <p># service ntpd stop</p> <p># ntpdate <ntpserver address> Bad response: 26 Jun 16:47:25 ntpdate[16364]: no server suitable for synchronization found Good response:</p> <pre>[root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# service ntpd stop Shutting down ntpd: [OK] [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# ntpdate 10.250.32.10 1 Oct 10:03:11 ntpdate[32563]: 10.250.32.10 rate limit response from server. 1 Oct 10:03:11 ntpdate[32563]: adjust time server 10.250.32.10 offset 0.001129 sec [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]#</pre> <p># service ntpd start</p> <p>If ntpdate has a bad response, follow up to get the needed networking, firewalls and permissions to solve this connectivity issue with the NTP server.</p> <p>NOTE: 'ntpdate' is an emergency utility; use only when you see significant time difference between system and the actual time.</p>
<p>10.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Repeat on remaining servers</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure on all Policy components' servers that are planned for service. If solution is geo-redundant, this procedure need to be performed on site1 and site2 Policy servers</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

7.2 PERFORM INITIAL CONFIGURATION OF THE POLICY SERVERS - CMP GUI

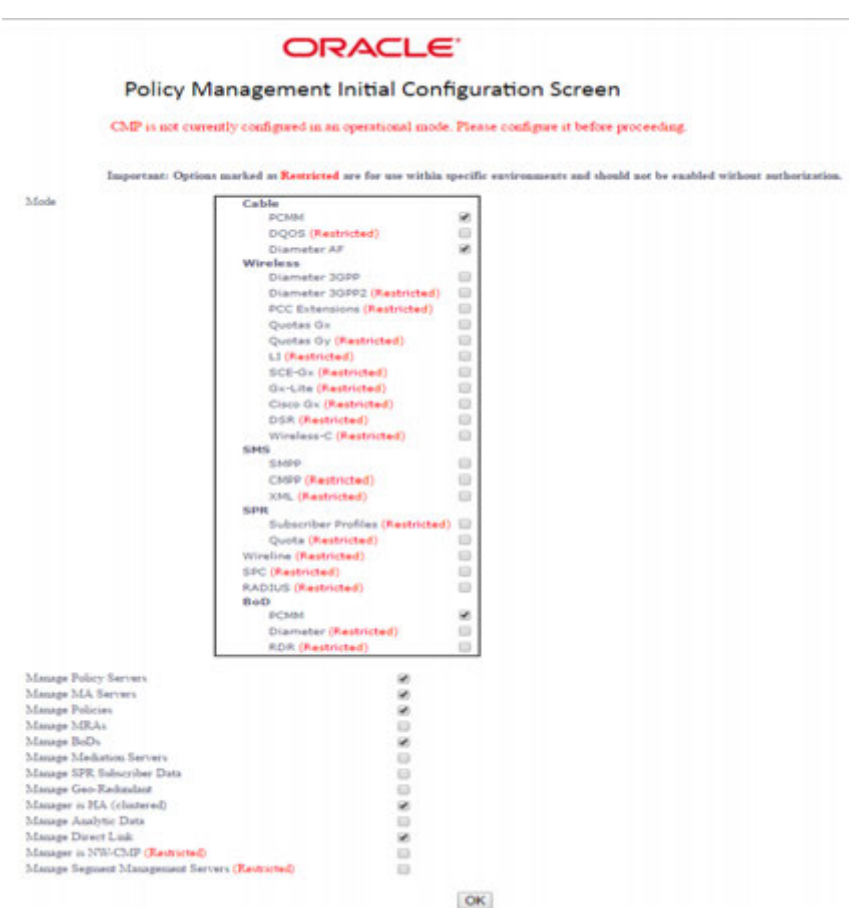
This procedure will perform initial configuration of the CMP GUI on a newly installed environment.

IMPORTANT:

In a deployment that will have Geo-Site CMP servers (requires a secondary Site2-CMP cluster) , the Geo-site CMP servers do not get configured with this procedure. Instead, the Active (Site1) CMPs are configured with this procedure, and are designated as "CMP Site 1". The other pair of CMPs will be added to the network Topology from the CMP Site 1 GUI . The CMP Site 1 cluster will push the configuration to the Geo-Site (site2 cluster) CMPs at a later step in these procedures.

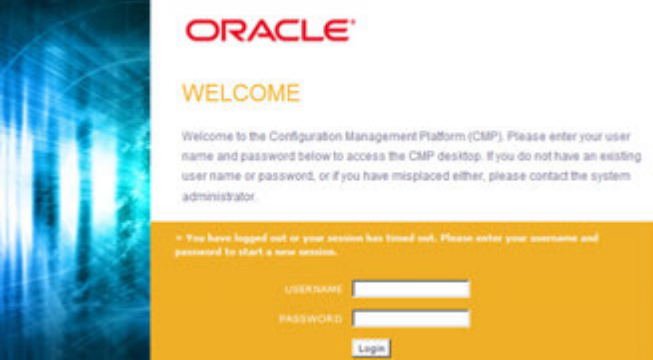


Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

STEP #	<p>This procedure will configure the CMP at the Active site (CMP Site 1).</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM REAL IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Open CMP GUI</p>	<p>Open CMP GUI for the first time by navigating the CMP OAM IP address in a supported browser: http://<CMP_REAL_OAM_IP></p> <p>Note: The initial GUI configuration can be performed on either CMP that will be located at Site1. If this is not geo-redundant solution there will be no Site 2 location.</p>
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Set CMP Mode in 1st selected CMP</p>	<p>Once connected to the CMP GUI for the 1st time, user will be prompted to select the “modes” for the system, which define what functionality will be configurable from the CMP GUI. The mode selection depends on the customer deployment.</p> <p>Select the check boxes as needed, and click OK.</p> <p>The following page provides a sample selection for Cable common related options.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p>[Note: modes can be changed at a later time if needed, but the method to access to this</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.2: Perform Initial Configuration of the Policy Servers - CMP GUI

		<p>mode selection is not documented.] Contact Oracle Support if Mode selection is required to be changed after the initial configuration.</p> <p>For the greater detail please refer to “The Mode Settings Page” in the following document (as found in the reference section of this document).</p> <p>Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide Release 12.2</p>
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Login to CMP GUI</p>	<p>After finishing the policy mode selection and pressing “OK”, login screen below will be displayed:</p> 
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Set admin password</p>	<p>Initial, default login is admin/policies After login, the system will prompt the user to change the admin password.</p>  <p>Enter the default old password then the new password twice and press “Change Password” button.</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Verify that the CMP GUI is displayed, with expected menus.</p>	
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		


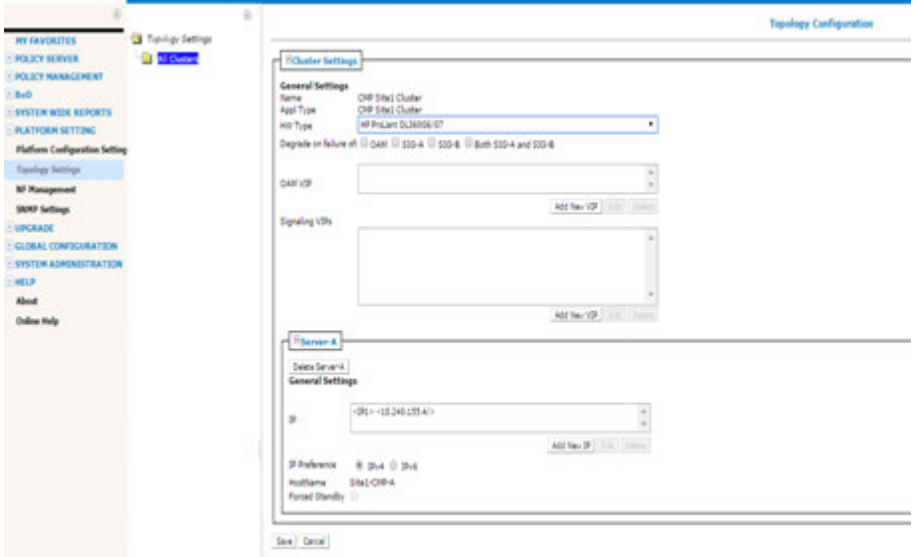
7.3 CMP SITE1 CLUSTER CONFIGURATION

This procedure will perform initial configuration of the CMP GUI, CMP Site 1 cluster

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

STEP #	<p>This procedure will perform configure the CMP at the Active site (CMP Site 1)</p> <p>For additional detail please refer to the following (as per the reference section in this document).</p> <p>Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide Release 12.2</p> <p>Note: The recommended sequence of creating the Policy Management topology is as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Configure the primary CMP cluster — You start to build a topology by logging in to the active CMP server at the primary site. Configure the CMP cluster settings. The settings are replicated (pushed) to the standby CMP server. Together, the two servers form a primary, or Site 1, CMP cluster. This will be the primary CMP site for the whole topology network. The primary site cannot be deleted from the topology. 2. Configure the secondary CMP cluster (optional) — Use the primary CMP cluster to configure a secondary, or Site 2, CMP cluster. A secondary CMP cluster can provide geo-redundancy. 3. Configure MPE, MA and BOD clusters — Enter MPE, MA and BOD clusters settings on the active CMP server on the primary site. 4. For geo-redundancy (optional), configure additional sites for MPE-S and BOD clusters. <p>IMPORTANT:</p> <p>In a deployment that has Geo-Site CMP servers, these Geo-site CMP servers DO NOT get configured with this procedure. Instead, the Active site CMPs are configured with this procedure, and are designated as “CMP Site 1”. The other pair of CMPs will be added to the network Topology from the CMP Site 1 GUI. The CMP Site 1 cluster will push the configuration to the Geo-Site CMPs at a later step in these procedures.</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OAM VIP — IP address and netmask for the cluster VIP address on the OAM network. • Hostname — The names you choose for each server in the cluster. • Signaling VIPs (optional) — Up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and netmasks of the signaling VIP addresses. For each, select None, SIG-A, SIG-B to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. If you specify either SIG-A, SIG-B, you must enter a Signaling VIP value. • The admin password (cmp_password) you previously defined. • Cluster Name — The name you choose for the CMP cluster (the default is CMP Site 1 Cluster). • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select Oracle X5-2, or Netra hardware, VLANs are required. For HP RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • Network VLAN IDs — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. • SNMP configuration (optional)— snmp_sys_location (the enclosure name), snmp_community_string (the community string), and snmp_trap_destination (the trap destination), which you previously defined. • Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>
---------------	---

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>View Topology Settings</p>	<p>Select: Menu -> Platform Settings -> Topology Settings ->all clusters The initial form will open, and display a message that initial configuration detected and CMP Site 1 Cluster should be added.</p> 
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Add CMP Site 1 Cluster – Server A</p>	<p>Select the button to Add CMP Site 1 Cluster. The Topology Configuration form is displayed.</p> <p>In this form, the CMP cluster can be given a name, and certain characteristics of the cluster are defined.</p> <p>This form will define a VIP address to be assigned to the active server in the cluster.</p> <p>Note: The HW-Type will determine whether VLANs are required. For Oracle X5-2 and Netra options VLANs are used. The VLANs will have been designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. They should be used here as well.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP RMS Hardware (HP DL360 G6/G7 and HP G8/G9 RMS)-Types do not require VLANs. • Oracle RMS-Type do require VLANs. <p>This is an example of the form for an HP RMS HW Type</p> 

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

Complete the form for Cluster Settings and Server-A. The information below should be reviewed to determine the appropriate selections

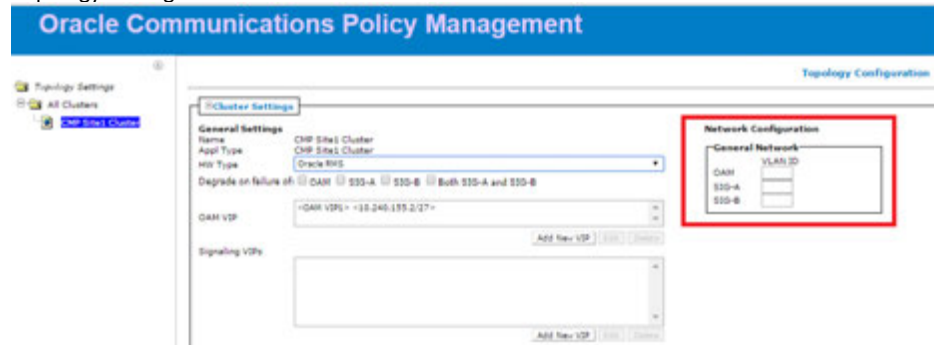
— *Select the right type hardware*

HW Type — Select the type of hardware:

- **HP ProLiant DL360G6/G7** (for a HP DL360 Gen 6 and Gen7 servers)
- **HP ProLiant G8/G9 RMS** (for HP Gen 8 and Gen 8 servers)
- **Oracle RMS** (for a Oracle X5-2 and NETRA servers)
- **VM** (for a virtual machine) Not covered in this guide – refer to Install guide for virtual environment

— *Complete Network Configuration VLAN IDs per network design if applicable.*

In case hardware used is Oracle RMS you will have the option to configure VLAN IDs in Topology Settings as shown below:



— *Complete the OAM VIP*

OAM VIP (required) — The OAM VIP is the IP address the CMP uses to communicate with a Policy Management cluster. Enter up to two OAM VIP addresses (one IPv4 and one IPv6) and their masks. Enter the address in the standard dot format and the subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0–32 (IPv4), or standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format and the subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0–128 (IPv6).

— *Complete Signaling VIP if applicable*

Signaling VIP 1 through **Signaling VIP 4** (optional) — Enter up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and masks of the signaling virtual IP (VIP) addresses; for each, select **None**, **SIG-A**, or **SIG-B** to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. You must enter a Signaling VIP value if you specify either SIG-A or SIG-B. If you enter an IPv4 address, use the standard dot format, and enter the subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0–32. If you enter an IPv6 address, use the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format, and enter the subnet mask in CIDR notation from 0–128.

Note: predefined for the first Site 1 CMP Cluster configuration, no input necessary.

— *Complete Server-A IP*

The IP address of the server. Up to two IP addresses can be entered (one IPv4 and one IPv6). Use the standard dot-formatted IP address string for an IPv4 address, and the standard 8-part colon-separated hexadecimal string format for an IPv6 address.

Server-A Hostname — hostname for the first server (predefined, no input).

— *Checkbox for IP Preference*

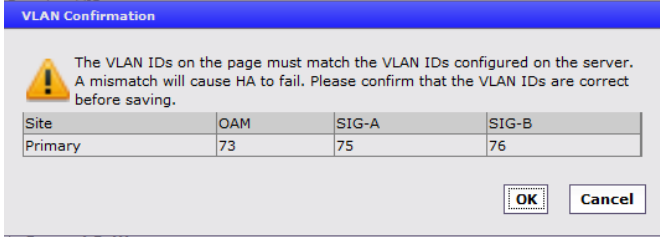
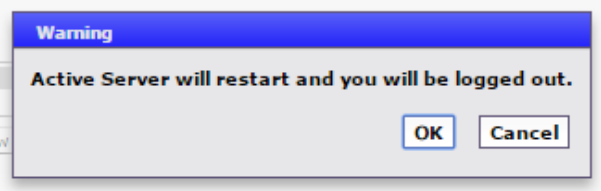

Specify the preferred IP version, either **IPv4** or **IPv6**. If IPv6 is selected, the server will prefer to use the IPv6 address for communication. If neither an IPv6 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, the IPv6 radio button cannot be selected here. Similarly, if neither an IPv4 OAM IP nor a static IP address is defined, the IPv4 radio button isn't accessible.

— *Complete HostName*

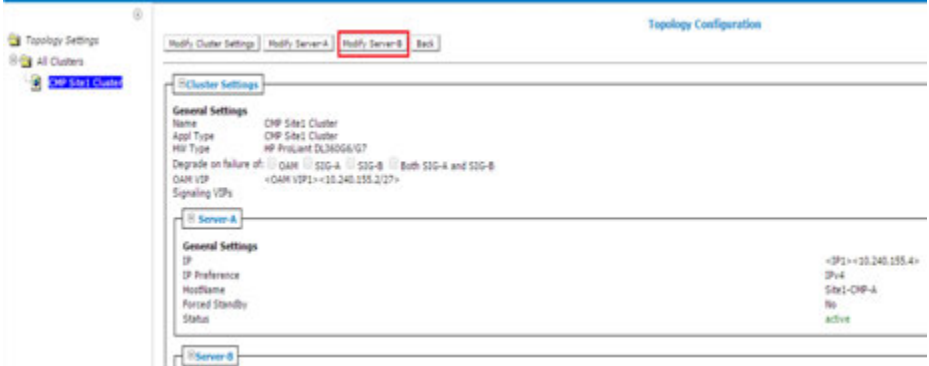
The name of the server. This must exactly match the host name provisioned for this server (that is, the output of the Linux command **uname -n**)

Note: If the server has a configured server IP address, highlight or select the ip address and

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

		<p>then you can click Load to retrieve the remote server host name. If retrieval fails, you must enter the host name. This is the preferred method of datafilling the hostname to avoid errors. If the target server IP address is unreachable the host name will not be fetched and network connectivity should be checked.</p> <p>When done, save the form and select OK.</p> <p>If the configuration is for Oracle RMS and contains VLAN IDs you will be prompted to confirm the VLAN IDs.</p>  <p>Then the following confirmation prompt appears. Click <OK></p>  <p>At this point, you will be logged out of CMP GUI as OAM VIP should be used from this step and on.</p>
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>Login using the CMP cluster VIP.</p>	<p>After the Topology Configuration is saved, the CMP VIP address will be taken by the Active CMP server of the cluster. This may take a minute.</p> <p>Login to the CMP GUI using the VIP address, then navigate to Platform Settings -> Topology Settings -> all clusters -> CMP Site1 Cluster</p>  <p>Verify the configured CMP server is now in “Active” state</p>
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>IF the CMP VIP is not available...</p>	<p>SSH to the CMP Real IP address of the CMP server as admusr then switch to root user to confirm the server role is “active” as shown below</p> <pre># ha.mystate</pre>

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

		<pre>login as: admusr Using keyboard-interactive authentication. Password: Last login: Fri Dec 9 11:51:22 2016 from 10.154.153.169 [admusr@Site1-CMP-A ~]\$ sudo su - root [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]# ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Active A2020.228 0 1209:111746.422 VIP Active A2020.228 0 1209:111746.423 QP Active A2020.228 0 1209:111749.532 DbReplication_old OOS A2020.228 0 1209:111733.886 [root@Site1-CMP-A ~]#</pre> <p>NOTE: “DbReplication_old” with role “OOS” is not an indication of a problem and can be ignored.</p> <p>It is still possible to login to the CMP server with its Real IP address, if needed, to verify that the Topology Configuration was done correctly.</p>
<p>5.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Modify CMP Site 1 Cluster – add Server B</p>	<p><i>If second CMP server (for redundancy in an HA cluster) will be used, then Server-B needs to be added to the CMP Site 1 Cluster. The next three steps do this.</i></p> <p>Select: Menu -> Platform Settings -> Topology Settings Select View for CMP Site 1 Cluster Select Modify Server B</p>  <p>Enter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Server-B IP — OAM Real IP address for the second server. Server-B Hostname — hostname for the second server. This hostname must exactly match the hostname configured in platcfg (same as uname -n). Alternatively, you may highlight the server IP then press the “Load” button for the system to automatically look up the server name from initial configuration <p>Note: The “load” option should be used to correctly populate the Hostname. If the server B IP address is reachable “load” will automatically pick up the correct hostname from the target server.</p> <p>Example of Site1 CMP Cluster Server B Topology Configuration</p>

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

		<div> </div> <p>Save Cancel</p> <p>Note: the Forced Standby checkbox is checked by default</p> <p>Select "save" then "OK" on the following confirmation message.</p> <div> </div> <p>The server status will be "out-of-service" for few minutes and that is expected until the cluster forms then it will get to "standby" state:</p> <div> </div> <p>Note: Wait for any Alarms, such as the following, to clear.</p> <div> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>31282</td> <td>The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault</td> </tr> </table> </div>	31282	The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault
31282	The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault			
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>CMP GUI: Remove Force Standby on Server B</p>	<p>Click Modify Server-B button and uncheck Force Standby, then click Save when finished and "OK" to the following confirmation message:</p>		

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

Verify status becomes:

- Forced Standby = no
- Status = Standby

7. CMP GUI: Verify CMP cluster



SYSTEM ADMINISTRATION → Reports

Verify both CMP servers are present, with one “Active” and the other in “standby” status and also the status of the cluster is “On-line”:

IP	State	Blade Failures	Overall	Uptime
10.240.155.4 (Server-A)	Active	3		3 days 8 hours 35 mins 54 secs
10.240.155.3 (Server-B)	Standby	3		3 days 4 hours 57 mins 24 secs

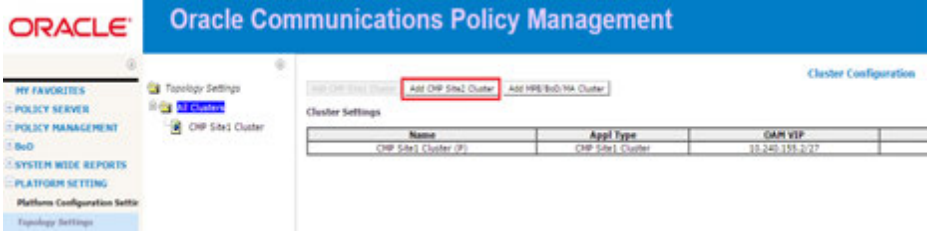
8. GUI: Verify CMP cluster



SYSTEM WIDE REPORTS → Active Alarms

Verify that there are no active alarms on CMP(s).

7.3: CMP Site1 Cluster Configuration

<p>9.</p>	<p>Server: Verify the server role</p>	<p>Use the following Server-B real IP address and SSH to the just configured Server-B. Use the ha.mystate command to verify that the server role is Stby as shown below:</p> <pre># ha.mystate</pre> <pre>[admusr@Site1-CMP-B ~]\$ sudo su - root [root@Site1-CMP-B ~]# ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Stby A2020.246 0 1209:145646.474 VIP A2020.246 0 1209:145646.475 QP A2020.246 0 1209:145646.476 DbReplication_old OOS A2020.246 0 1209:145603.183 [root@Site1-CMP-B ~]#</pre> <p>NOTE: "DbReplication_old" with role "OOS" is not an indication of a problem and can be ignored.</p>						
<p>10.</p>	<p>CMP GUI: Configure a secondary site CMP cluster</p>	<p>Follow the same steps in this procedure to add secondary site CMP cluster if it is part of the Cable Policy deployment:</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Appl Type</th> <th>CMR VIP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster (P)</td> <td>CMP Site1 Cluster</td> <td>10.245.155.2/27</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Appl Type	CMR VIP	CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.245.155.2/27
Name	Appl Type	CMR VIP						
CMP Site1 Cluster (P)	CMP Site1 Cluster	10.245.155.2/27						
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>								


7.4 CONFIGURING ADDITIONAL CLUSTERS

This procedure will configure the management relationships between the Active site CMP cluster and the remaining policy components of the Cable Policy deployment like MPE-Rs, MPE-Ses, MAs and BODs. After this, the status of the servers will be available from the CMP GUI.

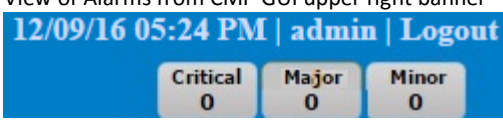
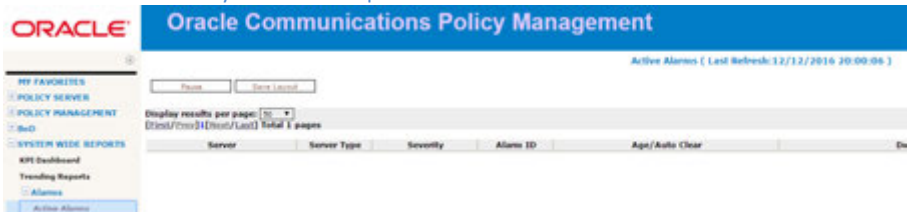
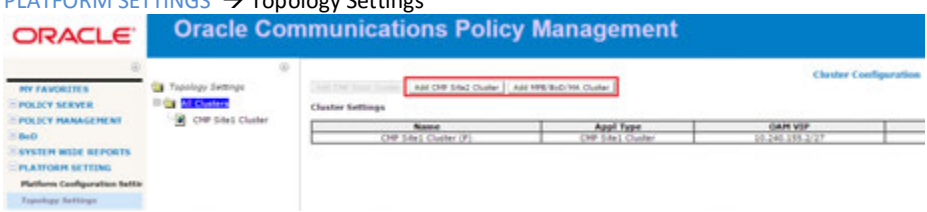
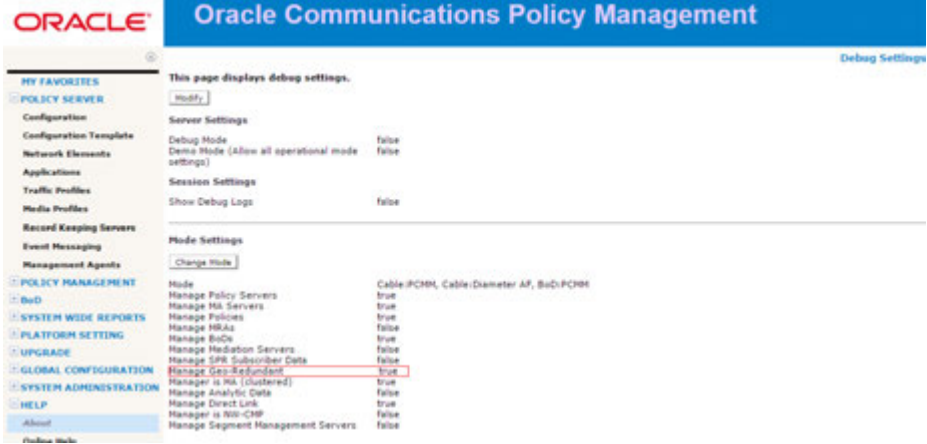
It is allowed to perform a Topology Configuration for clusters at remote sites, even if those sites are not fully networked or configured. The CMP will report Alarms in this case, and will continue to try to establish the management services to the clusters until it is able to reach them. When the clusters become available, the CMP will update status and the Alarms will clear.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

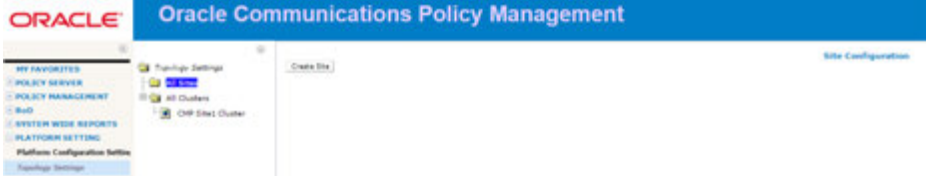
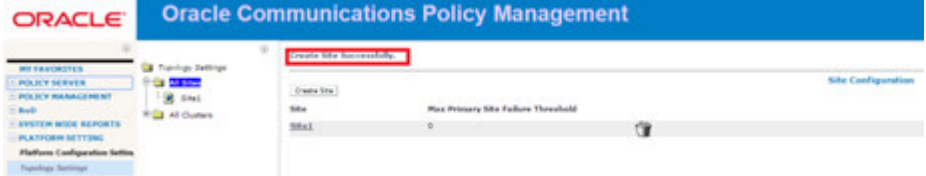
7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will configure the management relationships between the CMPs and the other servers (MPes/MAs/BODs), and the cluster assignments. After this, the status of the servers will be available from the CMP GUI.</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Certain IP network services must be allowed between the CMP Site 1 cluster and the other clusters in the network, in order for the full management relationships to be established. Incorrectly configured Firewalls in the network can cause the Management relations to fail, and Alarms to be raised at the CMP.</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - The server software is installed on all servers in the target cluster - The servers have been configured with network time protocol (NTP), domain name server (DNS), IP Routing, and OAM IP addresses <p>To complete this procedure, you need the following primary site settings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Site Name • HW Type — Determines whether VLANs are required. If you select Oracle X5-2 or NETRA hardware, VLANs are required. For RMS hardware, VLANs are not required. • OAM VIP (optional) — The IP address and netmask a CMP cluster uses to communicate with an MPE or MA or BOD cluster. • Signaling VIPs (required) — The IP address a policy charging and enforcement function (PCEF) uses to communicate with a cluster. At least one signaling VIP is required. Define up to four IPv4 or IPv6 addresses and netmasks of the signaling VIP addresses. For each, select None, SIG-A, SIG-B, or SIG-C to indicate whether the cluster will use an external signaling network. You must enter a Signaling VIP value if you specify either SIG-A, SIG-B. • Network VLAN IDs — The values designated during the Initial Configuration done with placfg. • If you are configuring a Geo-Redundant (Site 2) CMP cluster, the information that you previously configured for the CMP Site 1 cluster (the default cluster name is CMP Site 2 Cluster). <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Login to CMP Server GUIs (using VIP)</p>	<p>From Browser, enter CMP Server VIP in Navigation string.</p>  <p>Login as admin (or a user with admin privileges)</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>View Active Alarms</p>	<p>It is recommended to View the Active Alarms in the system before performing Configuration work. Check Alarm information and determine if any Alarms present may affect configuration activities.</p>


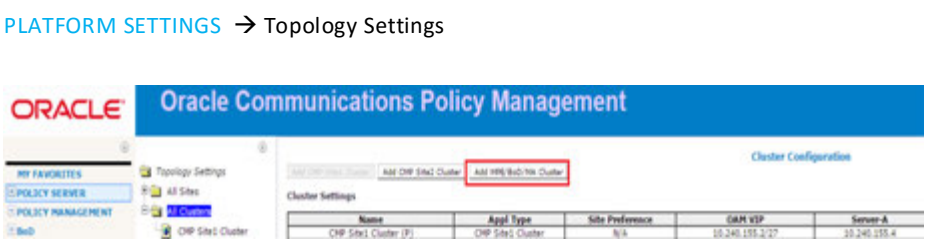
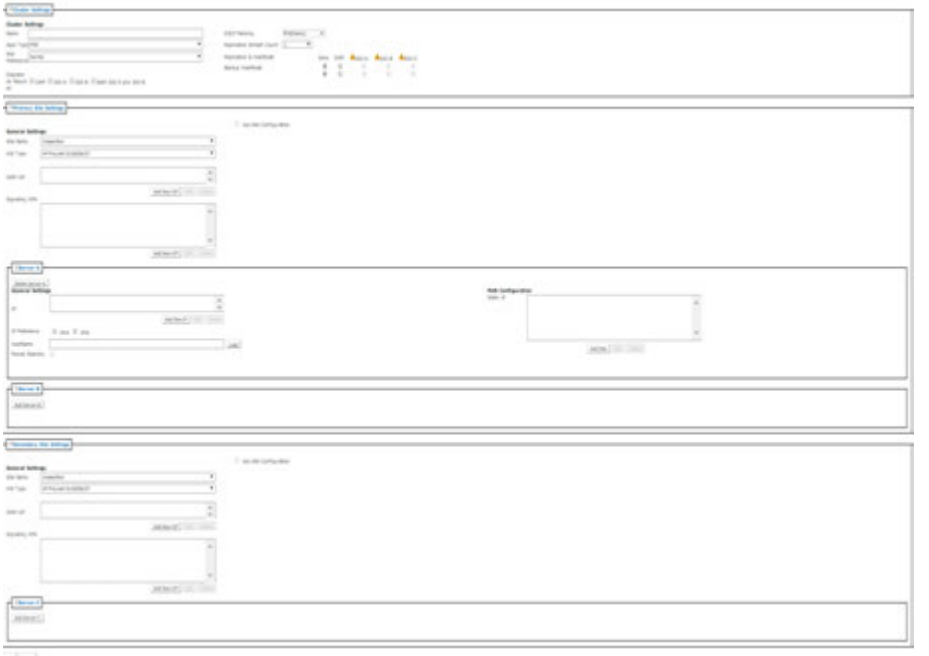
7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

		<p>View of Alarms from CMP GUI upper right banner</p>  <p>View of Alarms from System Wide Reports -> Active Alarms</p>  <p>IMPORTANT: In Policy 12.2, there is Online help provided for Alarm descriptions. In the Alarm views, click on the alarm Id to open the Alarm description help page. Alternatively, from the Menu select On-Line Help, and select Troubleshooting Guide. Search this for the Alarm Id.</p>
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>View Topology Settings</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p>  <p>The Topology Settings screen allows for the selection of adding a CMP Site2 or adding an MPE/BoD/MA Cluster.</p> <p>For a Secondary site CMP Cluster select :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add CMP Site 2 Cluster <p>For a MPE or BoD or MA cluster select:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add MPE/BoD/MA Cluster <p>Note: For a Geo-Redundant BoD/MPE cluster the option “Manage Geo-Redundant” will need to have been selected in the Initial CMP mode Configuration.</p> 
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Add SITE 2 CMP Cluster- Server-A</p>	<p>Adding a CMP Site2 CMP cluster is optional. If the Policy Management Solution design calls for “Geo-Redundant” CMP clusters, the “Site 2 CMP Cluster” must be configured from CMP Site1 Cluster GUI.</p>

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

		<p>Select “Add CMP site2 cluster” and datafill the CMP Site2 Cluster form.</p> <p>Note: The fields that need to be datafilled in this form are the same as the CMP Site1 Cluster.</p>
<p>5.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px 0;"></div>	<p>Create and name Site-1 and Site-2</p> <p>NOTE: This step is to be done once only.</p>	<p>MPE-S and BOD clusters can be dispersed between a primary site and a secondary site. This provides Geo-Redundancy for the MPE-S/BOD clusters where Server-A and Server-B form an HA Cluster at the Primary Site and Server-C provides a backup server at a secondary site.</p> <p>Note: For a Geo-Redundant MPE/BOD cluster the option “Manage Geo-Redundant” will need to have been selected in the Initial Mode Configuration of CMP GUI as shown in step 2 of Procedure 26 above</p> <p>This step will create two separate sites into which MPE and MRA clusters can be added.</p> <p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that “All Sites” configuration option is available <p>Note: “Manage Geo-Redundant” should be selected in the CMP GUI Initial Configuration form. If Sites is not visible go back and make this change now.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Click on ‘Create Site’ to create a new site name i.e. < Site-1> • Click on ‘Create Site’ to create a new second site i.e.< Site2> • Name each additional site accordingly and save the configuration. <p>Note: If the hardware being used required VLANs you will need to configure VLANs in the Add SITE form as well</p>  <p>CMP will display message that site is successfully created and you can now see the newly created site displayed under site configurations:</p> <p>After configuring all sites in CMP , they would now be viewed in the Topology. MPE-S and BoD clusters will be added to these sites at the time the topology for these servers are created.</p>

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

		 <p>Note: “CMPSite1” and “CMPSite2” are reserved site names for CMP Clusters so they can not be used as valid names when configuring sites in the topology. CMP GUI also prohibit users of using these names in configuring new sites.</p>
<p>6.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Add MPE/BoD/MA Cluster</p>	<p>PLATFORM SETTINGS → Topology Settings</p>  <p>Click on <Add MPE/BoD/MA Cluster>. In the Topology Configuration form, enter the information for this cluster.</p>  <p>It is allowed to add both Server-A, Server-B and Server-C in this form at the same time</p> <p>Note: These settings are only an example of a likely configuration. An actual deployment will be specific to customer requirements.</p> <p><u>Define the Cluster Settings</u></p>

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

		<p>a) Name (required) — Name of the cluster. Enter up to 250 characters, excluding quotation marks(") and commas (,).</p> <p>b) Appl Type — Select the type of server: MPE (default) or BOD or MA</p> <p>c) Site Preference – NORMAL</p> <p>DSCP Marking = NONE Replication Stream Count = 1 through 8 Replication and Heartbeat = REP Backup Heartbeat = OAM</p> <p><u>Define the Primary Site Settings</u></p> <p>Site Name —Here the added server can be associated with a previously configured site in the drop down tab if this will be Geo-Redundant topology</p> <p>HW Type — Select the type of hardware:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP ProLiant DL360G6/G7 (default) • Oracle RMS (for a Oracle X5-2 and Netra server) • HP ProLiant G8/G9 RMS • VM (for a virtual machine) Not covered in this guide • VM Automated Not covered in this guide <p>OAM VIP — The OAM VIP is not typically used for the MRAs or the MPEs. The Real IP address is used by the CMP to communicate with the MPE or MRA cluster.</p> <p>Signaling VIPs (required) — The signaling VIP is the IP address a PCEF device uses to communicate with a cluster. Click Add New VIP to add a VIP to the system. A cluster supports the following redundant communication channels for carriers that use redundant signaling channels.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SIG-A • SIG-B • SIG-C – NOT supported in Cable mode <p>At least one signaling VIP is required.</p> <p>Define the general network configuration for Netra servers in the Network Configuration section of the page. This section is not available for RMS.</p> <p>a) Enter the VLAN IDs, in the range 1–4095 for the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Define the settings for Server-A in the Server-A section of the page. 2. Define the settings for Server-B in the Server-B section of the page. 3. Define the settings for Server-C in the Server-C section of the page. <p>Note: If the cluster is not a Geo-Redundant topology Server-C is not required</p> <p>Example of an MPE-R Cluster configuration on HP RMS HW</p>
--	--	--

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

Topology Configuration

Cluster Settings

<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Name</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">MPE-S</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">App Type</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">MPE</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Site</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Normal</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Preference</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2" style="font-size: x-small; padding-top: 5px;"> Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B </td></tr> </table>	Name	MPE-S	App Type	MPE	Site	Normal	Preference		Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B		<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">DSCP Marking</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">PBE/Normal</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Application Stream Count</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">1</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Application & Heartbeat</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Backup Heartbeat</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> </table>	DSCP Marking	PBE/Normal	Application Stream Count	1	Application & Heartbeat	None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C	Backup Heartbeat	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Name	MPE-S																		
App Type	MPE																		
Site	Normal																		
Preference																			
Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B																			
DSCP Marking	PBE/Normal																		
Application Stream Count	1																		
Application & Heartbeat	None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C																		
Backup Heartbeat	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>																		

Primary Site Settings

Use Site Configuration

General Settings	
Site Name	DPS142
H/W Type	HP P-Blade DL380G6 DT
Data VSP	-GAB VSP--(10.240.135.7/24)
Add New VSP <input type="button" value="..."/>	
Signaling VSPs	-Signaling VSP--(10.236.168.0/24)--SSD-A-
Add New VSP <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Server A

Data Server A	
General Settings	
IP	10.240.135.101
Add New IP <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	
IP Preference	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Sh-A <input type="radio"/> Sh-B
Host Name	MPE-S-A
Format Standby	
Add New <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Path Configuration

Server B

Data Server B	
General Settings	
IP	10.240.135.102
Add New IP <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	
IP Preference	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Sh-A <input type="radio"/> Sh-B
Host Name	MPE-S-B
Format Standby	
Add New <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Path Configuration

Example of an MPE-S cluster configuration on HP RMS H/W

Cluster Settings

<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Name</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">BOD-S</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">App Type</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">BOD</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Site</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">Normal</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Preference</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"></td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2" style="font-size: x-small; padding-top: 5px;"> Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B </td></tr> </table>	Name	BOD-S	App Type	BOD	Site	Normal	Preference		Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B		<table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">DSCP Marking</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">PBE/Normal</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Application Stream Count</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">1</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Application & Heartbeat</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;">None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C</td></tr> <tr><td style="font-size: x-small;">Backup Heartbeat</td><td style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></td></tr> </table>	DSCP Marking	PBE/Normal	Application Stream Count	1	Application & Heartbeat	None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C	Backup Heartbeat	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Name	BOD-S																		
App Type	BOD																		
Site	Normal																		
Preference																			
Deploy on failure: <input type="checkbox"/> Data <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input type="checkbox"/> Both SSD-A and SSD-B																			
DSCP Marking	PBE/Normal																		
Application Stream Count	1																		
Application & Heartbeat	None <input type="checkbox"/> GAB <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-A <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-B <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> SSD-C																		
Backup Heartbeat	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>																		

Primary Site Settings

Use Site Configuration

General Settings	
Site Name	DPS142
H/W Type	HP P-Blade DL380G6 DT
Data VSP	-GAB VSP--(10.240.135.7/24)
Add New VSP <input type="button" value="..."/>	
Signaling VSPs	-Signaling VSP--(10.236.168.0/24)--SSD-A-
Add New VSP <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Server A

Data Server A	
General Settings	
IP	10.240.135.101
Add New IP <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	
IP Preference	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Sh-A <input type="radio"/> Sh-B
Host Name	MPE-S-A
Format Standby	
Add New <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Path Configuration

Server B

Data Server B	
General Settings	
IP	10.240.135.102
Add New IP <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	
IP Preference	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Sh-A <input type="radio"/> Sh-B
Host Name	MPE-S-B
Format Standby	
Add New <input type="button" value="..."/> Edit <input type="button" value="..."/> Delete <input type="button" value="..."/>	

Path Configuration

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

The screenshot displays the 'Topology Configuration' web interface. It is divided into several sections:

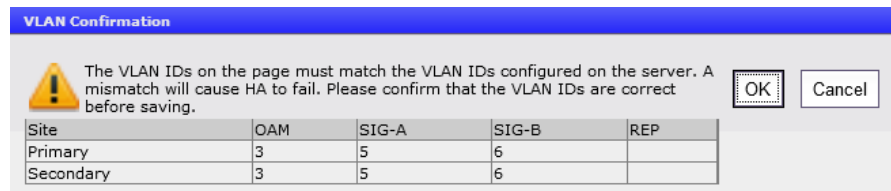
- Cluster Settings:** Includes fields for Name, Appl Type, Site Preference, and Degrade on failure. It also features a 'DSCP Marking' dropdown, 'Replication Stream Count', and 'Backup HeartBeat' options.
- Primary Site Settings:** Contains 'General Settings' with fields for Site Name, HW Type, DAM VPs, and Signaling VPs. There is a 'Use Site Configuration' checkbox.
- Server A and Server B:** Each server configuration includes 'General Settings' with fields for IP, IP Preference, HostName, and Forced Standby. A 'Path Configuration' section is also present for each server.

Below the screenshot, the text reads: "Example of an MA cluster configuration on HP RMS H/W".


At the bottom of the screenshot, the text reads: "<Save> the topology configuration".

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

Confirm the VLAN configuration if the hardware type and network architecture uses VLANs:

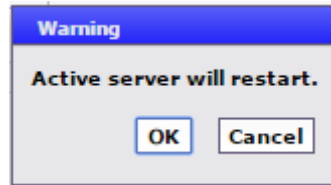


VLAN Confirmation

 The VLAN IDs on the page must match the VLAN IDs configured on the server. A mismatch will cause HA to fail. Please confirm that the VLAN IDs are correct before saving.

Site	OAM	SIG-A	SIG-B	REP
Primary	3	5	6	
Secondary	3	5	6	

Click <OK> to confirm



Warning

Active server will restart.

If clusters has been added succesfully it will now be visible on the Cluster Configuration page.



Cluster Configuration

Name	App Type	Site Threshold	OMP IP	Sensor A	Sensor B	Sensor C	Operation
BOD	BOD	Normal	10.246.25.117 (1)	10.246.25.2	10.246.25.2	NA	Site Status
OMP Site Cluster 1	OMP Site Cluster	NA	10.246.25.117	10.246.25.4	10.246.25.3	NA	Site Status
MPE-R	MPE	Normal	10.246.25.117 (1)	10.246.25.3	10.246.25.4	NA	Site Status
MPE-S	MPE	Normal	10.246.25.117 (1)	10.246.25.3	10.246.25.3	NA	Site Status

Note: Initially several alarms will be generated. Wait for all the alarms to clear - then refresh the view of the topology screen to confirm that the newly added BOD/MA/MPE-R/MPE-S now shows an “active” and a “standby” status for Server-A and Server-B. If there was a Server-C added to the MPE-S and/or BOD clusters topology check that server-C status shows “spare”.

Note: CMP clusters are associated with <CMP Site 1 cluster > and <CMP Site 2 Cluster> upon creation. Only the MPE-S and BOD are associated directly to the configured sites populated under “All Sites”.



Site Configuration

Create Site

Site	Max Primary Site Failure Threshold
OMP Site 1	0
Site 2	0

Note: If the topology configuration is performed at a time when there is no network connectivity between the CMP and the other policy components servers (MPE/BOD/MA) being added to the topology, the status of these newly added servers will show as “offline” and alarms will be generated due the offline state. These alarms will persist until such time as the servers become reachable from the CMP. The CMP will continually retry connecting to the servers that have been newly added in the topology. When the new servers are reachable, the topology configuration will complete and any alarms present due to the topology configuration will resolve/clear. In this scenario, return to the CMP topology settings when connectivity is established between the CMP and the newly added servers and confirm there are no alarms and the status of the added servers are correct.

7.4: Configuring Additional Clusters

7. <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat the previous step for additional clusters	A list of Clusters to be configured can be added to this step as a reminder.
8. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Topology	<p>Select: Menu -> Topology Settings → View Cluster</p> <p>The status of each cluster can be viewed from this form. Normal condition will be Active/Standby (and not Forced Standby) and Spare.</p>
9. <input type="checkbox"/>	Verify Alarms	<p>If there are problems with the Management relationships between the CMP and the servers, there will be alarms reported.</p> <p>Verify that Alarms do not indicate problems.</p>
10. <input type="checkbox"/>	If the CMP will manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.	<p><i>If the CMP will Manage Remote sites, and these are not yet available.</i></p> <p><i>a) Configure these clusters, but Return to the Verify Steps above after the connectivity has been established.</i></p> <p><i>-- OR --</i></p> <p><i>b) Configure these clusters at a later time when the connectivity is established.</i></p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

7.5 PERFORMING SSH KEY EXCHANGES

You must exchange SSH keys between the CMP, MPE-R, MPE-S, BoD, MA servers. Perform this procedure whenever you add additional servers to the Policy Management topology. You can execute the command multiple times, even if keys were previously exchanged

Note: After the topology is set up and SSH keys are exchanged, it is possible that a server in the topology changes its keys. This happens when:

- A new server is added to the topology
- A server is re-installed
- A server is replaced by another server
- A server has its SSH keys recreated manually

In any of the above scenarios, reexecute this procedure. The SSH provisioning utility will recheck the existing SSH key exchanges in the entire topology and provision any key exchanges not yet executed. You can execute the command multiple times, even if keys were previously exchanged.

7.5: SSH Performing SSH Key Exchanges

STEP #	<p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CMP Site 1 cluster is configured and GUI available - Before beginning this procedure, the systems that are exchanging keys must be configured and reachable. <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Execute Key Exchanges to all servers</p>	<p>Use SSH to connect to the active server at the CMP Site 1 cluster as the user admusr.</p> <p>Enter the command sudo ha.mystate to determine if the server is the active server in the HA cluster. The following example shows an active server:</p>

7.5: SSH Performing SSH Key Exchanges

		<pre>[admusr@CMP-A ~]\$ sudo ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Active A0120.120 0 0109:192637.717 VIP Active A0120.120 0 0109:192637.719 QP Active A0120.120 0 0109:192640.143 DbReplication old OOS A0120.120 0 0109:191834.248 [admusr@CMP-A ~]\$</pre>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Execute Key Exchanges to all servers</p>	<p>Enter the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --prov</pre> <p>You are prompted: <i>The password of admusr in topology:</i></p> <p>3. Enter the admusr password (admusr_password).</p> <p>The procedure exchanges keys with the rest of the servers in the Policy Management topology. If the key exchange is successful, the procedure displays the message SSH keys are OK. The following example shows a successful key exchange:</p> <p>Enter the Password of admusr</p> <pre>[admusr@Site1-CMP-B ~]\$ cd /opt/camiant/bin [admusr@Site1-CMP-B bin]\$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --prov The password of admusr in topology: Connecting to admusr@MA-B ... Connecting to admusr@Site1-CMP-B ... Connecting to admusr@BOD-B ... Connecting to admusr@MPE-S-B ... Connecting to admusr@MPE-R-B ... Connecting to admusr@MPE-R-A ... Connecting to admusr@MA-A ... Connecting to admusr@MPE-S-A ... Connecting to admusr@Site1-CMP-A ... Connecting to admusr@BOD-A ... [1/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MA-B ... [2/10] Provisioning SSH keys on Site1-CMP-B ... [3/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MPE-R-B ... [4/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MPE-S-B ... [5/10] Provisioning SSH keys on BOD-B ... [6/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MPE-R-A ... [7/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MA-A ... [8/10] Provisioning SSH keys on MPE-S-A ... [9/10] Provisioning SSH keys on BOD-A ... [10/10] Provisioning SSH keys on Site1-CMP-A ... SSH keys are OK. [admusr@Site1-CMP-B bin]\$</pre>
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Ssh to CMP Site 1 active server: Verify Key Exchanges to all servers</p>	<p>Enter the following command to verify that the keys are successfully exchanged:</p> <pre>\$sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --check</pre> <p>You are prompted: The password of admusr in topology:</p> <p>Enter the admusr password (admusr_password).</p> <p>The procedure verifies keys with the rest of the servers in the Policy Management topology and displays the results of each exchange. The following example shows all keys</p>

7.5: SSH Performing SSH Key Exchanges

		<p>have been checked and have been exchanged successfully:</p> <pre>[adminstr@Site1-CMP-B bin]\$ sudo qpSSHKeyProv.pl --check The password of adminstr in topology: Connecting to adminstr@MA-B ... Connecting to adminstr@Site1-CMP-B ... Connecting to adminstr@BOD-B ... Connecting to adminstr@MPE-S-B ... Connecting to adminstr@MPE-R-B ... Connecting to adminstr@MPE-R-A ... Connecting to adminstr@MA-A ... Connecting to adminstr@MPE-S-A ... Connecting to adminstr@Site1-CMP-A ... Connecting to adminstr@BOD-A ... [1/10] Checking SSH keys on MA-B ... [2/10] Checking SSH keys on Site1-CMP-B ... [3/10] Checking SSH keys on MPE-R-B ... [4/10] Checking SSH keys on MPE-S-B ... [5/10] Checking SSH keys on BOD-B ... [6/10] Checking SSH keys on MPE-R-A ... [7/10] Checking SSH keys on MA-A ... [8/10] Checking SSH keys on MPE-S-A ... [9/10] Checking SSH keys on BOD-A ... [10/10] Checking SSH keys on Site1-CMP-A ... SSH keys are OK. [adminstr@Site1-CMP-B bin]\$</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

7.6 CONFIGURE POLICY COMPONENTS


This section will cover procedures to configure the 2 tier MPE to a minimum level to execute a test call. Additional details can be found in the CMP Cable User’s Guide.

[Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

7.6.1 Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

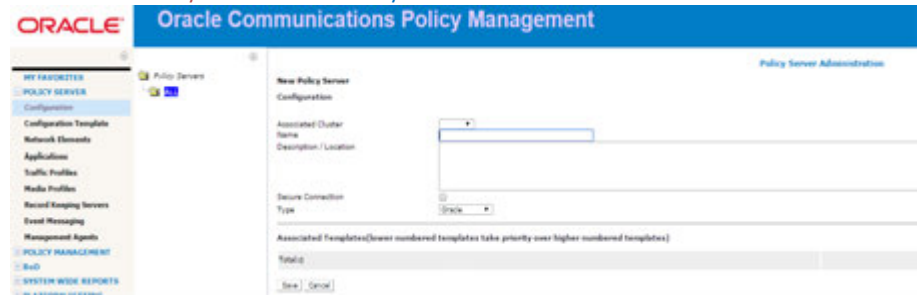
This procedure will configure MPE-R and MPE-S applications.

7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will perform the configuration of MPE-R and MPE-S applications</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - MPE-R and MPE-S clusters have been added to Topology Settings <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; display: inline-block;"></div>	<p>Create MPE-R and MPE-S Policy Servers in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: Policy Server -> Configuration -> Policy Servers</p> 

7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

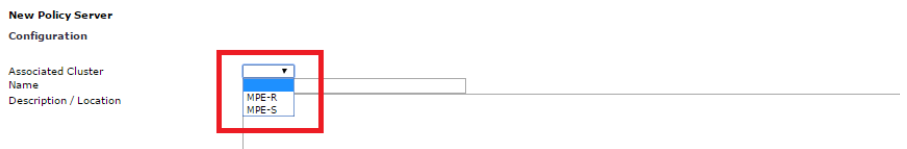
Click “Create Policy Server” in the Policy Server Administration screen:



Enter values for the configuration attributes:

- a) **Associated Cluster** (required) — Select the cluster with which to associate this MPE device.
- b) **Name** — Name of this MPE device. The default is the associated cluster name.
- c) **Description / Location** (optional) — Information that defines the function or location of this MPE device.
- d) **Secure Connection** — Designates whether or not to use the HTTPS protocol for communication (certificates must be configured to use this option) between Policy Management devices. If selected, devices communicate over port 8443.
- e) **Type** — Defines the policy server type:
 - **Oracle** (default) — The policy server is an MPE device and can be fully managed by the CMP.
 - **Unmanaged** — The policy server is not an MPE device and therefore cannot be actively managed by the CMP. This selection is useful when an MPE device is routing traffic to a non-Oracle policy server.

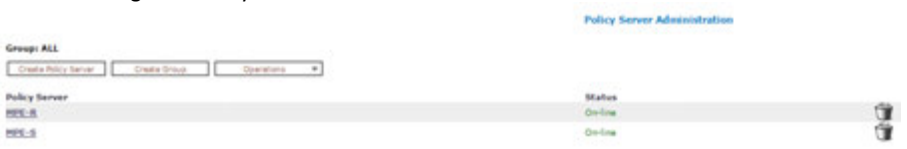
Note: When configuring an “Associated Cluster”, the drop down tab will only be populated with MPE clusters that have been configured in the CMP Topology from previous steps.



Complete the form to configure MPE-R Policy Server then click “Save” and confirm Configured Policy Server status is “On-line”:



In the same fashion, complete the form to configure MPE-S Policy Server then “Save” and confirm Configured Policy Server status is “On-line”:

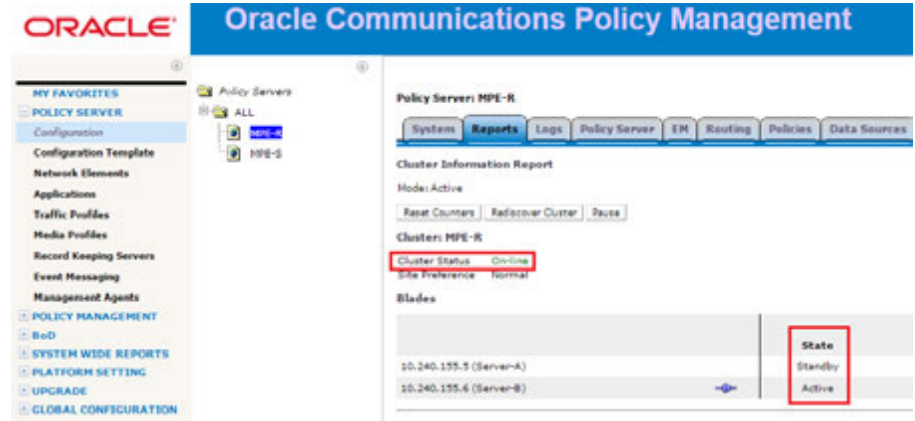


7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

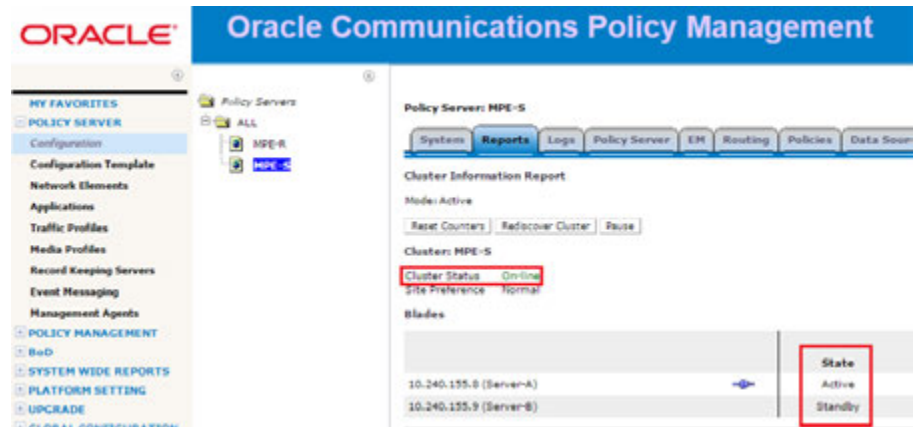
2. Check added MPE-R/S clusters in Reports tab

Select: **Policy Server -> Configuration -> Configured MPE-R/S -> Reports tab**

MPE-R:



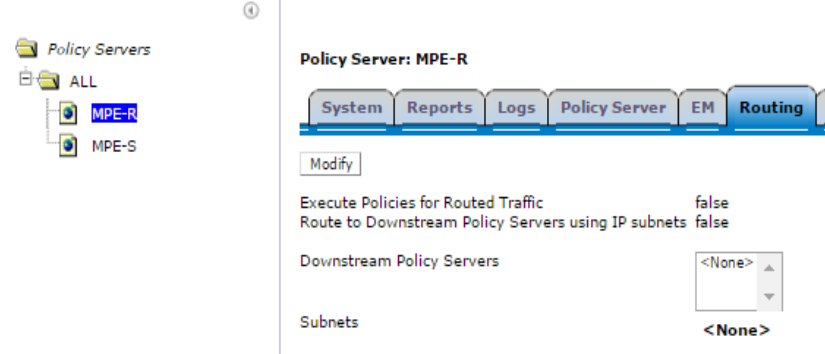
MPE-S:



Validate that cluster status is **On-line** and that Servers assume the Active and Standby roles.

3. Routing configurations for the 2 tier MPE Policy Servers

Select: **Policy Server -> Configuration -> MPE-R -> Routing tab**



Click "Modify" then set "Route to Downstream Policy" to "True" and choose the MPE-S configured Policy Server that will MPE-R will route messages to:

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

The screenshot shows the Oracle Communications Policy Manager interface. On the left, a tree view under 'Policy Servers' shows 'ALL', 'MPE-R', and 'MPE-S'. The main panel is titled 'Policy Server: MPE-R' and has tabs for 'System', 'Reports', 'Logs', 'Policy Server', 'EM', 'Routing', and 'Policies'. The 'Routing' tab is active, showing 'Modify Routing Configuration' with radio buttons for 'Execute Policies for Routed Traffic' (true), 'Route to Downstream Policy Servers using IP subnets' (true), and 'Downstream Policy Servers' (MPE-S). 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

Click "Save":

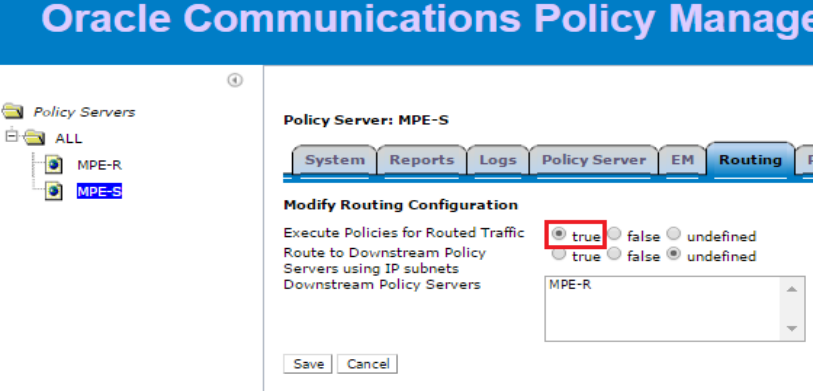

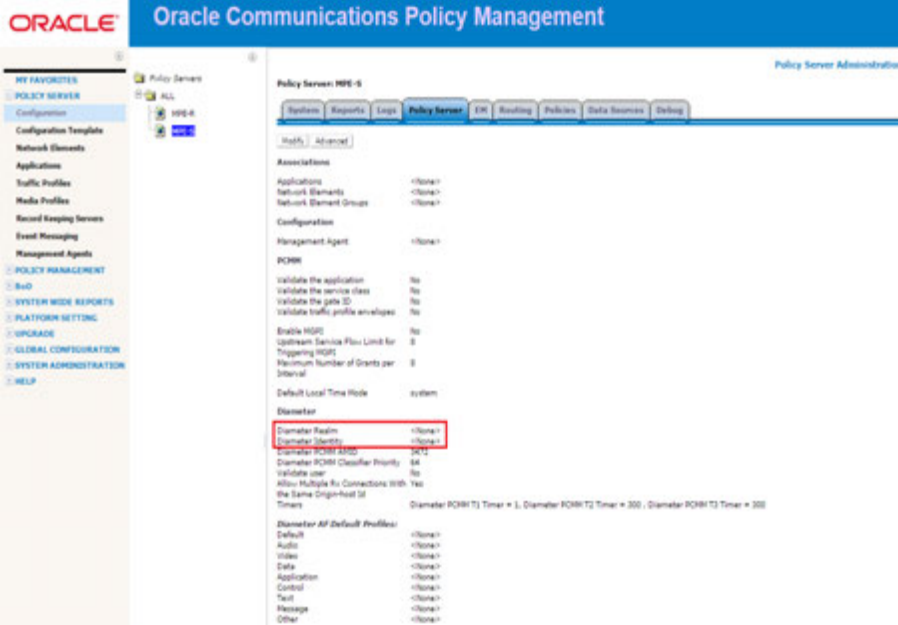
The screenshot shows the Oracle Communications Policy Manager interface. On the left, a tree view under 'Policy Servers' shows 'ALL', 'MPE-R', and 'MPE-S'. The main panel is titled 'Policy Server: MPE-R' and has tabs for 'System', 'Reports', 'Logs', 'Policy Server', 'EM', 'Routing', and 'Policies'. The 'Routing' tab is active, showing 'Modify Routing Configuration' with radio buttons for 'Execute Policies for Routed Traffic' (false), 'Route to Downstream Policy Servers using IP subnets' (true), and 'Downstream Policy Servers' (MPE-S). 'Subnets' is set to '<None>'. A 'Modify' button is at the top left of the configuration area.

Select: Policy Server -> Configuration -> MPE-S -> Routing tab

The screenshot shows the Oracle Communications Policy Manager interface. On the left, a tree view under 'Policy Servers' shows 'ALL', 'MPE-R', and 'MPE-S'. The main panel is titled 'Policy Server: MPE-S' and has tabs for 'System', 'Reports', 'Logs', 'Policy Server', 'EM', 'Routing', and 'Policies'. The 'Routing' tab is active, showing 'Modify Routing Configuration' with radio buttons for 'Execute Policies for Routed Traffic' (false), 'Route to Downstream Policy Servers using IP subnets' (false), and 'Downstream Policy Servers' (<None>). 'Subnets' is set to '<None>'. A 'Modify' button is at the top left of the configuration area.

Click "Modify" then set "Execute Policies for Routed Traffic" to "True":

7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

		 <p>Oracle Communications Policy Management</p> <p>Policy Servers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ALL MPE-R MPE-S <p>Policy Server: MPE-S</p> <p>System Reports Logs Policy Server EM Routing</p> <p>Modify Routing Configuration</p> <p>Execute Policies for Routed Traffic <input checked="" type="radio"/> true <input type="radio"/> false <input type="radio"/> undefined</p> <p>Route to Downstream Policy Servers using IP subnets <input type="radio"/> true <input type="radio"/> false <input checked="" type="radio"/> undefined</p> <p>Downstream Policy Servers</p> <p>MPE-R</p> <p>Save Cancel</p>
<p>4.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Diameter configurations for MPE-S</p>	<p>Click "Save":</p>  <p>Oracle Communications Policy Management</p> <p>Policy Servers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ALL MPE-R MPE-S <p>Policy Server: MPE-S</p> <p>System Reports Logs Policy Server EM Routing</p> <p>Modify</p> <p>The configuration was applied successfully.</p> <p>Execute Policies for Routed Traffic true</p> <p>Route to Downstream Policy Servers using IP subnets false</p> <p>Downstream Policy Servers <None></p> <p>Subnets <None></p> <p>Select: Policy Server -> Configuration -> MPE -> Policy Server tab</p> <p>There are many configurations on Policy Server tab of a newly associated MPE. The most important is to define Diameter Realm and identity to allow diameter connections.</p>  <p>ORACLE Oracle Communications Policy Management</p> <p>Policy Server Administration</p> <p>Policy Server: MPE-S</p> <p>System Reports Logs Policy Server EM Routing Policies Data Services Debug</p> <p>Modify Advanced</p> <p>Associations</p> <p>Applications <None></p> <p>Network Elements <None></p> <p>Network Element Group <None></p> <p>Configuration</p> <p>Management Agent <None></p> <p>PCRM</p> <p>Validate the application No</p> <p>Validate the service class No</p> <p>Validate the policy ID No</p> <p>Validate traffic profile envelopes No</p> <p>Enable WSP No</p> <p>Upstream Service Flow Limit for Triggering WSP 8</p> <p>Maximum Number of Grants per Interval 8</p> <p>Default Local Time Mode system</p> <p>Diameter</p> <p>Diameter Realm <None></p> <p>Diameter Identity <None></p> <p>Diameter PCRM ID 247</p> <p>Diameter PCRM Classifier Priority 84</p> <p>Validate user No</p> <p>Allow Multiple Rx Connections With the Same Origin-Host ID No</p> <p>Diameter PCRM T1 Timer = 1, Diameter PCRM T2 Timer = 300, Diameter PCRM T3 Timer = 300</p> <p>Diameter AP Default Profiles:</p> <p>Default <None></p> <p>Audio <None></p> <p>Video <None></p> <p>Data <None></p> <p>Application <None></p> <p>Control <None></p> <p>Text <None></p> <p>Message <None></p> <p>Other <None></p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

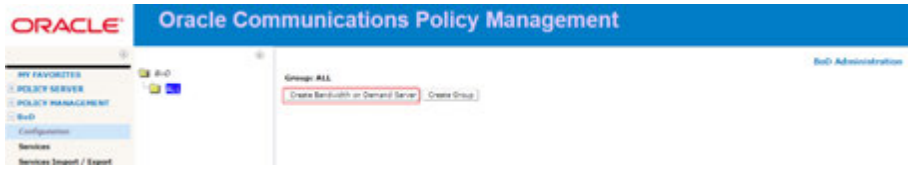
7.6.1: Configuring MPE-R and MPE-S in Policy Servers

		<p>To define these diameter parameters, click the “Modify” button on top of page then fill in the diameter Realm and Identity that your network will be using and click “Save”:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Attribute</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Diameter Realm</td> <td>The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Diameter Identity</td> <td>The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For example:</p> <pre> Diameter Diameter Realm oracle.com Diameter Identity pcrf.oracle.com Diameter PCMM AMID 3472 Diameter PCMM Classifier Priority 64 Validate user No Allow Multiple Rx Connections With the Same Origin-host Id Yes Timers Diameter PCMM T1 Timer = 1, Diameter PCMM T2 Timer = 300 , Diameter PCMM T3 Timer = 300 </pre>	Attribute	Description	Diameter Realm	The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.	Diameter Identity	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).
Attribute	Description							
Diameter Realm	The domain of responsibility (for example, <code>galactel.com</code>) for the MPE device.							
Diameter Identity	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the MPE device (for example, <code>mpe3.galactel.com</code>).							
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED								

7.6.2 Configure BoD and MA



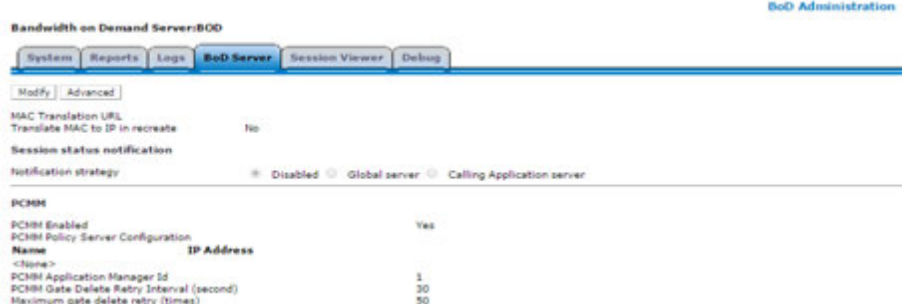
If customer is using BoD and MA components in Policy Deployment, this section will walk through configuring these components. If these components are not used, this procedure can be skipped.

7.6.2: Configure BoD and MA components

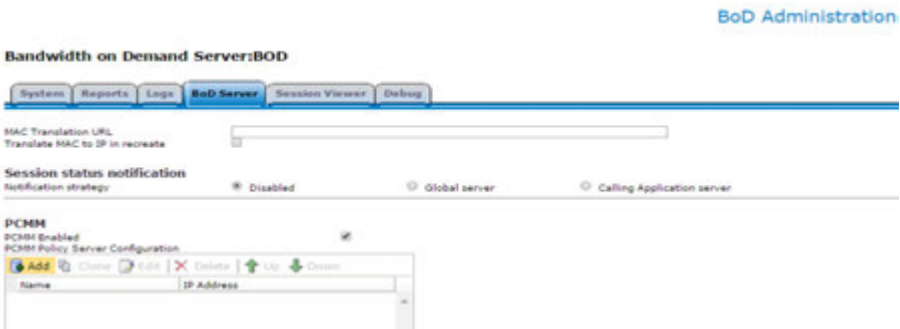
STEP #	<p>This procedure will add the BoD and MA components in CMP GUI</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - BoD and MA clusters have been added to the CMP Topology Settings - Manage BODs and Manage MA servers need to be enabled in CMP initial mode settings <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Create BoD Application	<p>Select: BOD -> Configuration -> ALL</p>  <p>Click “Create Bandwidth On Demand Server” in the BOD Administration screen:</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.6.2: Configure BoD and MA components

		 <p>Note that configured BOD cluster in Topology would be available in Associated Cluster drop down. Complete the form to configure BOD then click “Save” and confirm BoD status is “On-line”:</p> <p style="text-align: right;">BoD Administration</p> <p>Group: ALL <input type="button" value="Create Bandwidth on Demand Server"/> <input type="button" value="Create Group"/></p> <p>Bandwidth on Demand Server</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>BoD</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BOD</td> <td>On-line</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	BoD	Status	BOD	On-line
BoD	Status					
BOD	On-line					
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Check added BOD cluster in Reports tab</p>	<p>Select: BOD -> Configuration -> All -> Configured BOD -> Reports tab</p>  <p>Validate that cluster status is “On-line” and that Servers assume the Active and Standby roles.</p>				
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Associate Policy Server with BOD</p>	<p>Select: BOD -> Configuration -> All -> Configured BOD -> BoD Server tab</p>  <p>Click “Modify” then “Add” under PCMM Policy Server Configuration:</p>				

7.6.2: Configure BoD and MA components



Bandwidth on Demand Server: BOD

System Reports Logs **BoD Server** Session Viewer Debug


MAC Translation URL
Translate MAC to IP in recreate

Session status notification
Notification strategy: Disabled Global server Calling Application server

PCMM
PCMM Enabled
PCMM Policy Server Configuration

Name IP Address

Select the MPE-R configured Policy server from the associated MPE drop down. The name and IP address would be populated automatically, click "Save":



Click "save" in BoD Administration page:

PCMM		
PCMM Enabled		Yes
PCMM Policy Server Configuration		
Name	IP Address	
MPE-R	10.196.169.3	
PCMM Application Manager Id		1
PCMM Gate Delete Retry Interval (second)		30
Maximum gate delete retry (times)		50

4. Create MA Application



Select: [Policy Server](#) -> [Management Agents](#) -> [Management Agents](#)



Click "Create Management Agent" in the [Management Agent Administration](#) screen:


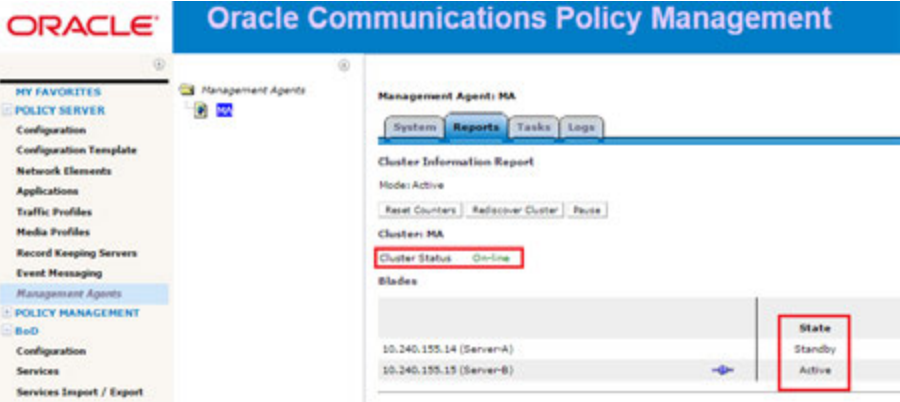


Note that configured MA cluster in Topology would be available in Associated Cluster drop down.

Complete the form to configure MA then click "Save" and confirm Configured MA status is

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.6.2: Configure BoD and MA components

		<p>"On-line":</p> 
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Check added BOD cluster in Reports tab</p>	<p>Select: Policy Server -> Management Agents -> Configured MA -> Reports tab</p>  <p>Validate that cluster status is "On-line" and that Servers assume the Active and Standby roles.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

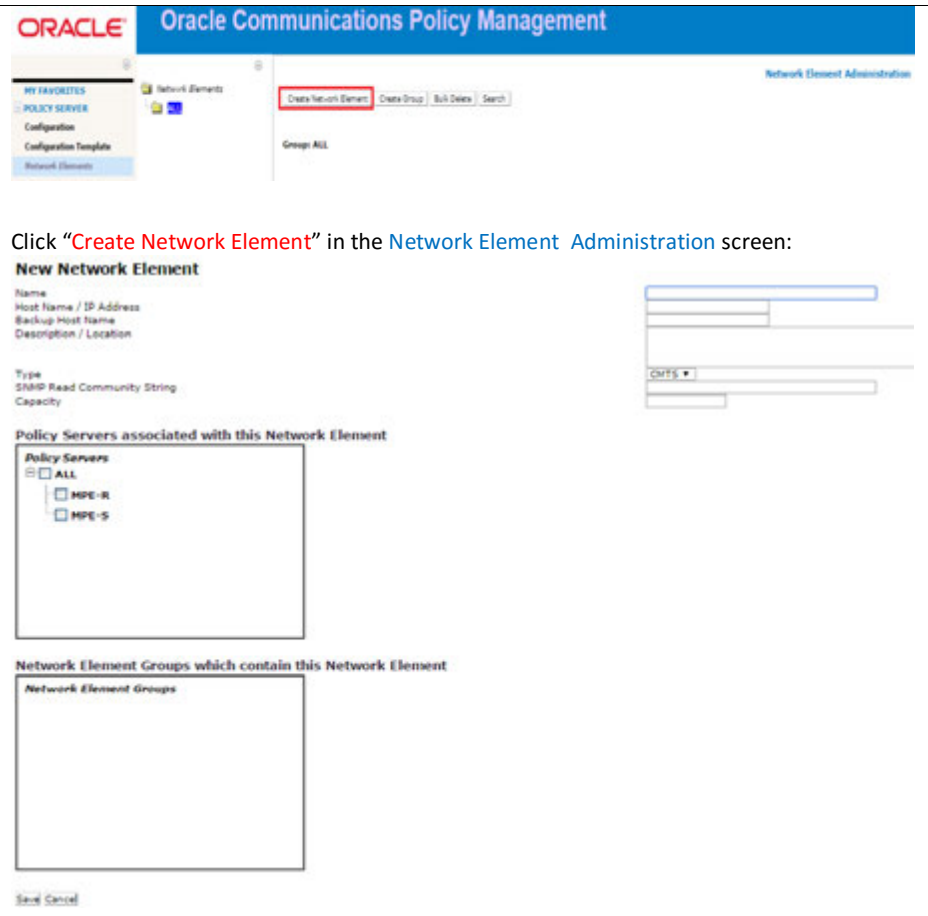
7.6.3 Define and Add Network Elements

Network elements are configured in the CMP to define the External systems that the Policy Server will communicate with.

7.6.3: Define and Add Network Elements

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will add the Network elements that are configured in the CMP to define the External systems that the Policy Server will communicate with.</p> <p>Prerequisite:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Network access to the CMP OAM IP address, to bring up a web Browser GUI (http) - MPE-R and MPE-S clusters have been added to the CMP Menu <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Create Network Element in CMP GUI</p>	<p>Select: Policy Server -> Network Elements -> All</p>

7.6.3: Define and Add Network Elements



The screenshot shows the Oracle Communications Policy Management interface. The top navigation bar includes the Oracle logo and the text 'Oracle Communications Policy Management'. Below this, there's a 'Network Element Administration' section with a 'Create Network Element' button highlighted in red. The main content area is titled 'New Network Element' and contains several form fields: 'Name', 'Host Name / IP Address', 'Backup Host Name', 'Description / Location', 'Type', 'SNMP Read Community String', and 'Capacity'. There are also two sections for selecting associated policy servers and network element groups, each with a tree view showing 'ALL', 'MPE-R', and 'MPE-S' options. A 'Save' button is visible at the bottom of the form.

Click “Create Network Element” in the Network Element Administration screen:

New Network Element

Name
Host Name / IP Address
Backup Host Name
Description / Location

Type
SNMP Read Community String
Capacity

Policy Servers associated with this Network Element

Policy Servers

- ALL
- MPE-R
- MPE-S

Network Element Groups which contain this Network Element

Network Element Groups

Save Cancel

Enter information for the network element:

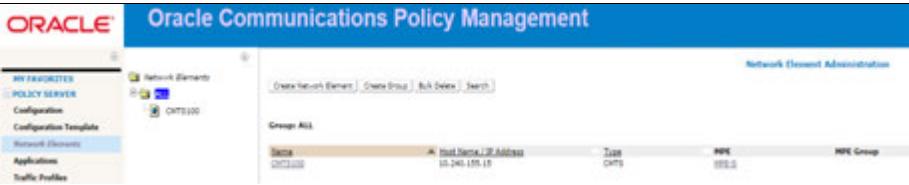
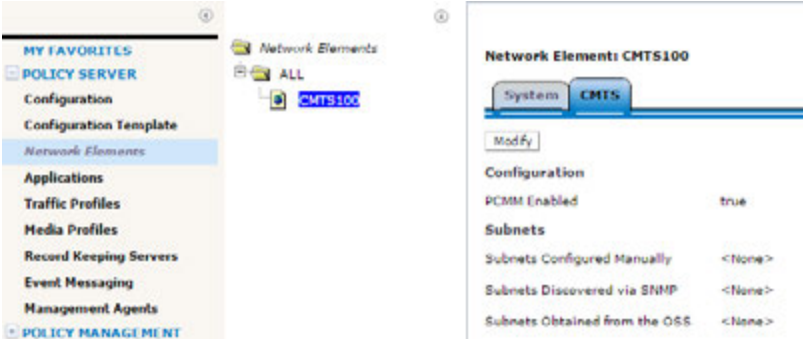
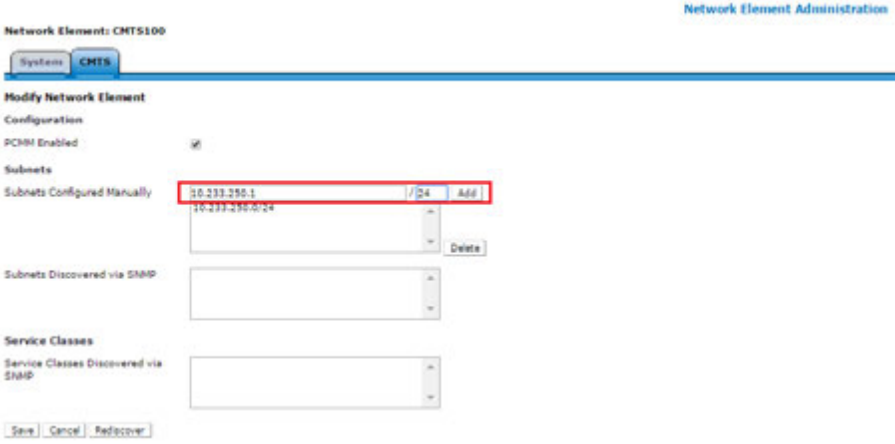
- Name** (required) — The name you assign to the network element.
- Host Name/IP Address** (required) — Registered domain name, or IP address in IPv4 or IPv6 format, assigned to the network element.
- Backup Host Name** — Alternate address that is used if communication between the MPE device and the network element’s primary address fails.
- Description/Location** — Free-form text. Enter up to 250 characters.
- Type** (required) — Select the type of network element. The only supported Network Element type in Cable mode is “CMTS”
- SNMP Read Community String**— A password-like field that allows read-only access to the MIBs for the network element that are used for SNMP polling. If a value is not entered, SNMP data is not collected from this network element.
- Capacity** — The bandwidth allocated to this network element.
- Policy Servers associated with this Network Element** — select one or more policy servers (MPE devices) to associate with this network element.
- Network Element Groups which contain this Network Element** — select one or more groups.

When you finish, click **Save**.

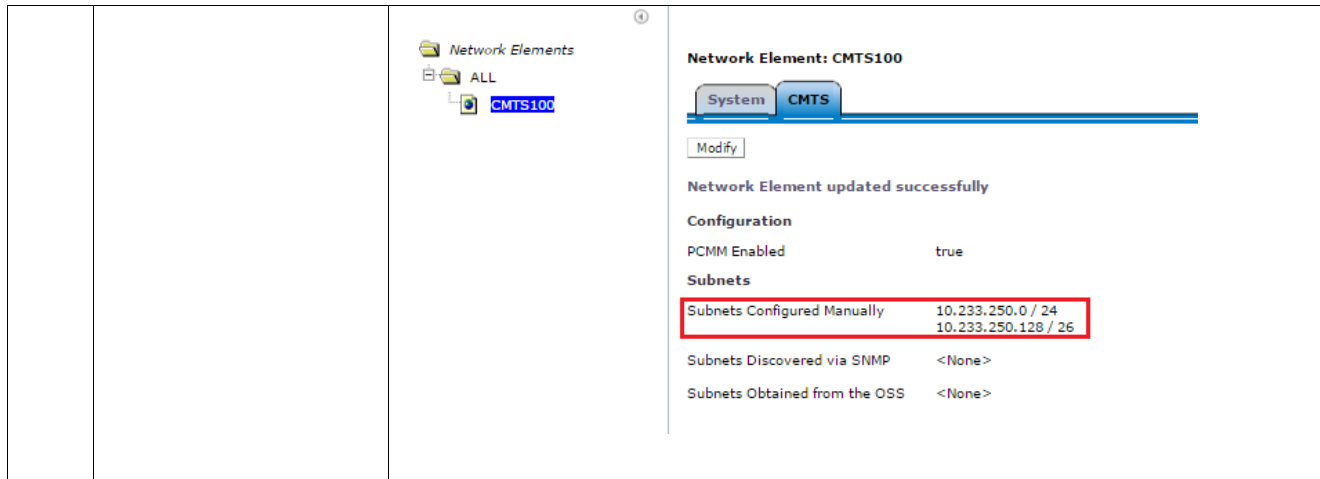
Following an example of a configured Network Element.

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

7.6.3: Define and Add Network Elements

		 <p>The new Network Element has now been created.</p>
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div>	<p>Manually add subnets to newly created CMTS</p>	<p>In case the customer needs to add subnets to the newly created subnets manually:</p> <p>Select: Policy Server -> Network Elements -> Configured CMTS -> CMTS tab</p>  <p>Click Modify then fill in the subnets IP address and subnet mask and click add for each:</p>  <p>When finished click "Save":</p>

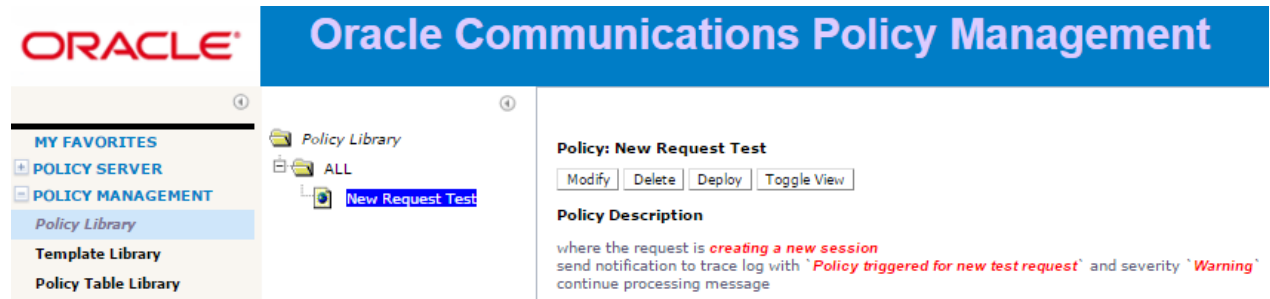
7.6.3: Define and Add Network Elements



7.7 LOAD POLICIES AND RELATED POLICY DATA

This step is optional. Policies are not required to process a test call but for the purpose of verification, a basic Policy can be created manually, or using an import action and an xml file if applicable. The policy must be deployed to the MPE-S which will process the test request in order to be triggered.

Here is an example of a very simple policy that can be used to confirm session creation for a test request by viewing the trace logs on the MPE that processes the test call.



Note that this policy needs to be deployed to the relevant MPE-S that will process diameter session requests. Deployed Policies can be verified from the "Policies" tab of the MPE-S that will process the test request:



7.8 PERFORM TEST CALL

A basic test call will confirm that the system is ready for testing of call scenarios defined by the customer. For example, AF/P-CSCF will first establish a Diameter connection with the PCRF and then initiate the test call by sending an Rx Diameter AAR message.

Alternatively, Customer's system can send a new session request via HTTP or SOAP to BOD component which will result in a new PCMM message sent by MPE-S to CMTS network Element.

CMTS network element must be configured and associated to the subscriber's relevant test session as shown in the following sample :



7.9 PRE-PRODUCTION CONFIGURATIONS

There are other steps required to verify the Operations configuration of the system. For example, to verify that the SNMP traps (Alarms) are being delivered to the customer Network Management centers. These are outside the scope of this document, but also need to be planned and executed.

Please reference the following document for information on configuring SNMP:

[SNMP User's Guide](#)

Additional Procedures can be referenced from the following documents:

[Platform Configuration User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

[Configuration Management Platform Cable User's Guide Release 12.2](#)

Changes in the behavior of Release 12.2 are documented in the [Oracle® Communications Policy Management Release Notes Release 12.2](#)

Behavior Modifications

Removal of Manual Statistics Mode (Statistics Mode Unification) - ER 22534128

As of this release, the manual statistics mode is no longer available. The default and only available mode in this release is interval mode statistics. In prior releases, manual stats mode is the default.

Firewall Enabled by Default - ER 22536198

Firewall functionality is now enabled by default. Server firewall protects Policy Management against DDoS, flooding attacks, and unwanted connections. The settings are not altered upon upgrade.

8. SUPPORTING PROCEDURES

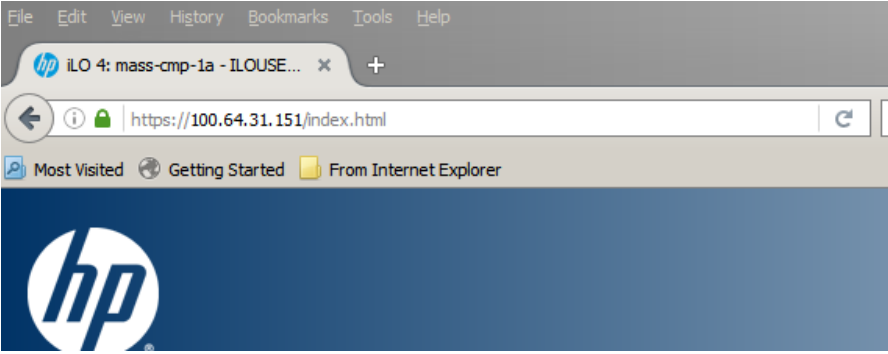
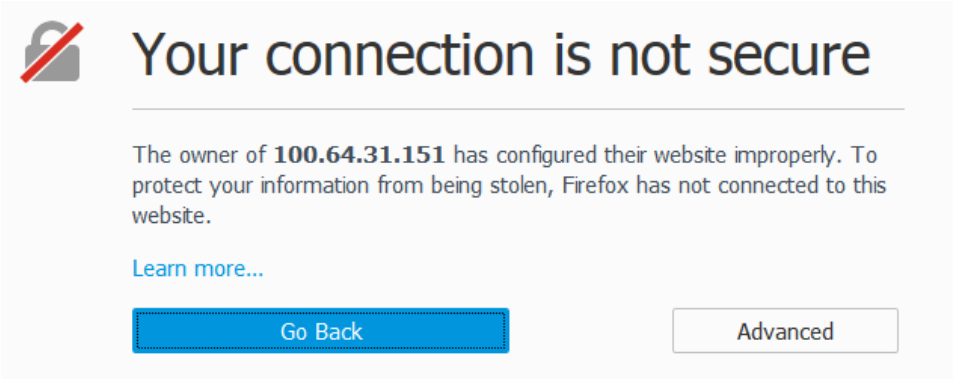
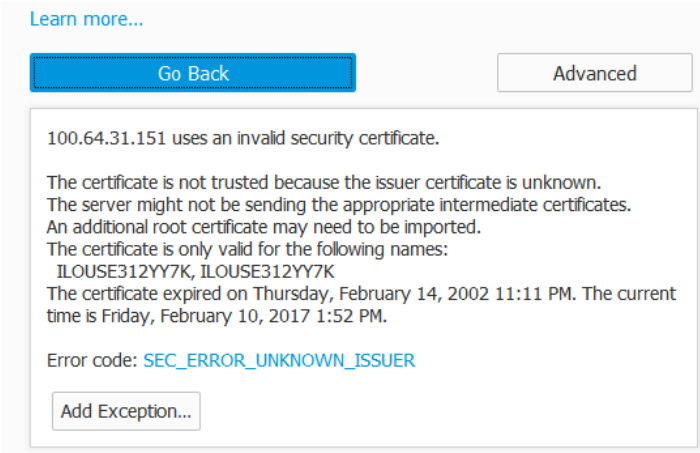
The following procedures may be referenced during installation.

8.1 ACCESSING THE ILO VGA REDIRECTION WINDOW

8.1.1 Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP Servers

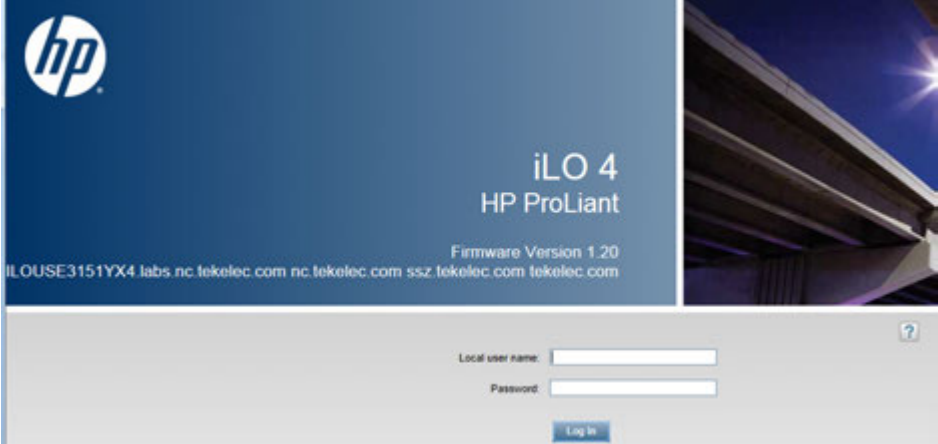
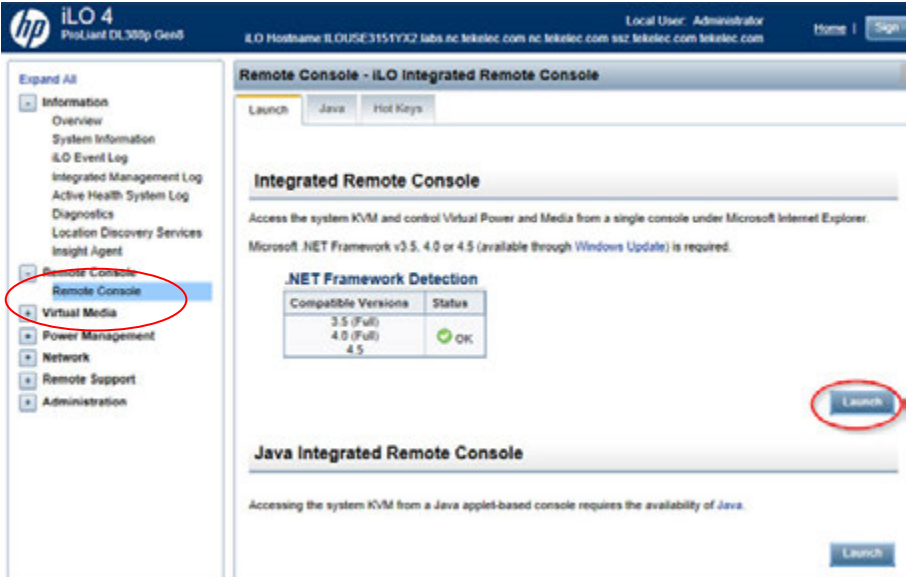
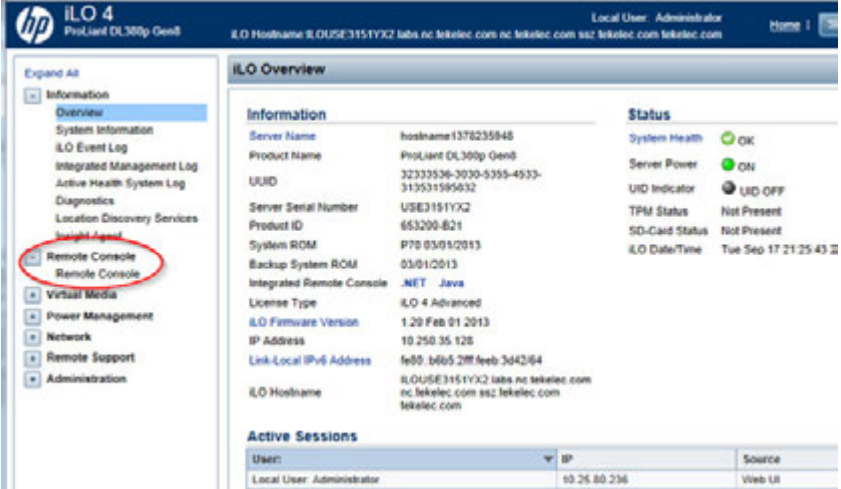
This procedure may vary slightly depending on which type of browser is used. If security certificates are already installed on the client browser the security exceptions will not be encountered.

8.1.1 Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP

Step	Procedure	Result
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Launch an approved web browser and connect to the iLO interface</p> <p>NOTE: Always use <i>https://</i> for iLO GUI access.</p>	
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The first time the web browser connects to the iLO a warning message will be displayed regarding the Security Certificate.</p>	
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Select "Advanced" and the "Add Exception" and then "Confirm Security Exception" in the resulting window.</p>	

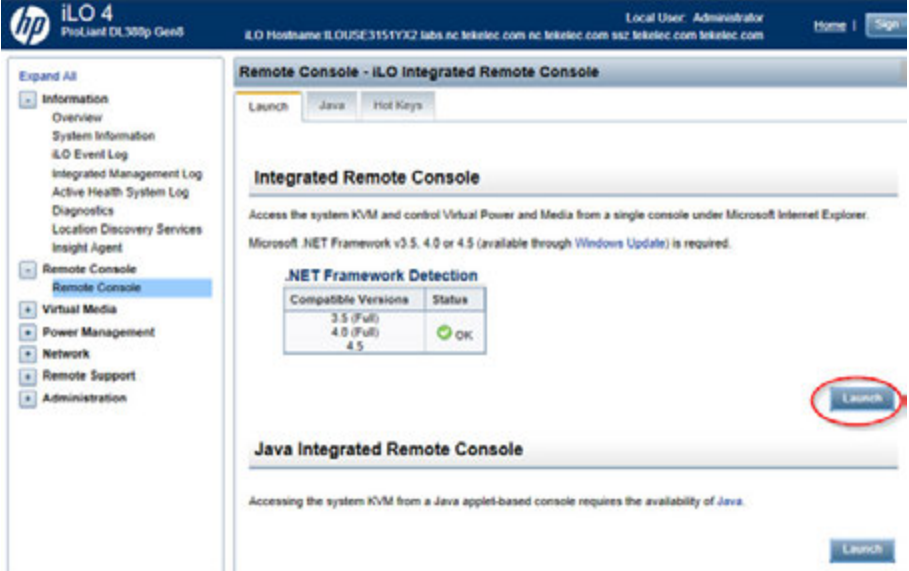
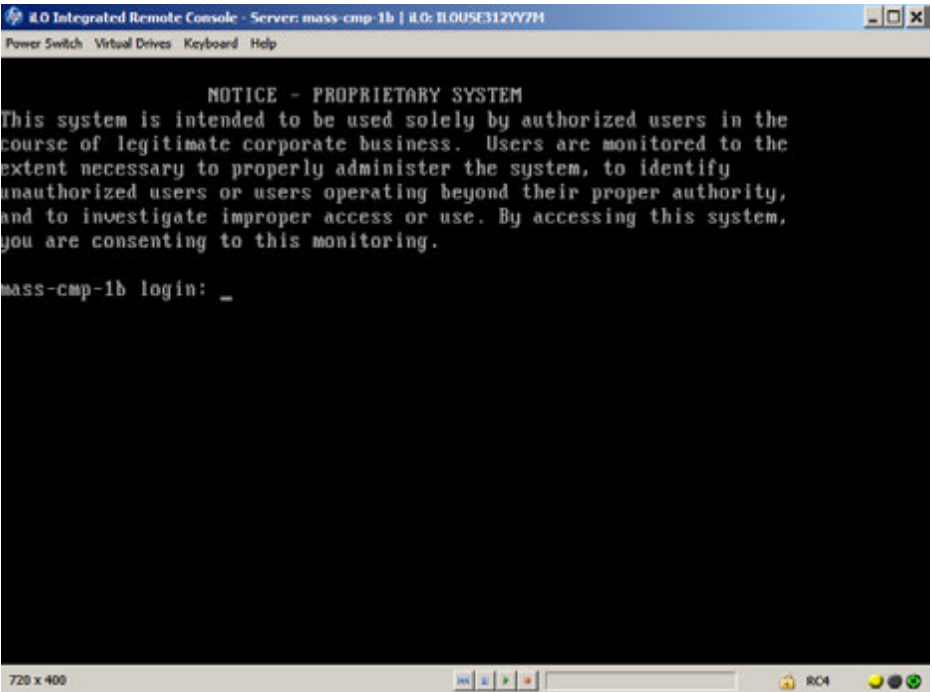
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.1 Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP

<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Login to the iLO console as "Administrator"</p>	
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The admin GUI is displayed.</p> <p>Expand the "Remote Console" tab in the left panel of the GUI.</p>	
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The Remote Console tab is expanded</p> <p>Click on the "Remote Console" option</p>	

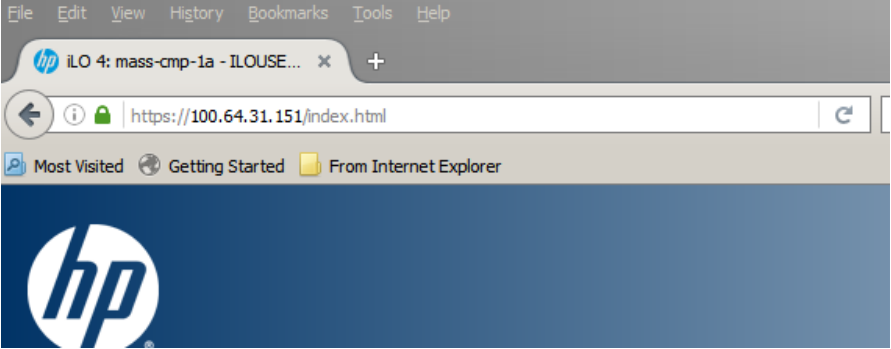
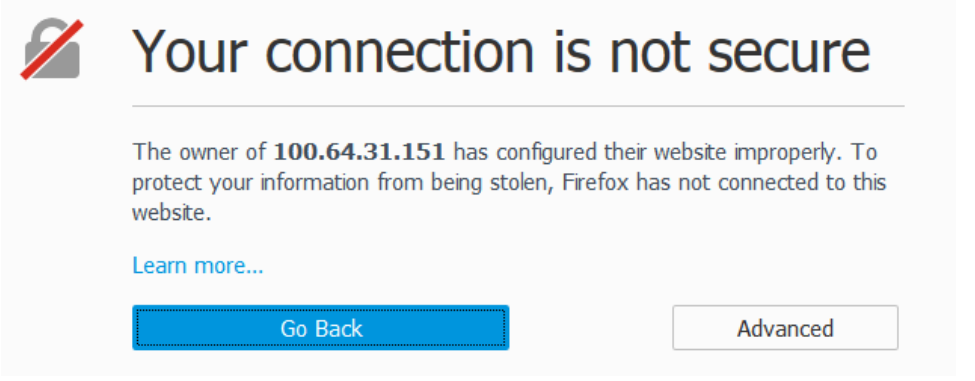
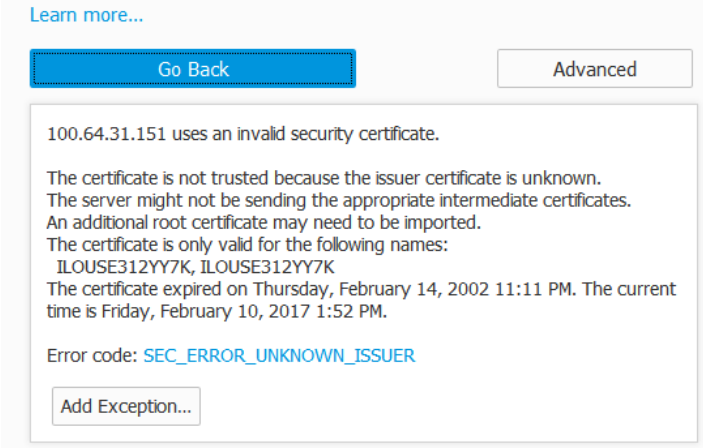
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.1 Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP

<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The Remote Console GUI is displayed</p> <p>Click on the “Launch” button under “Integrated Remote Console”</p>	
<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The iLO Console window is displayed.</p>	
<p style="text-align: center;">THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

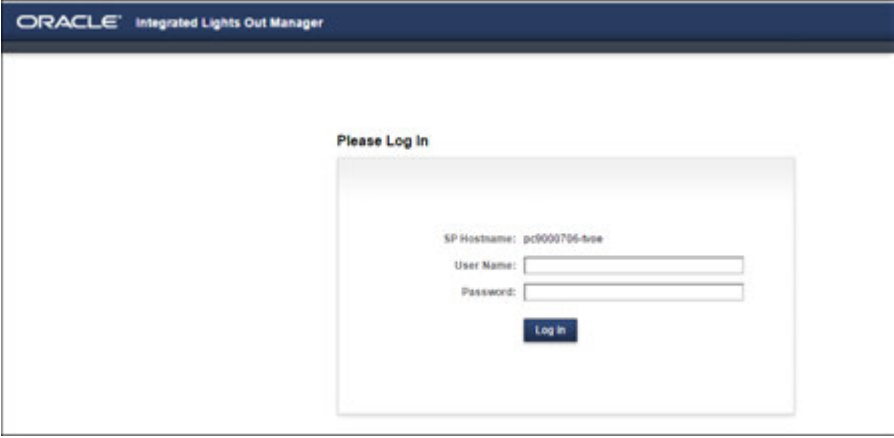
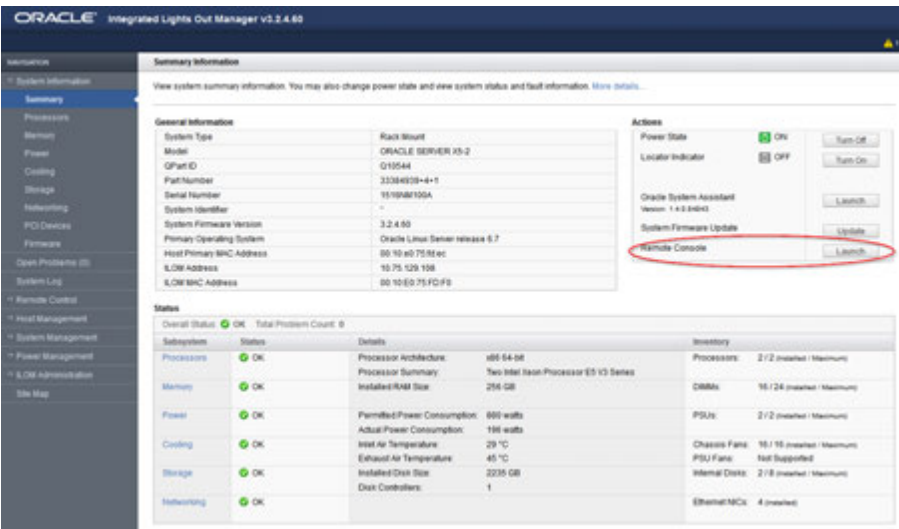
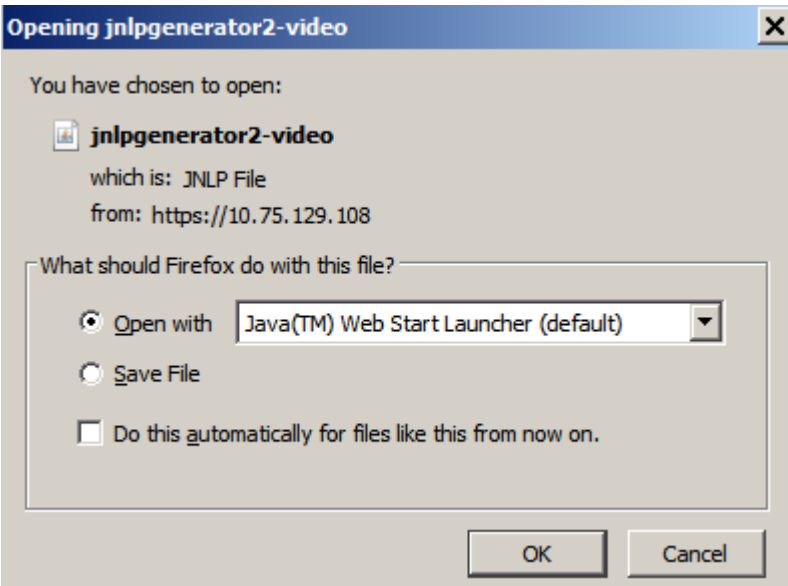
8.1.2 Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers

8.1.2: Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers

Step	Procedure	Result
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Launch an approved web browser and connect to the iLO interface</p> <p>NOTE: Always use <i>https://</i> for iLO GUI access.</p>	
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The first time the web browser connects to the iLO a warning message will be displayed regarding the Security Certificate.</p>	
<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Select "Advanced" and the "Add Exception" and then "Confirm Security Exception" in the resulting window.</p>	

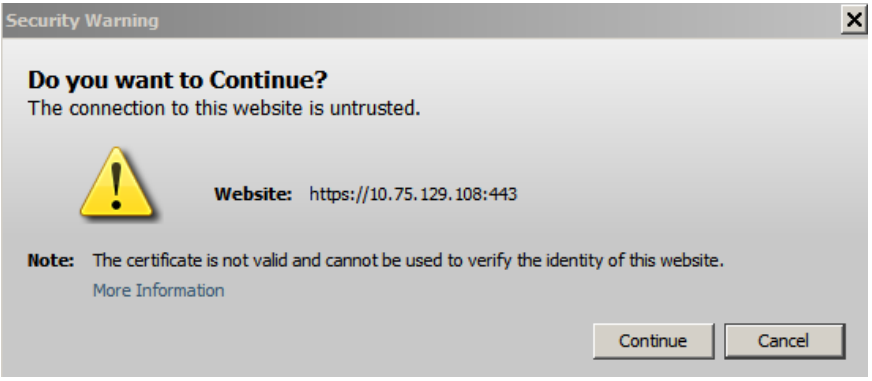
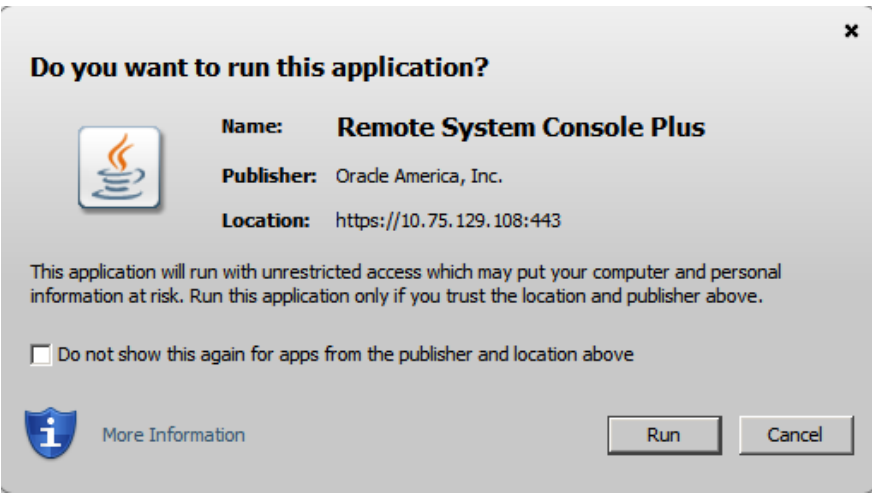
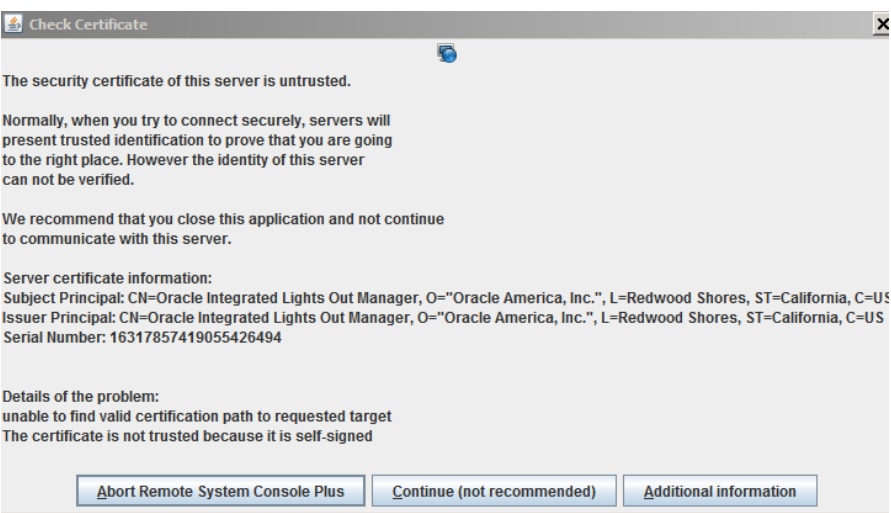
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.2: Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers

<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Login to the iLO console as “Administrator”</p>	
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The admin GUI is displayed.</p> <p>“Launch” the “Remote Control” from the right side of the screen.</p>	
<p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Open “Java Web Start” when prompted.</p>	


Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.2: Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers

<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>“Continue” if prompted.</p>	 <p>The dialog box is titled "Security Warning" and contains the following text: "Do you want to Continue? The connection to this website is untrusted." Below this is a yellow warning triangle icon. To the right of the icon, it says "Website: https://10.75.129.108:443". A "Note" section states: "The certificate is not valid and cannot be used to verify the identity of this website." There is a link for "More Information". At the bottom are "Continue" and "Cancel" buttons.</p>
<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>And “Run” if prompted.</p>	 <p>The dialog box is titled "Do you want to run this application?". It features the Oracle logo icon. The text includes: "Name: Remote System Console Plus", "Publisher: Oracle America, Inc.", and "Location: https://10.75.129.108:443". A warning message states: "This application will run with unrestricted access which may put your computer and personal information at risk. Run this application only if you trust the location and publisher above." There is a checkbox for "Do not show this again for apps from the publisher and location above". At the bottom are "Run" and "Cancel" buttons, along with a "More Information" link.</p>
<p>9.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>“Continue” if prompted.</p>	 <p>The dialog box is titled "Check Certificate". It contains the following text: "The security certificate of this server is untrusted." It explains that normally servers present trusted identification but the identity of this server cannot be verified. It recommends closing the application. It provides "Server certificate information": "Subject Principal: CN=Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager, O=Oracle America, Inc., L=Redwood Shores, ST=California, C=US" and "Issuer Principal: CN=Oracle Integrated Lights Out Manager, O=Oracle America, Inc., L=Redwood Shores, ST=California, C=US" with "Serial Number: 16317857419055426494". It also includes "Details of the problem": "unable to find valid certification path to requested target" and "The certificate is not trusted because it is self-signed". At the bottom are "Abort Remote System Console Plus", "Continue (not recommended)", and "Additional information" buttons.</p>

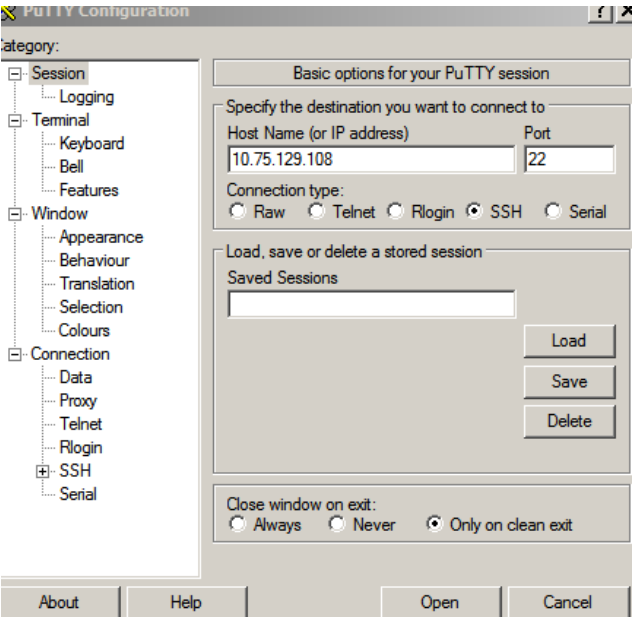
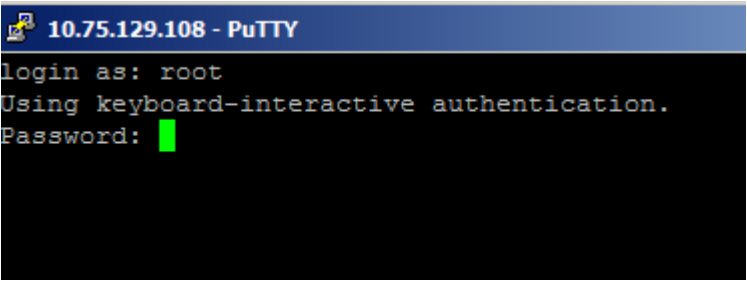
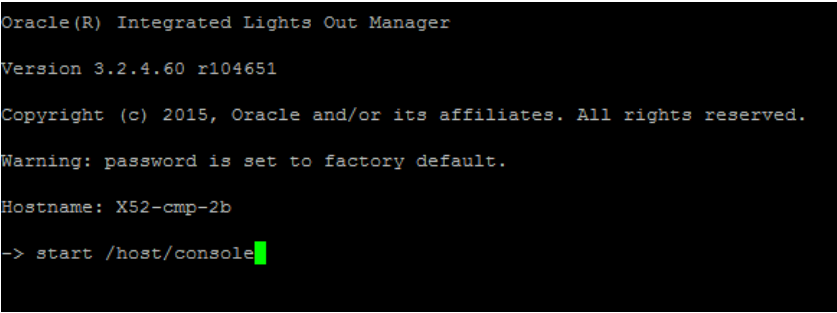
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.2: Accessing the iLOM VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers

<p>10.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>The iLO Console window is displayed.</p>	
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

8.1.3 Accessing the iLOM Console for Oracle RMS Servers using SSH

8.1.3: Accessing the iLO Console for Oracle RMS Servers

Step	Procedure	Result
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>Login to the Server iLOM console with "ssh".</p>	<p>Using putty or something similar-open an ssh session to iLOM of the target server using the iLOM IP address:</p>  <p>login as: <code>root</code> Password: <code><root_password></code></p>  <p style="text-align: right;">-></p>
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>From the iLOM prompt:</p>	<p>Type "start /host/console" from the "→" prompt to login into the server console.</p> 

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

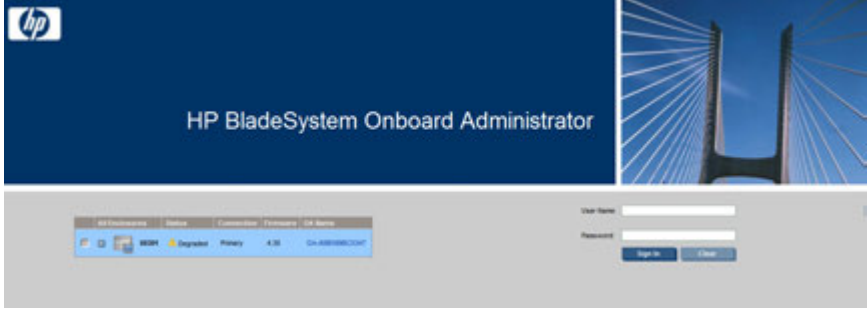

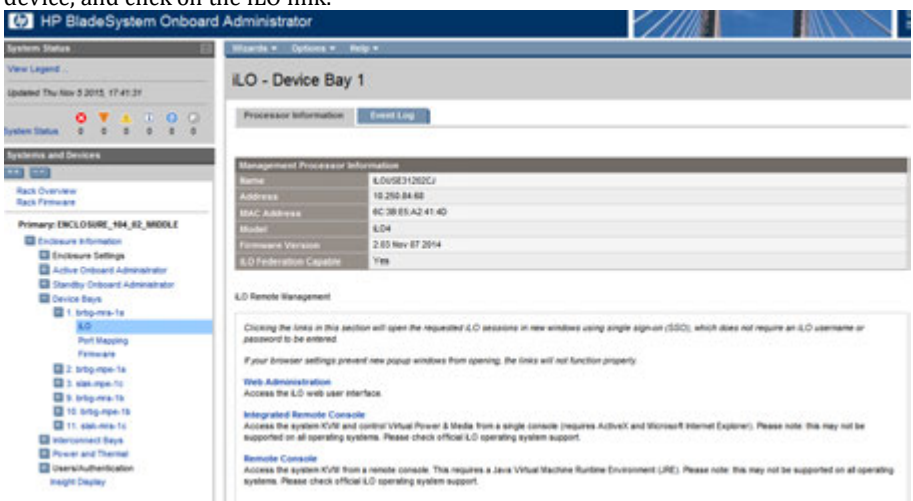
8.1.3: Accessing the iLO Console for Oracle RMS Servers

3. <input type="checkbox"/>	From the iLOM prompt:	<p>Answer “y” to confirm login to the console.</p> <pre>-> start /host/console Are you sure you want to start /HOST/console (y/n)? y</pre> <p>The prompt will respond with “Serial Console Started”.</p> <pre>Serial console started. To stop, type ESC (</pre> <p>Hit the carriage return to get the server prompt of the installed operating system.</p> <pre>Serial console started. To stop, type ESC (NOTICE - PROPRIETARY SYSTEM This system is intended to be used solely by authorized users in the course of legitimate corporate business. Users are monitored to the extent necessary to properly administer the system, to identify unauthorized users or users operating beyond their proper authority, and to investigate improper access or use. By accessing this system, you are consenting to this monitoring. X52-cmp-2b login: </pre> <p>You can then login to the server with <code>admusr/<admusr_password></code> or any other appropriate login.</p> <pre>login: admusr Password: Last login: Wed Feb 8 15:28:10 from 10.154.117.232 [admusr@X52-cmp-2b ~]\$</pre> <p>Note: To exit the console type “ESC (“</p> <pre>Serial console started. To stop, type ESC (</pre>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

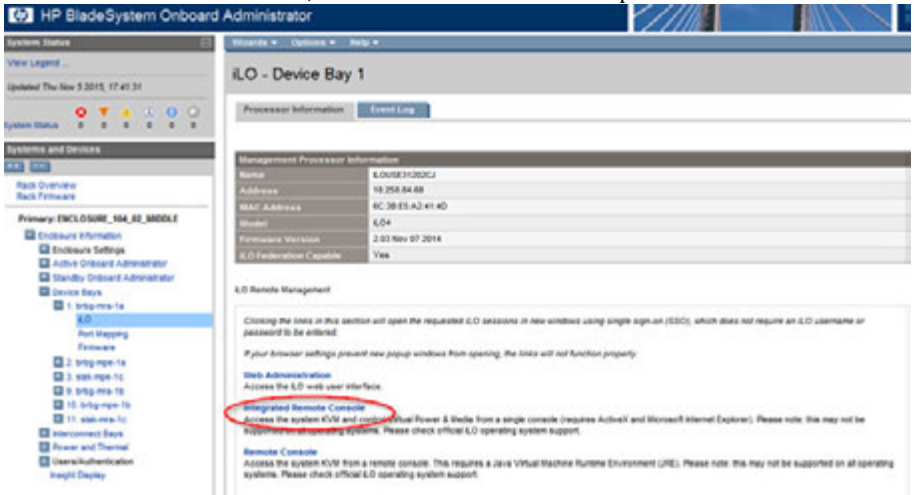
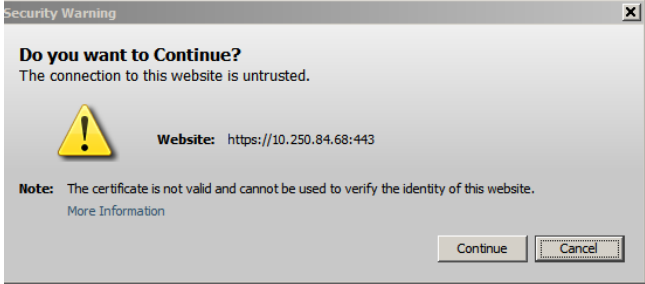
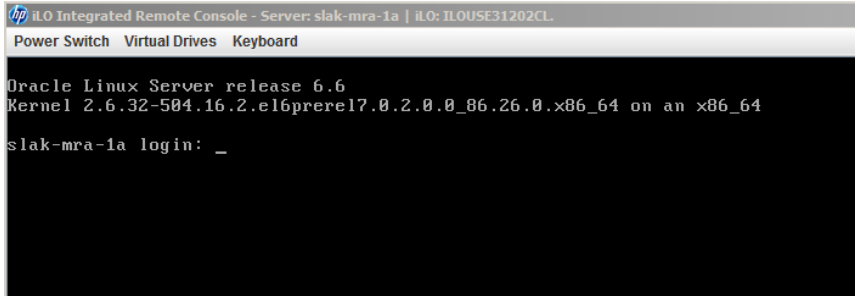
8.1.4 Accessing the Remote Console using the OA (c-Class)

8.1.4: Accessing the Remote Console using the OA (c-Class)

Step	Procedure	Result
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Web Browser: Access Onboard Administrator Login (must be Active OA)</p>	<p>Open a web browser and navigate to the OA IP address. Note that you be prompted with a warning for security certificates, because the certificate is self-signed. You must select Continue to access this page.</p> 
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Web Browser: Login as Administrator, and view available server blades</p>	<p>Log in to HP OA as a user with Administrative privilege.</p> 
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 10px;"></div>	<p>Web Browser: Open the iLO form for the server blade you wish to connect to</p>	<p>From the navigation pane, select Device Bays, select the expand button on the desired device, and click on the iLO link.</p> 

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.1.4: Accessing the Remote Console using the OA (c-Class)


<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Web Browser: Click the remote Console link</p>	<p>Click the Remote Console link, and a new browser window opens.</p>  <p>You may be prompted with a security certificate warning, as well as a warning about running content from an untrusted site. Click through the prompts.</p> <p>Java Integrated Remote Console</p> <p>Access the system KVM and control Virtual Power & Media from an applet-based console requiring the availability of Java.</p>  <p>You must select Continue or Yes to proceed.</p>
<p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Web Browser:</p>	<p>After a few moments, the Console window will open.</p> 
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

8.2 MOUNTING MEDIA (IMAGE FILES)

8.2.1 Mounting Physical Media (RMS only)


This procedure contains steps to mount electronic and physical media on HP rack mount servers.

8.2.1: Mounting Physical Media on HP Rack Mount Servers

Step	In this procedure you will mount media on HP rack mount servers, for ISO access or other file transfer.	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Access the server's console.	Connect to the server's console using one of the access methods described in Section 8.1.1
2. <input type="checkbox"/>	1) Access the command prompt. 2) Log into the server as the "root" user.	<pre>CentOS release 5.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64 hostname1260476221 login: root Password: <root_password></pre>
3. <input type="checkbox"/>	HP Server: Insert the USB flash drive containing the server configuration file into the USB port on the front panel of HP Server .	 <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 1 -HP DL380 Front Panel: USB Port</p>
4. <input type="checkbox"/>	HP Server: Output similar to that shown on the right will appear as the USB flash drive is inserted into the HP Server front USB port. Press the <ENTER> key to return to the command prompt.	<pre>[root@hostname1260476099 ~]# sd 3:0:0:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through sd 3:0:0:0: [sdb] Assuming drive cache: write through <ENTER> [root@hostname1260476099 ~]#</pre>
5. <input type="checkbox"/>	HP Server: Verify that the USB flash drive's partition has been mounted by the OS: Search df for the device named in the previous step's output .	<pre>[root@hostname1260476099 ~]# df grep sdb /dev/sdb1 2003076 82003068 1% /media/sdb1 [root@hostname1260476099 ~]#</pre>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

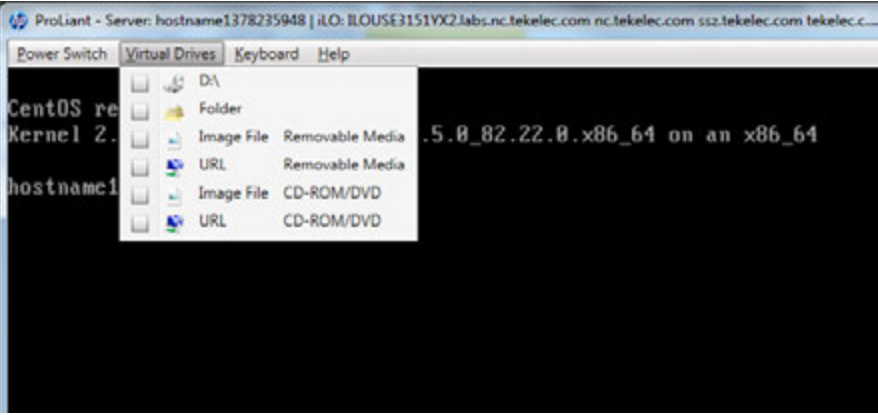
8.2.1: Mounting Physical Media on HP Rack Mount Servers

<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>HP Server: USB media may be accessed via the path shown</p>	<pre>[root@hostname1260476099 ~]# cd /media/sdbl [root@hostname1260476099 ~]#</pre>
<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>HP Server: When you are finished using the mounted drive, remove the USB flash drive from the USB port on the front panel of the server.</p>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Figure 2 -HP DL380 Front Panel: USB Port</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

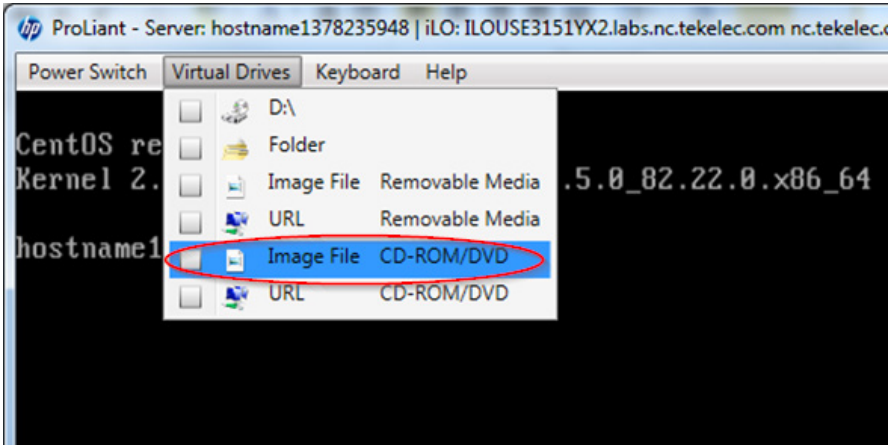
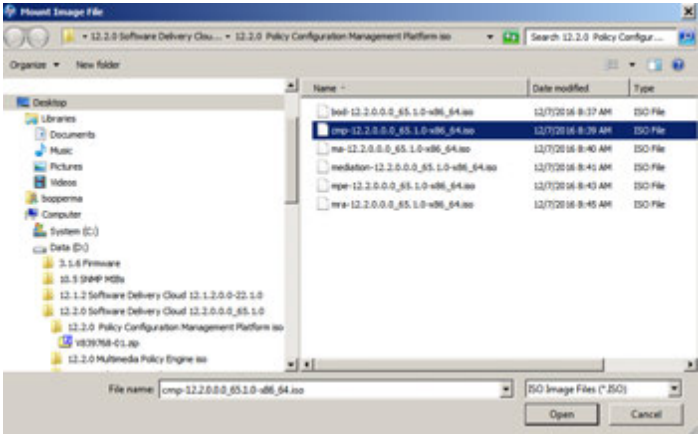
8.2.2 Mounting Virtual Media on HP Servers

This procedure contains steps to mount virtual media on HP rack mount servers via ILO.

8.2.2: Mounting Virtual Media on HP Rack Mount Servers

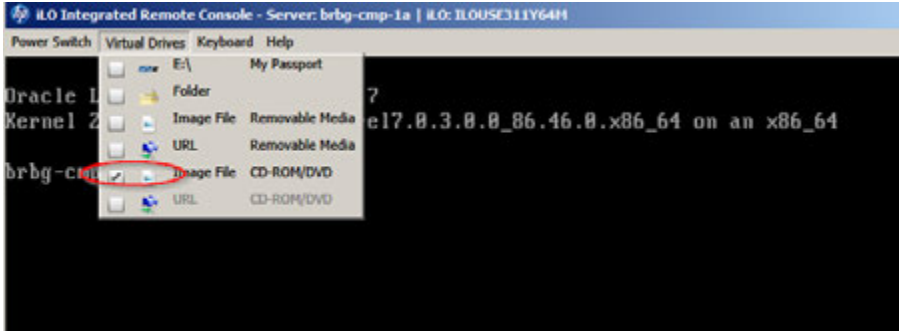
<p>Step</p>	<p>In this procedure you will mount media on HP rack mount servers via ILO, for ISO access or other file transfer.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the server's ILO VGA.</p>	<p>Connect to the server's ILO VGA using the access method described Section 8.1.1</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>ILO Remote Console: Select "Virtual Drives" from the top menu bar.</p>	

8.2.2: Mounting Virtual Media on HP Rack Mount Servers

<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>HP Server: Select from the menu options presented:</p> <p>Image File / CD-ROM/DVD to access a bootable iso image file on your laptop client machine.</p> <p>URL / CD-ROM/DVD to access a bootable iso image file on the network.</p>	<p>Select "Image File / CD-ROM/DVD"</p> 
<p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>HP Server: Select an image file to mount</p>	<p>A window will popup to browse the client browser workstation or laptop.</p>  <p>Choose the desired image file.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

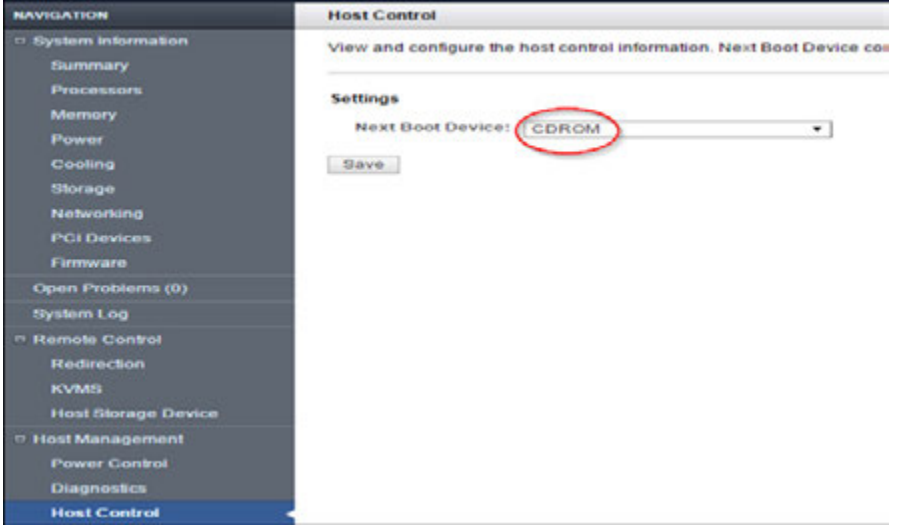
8.2.2: Mounting Virtual Media on HP Rack Mount Servers

<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>HP Server: Confirm the target image file has been mounted</p>	<p>Return to the “Virtual Drives” drop down tab and the “Image File / CD-ROM/DVD” will now be checked indicating that the image file has been mounted.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the iLO Integrated Remote Console interface. The 'Virtual Drives' menu is open, and the 'Image File / CD-ROM/DVD' option is selected and circled in red. The background shows a terminal window with text including 'Oracle 1', 'Kernel 2', and 'brbg-cmp-1a'.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

8.2.3 Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers

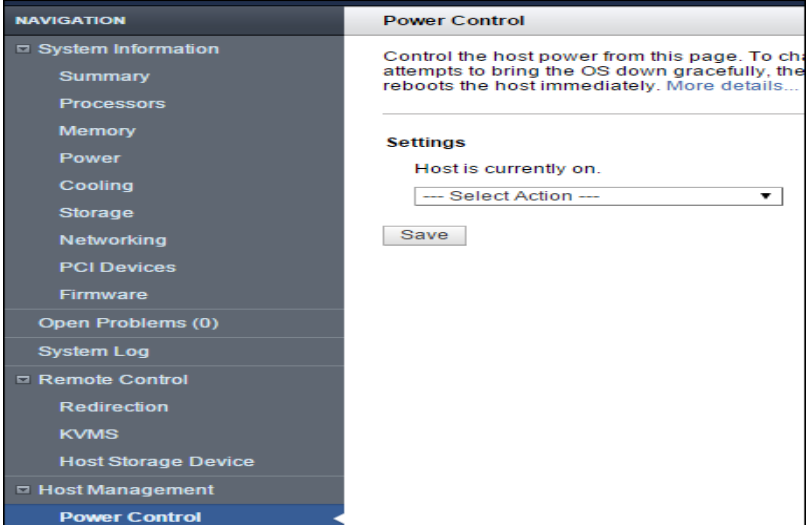
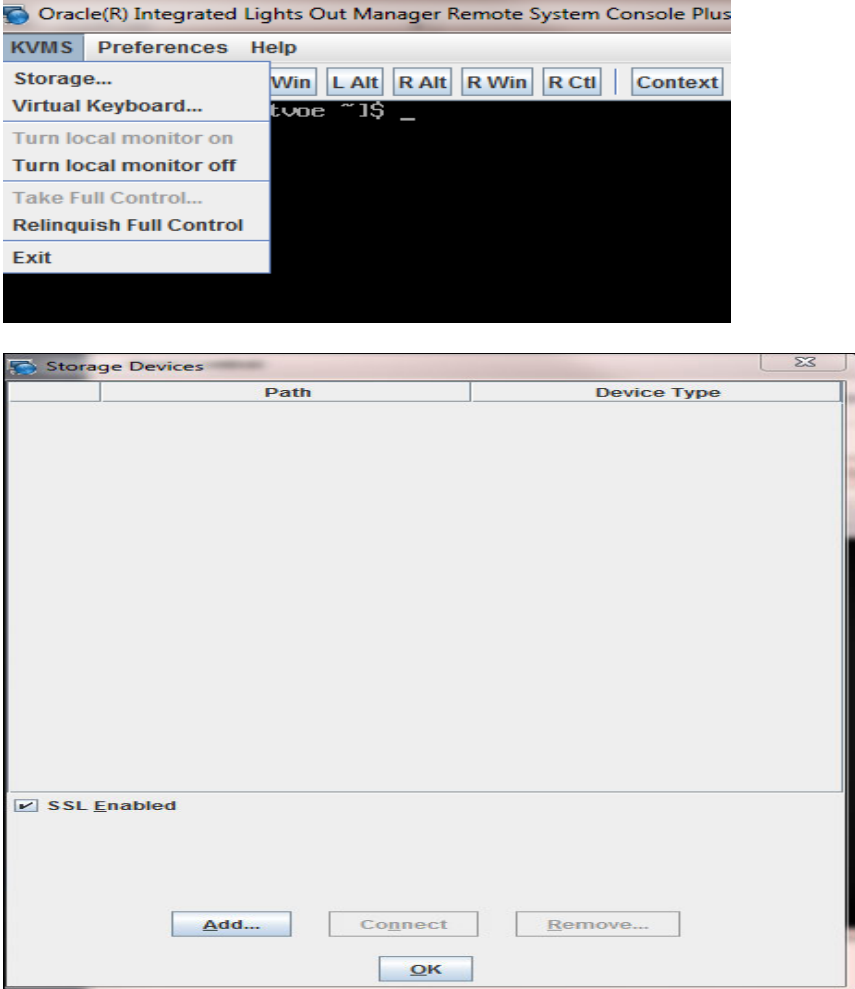
This procedure contains steps to mount virtual media on Oracle RMS servers via ILO.

8.2.3: Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers

<p>Step</p>	<p>In this procedure you will mount media on Oracle RMS servers via the iLOM, for ISO access or other file transfer.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the server's ILO VGA.</p>	<p>Connect to the server's ILO VGA using the access method described in Section 8.1.2</p>
<p>2.</p>	<p>ILO Admin GUI:</p> <p>Change the Next Boot Device</p> <p>Select “Host Management/Host Control”</p> <p>Select “CDROM” from “Next Boot Device” drop down box.</p> <p>Click “Save”</p>	 <p>The screenshot shows the ILO Admin GUI. The 'Host Control' section is active, and the 'Next Boot Device' dropdown menu is set to 'CDROM', which is circled in red. The 'Save' button is visible below the dropdown.</p>

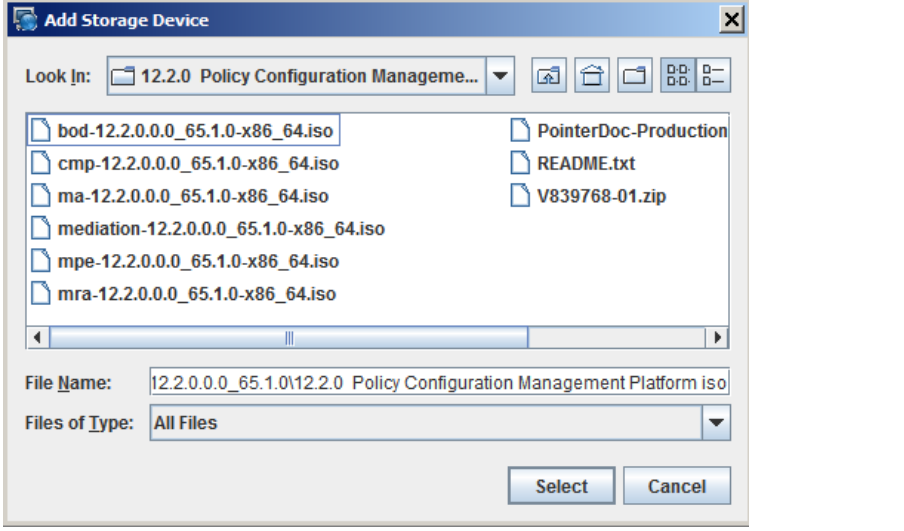
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.2.3: Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers

<p>3.</p>	<p>ILO Admin GUI:</p> <p>Go to “Host Management/Power Control”</p> <p>Verify “Host is currently on”</p> <p>Note: If it’s turned off, turn it back on.</p>	
<p>4.</p>	<p>ILO Remote Console:</p> <p>Select “KMVS/Storage” from the top menu bar.</p> <p>Select “Add” button on next screen near bottom of the screen.</p>	

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

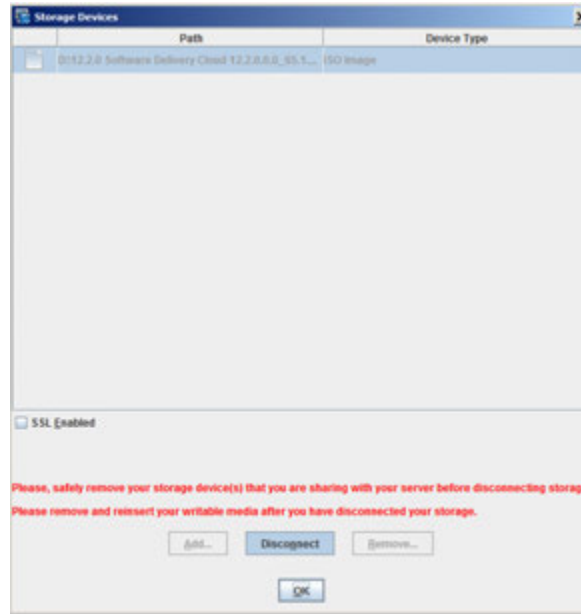
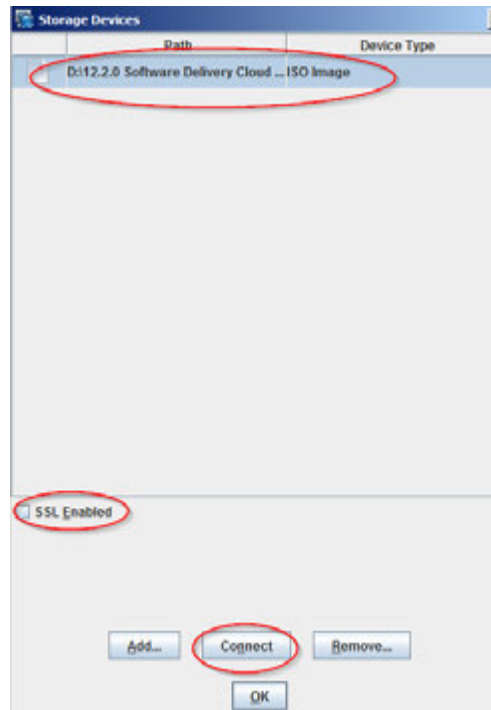
8.2.3: Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers

5. <input type="checkbox"/>	ILO Remote Console: Select desired Image File from files on your laptop/desktop client machine.	
---------------------------------------	--	--

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.2.3: Mounting Virtual Media on Oracle RMS Servers

- 6. ILO Remote Console:**
1. Select/highlight the ISO file
 2. **Uncheck SSL Enabled** checkbox before connecting to the TVOE iso.
 3. Click **Connect**
 4. Click **OK**



THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

8.3 HARDWARE SETUP (BIOS CONFIGURATION)

Reference material:

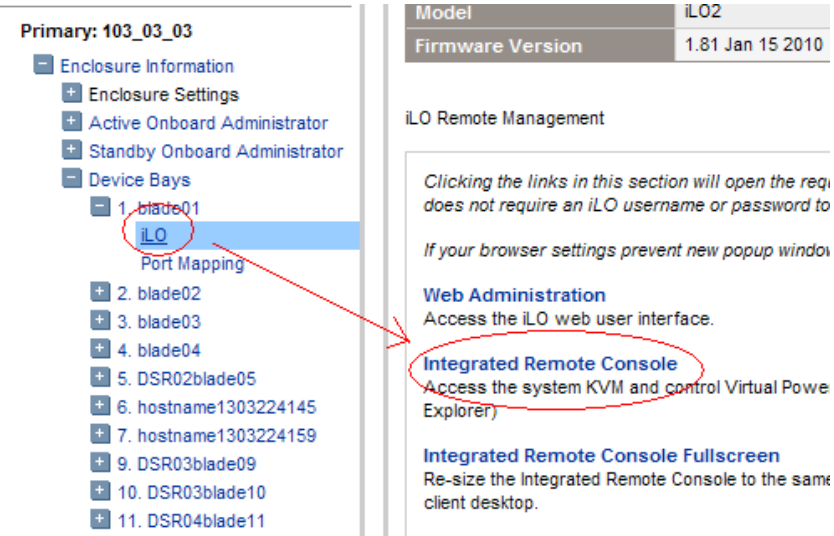
- [TPD Initial Product Manufacture, Release 6.7.2+](#)
- [Tekelec Platform 7.0.x Configuration Guide](#)

8.3.1 BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

This procedure will configure HP BIOS settings for Gen 8 Blade and RMS.

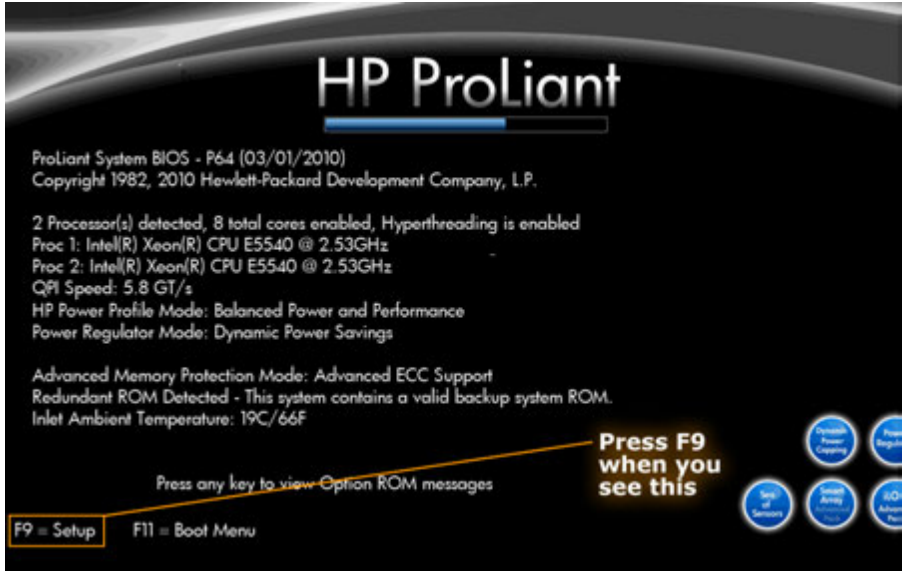
Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

8.3.1:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

Step	In this procedure you will configure BIOS settings for HP hardware.	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the HP server's console.</p>	<p>Connect to the server's console using one of the access methods described in Section 8.1.1</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the HP server's console according to its hardware type</p>	<p>For Rack Mount Servers (RMS), connect to the server's console using one of the access methods described in Section 10.1</p> <p>For Blade servers:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Navigate to the IP address of the active OA. Login as an administrative user. b. Navigate to Enclosure Information > Device Bays ><Blade 1>> iLO c. Click on Integrated Remote Console  <p>Note: This will launch the iLO interface for that blade. If this is the first time the iLO is being accessed, you will be prompted to install an add-on to your web browser, follow the on screen instructions to do so.</p>

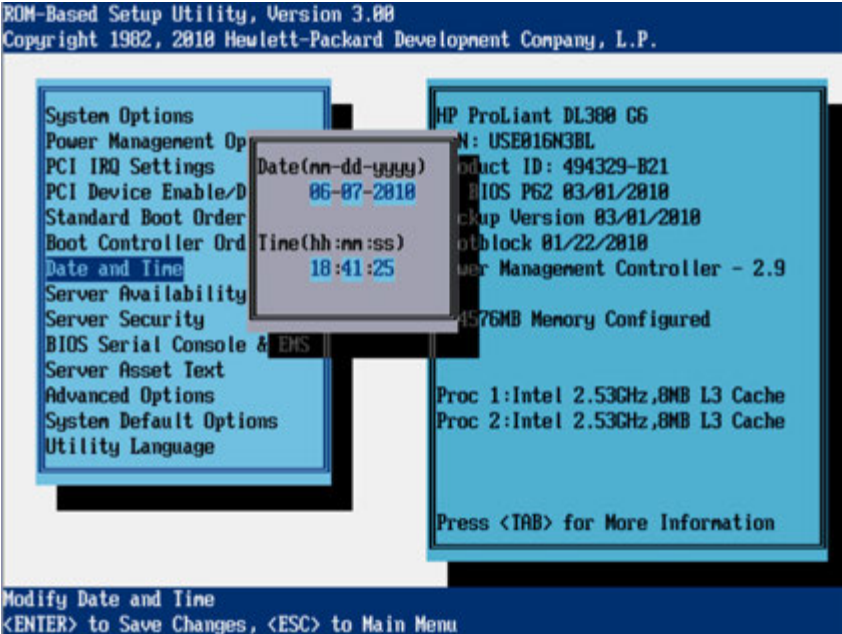
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the Server BIOS</p>	<p>Reboot the server.</p> <p>For Blade and RMS, this can be achieved by selecting Cold Boot from under the Integrated Console's Power Management→Server Power menu.</p> <p>For RMS, this can also be achieved by pressing and holding the power button until the server turns off, then after approximately 5-10 seconds press the power button to enable power.</p> <p>As soon as you see F9=Setup in the lower left corner of the screen, press [F9] to access the BIOS setup screen. You may be required to press [F9] 2-3 times. The F9=Setup will change to F9 Pressed once it is accepted. See example below.</p>  <p>Expected Result: ROM-Based Setup Utility is accessed and the ROM-Based Setup Utility menu will be displayed.</p>
------------------------------------	-------------------------------	---

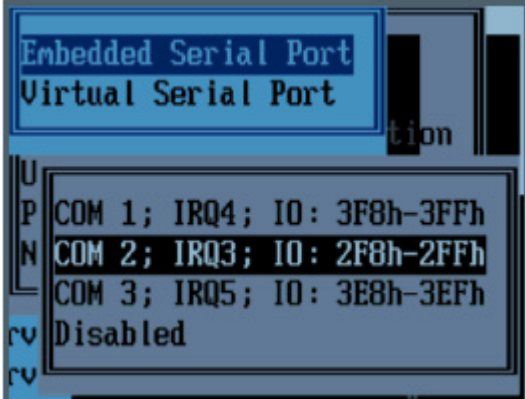

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Set Server CMOS Clock</p>	<p>Scroll to <i>Date and Time</i> and press [ENTER]</p> <p>Set the date and time and press [ENTER].</p>  <p>Correct Time & Date is set.</p>
------------------------------------	------------------------------	---

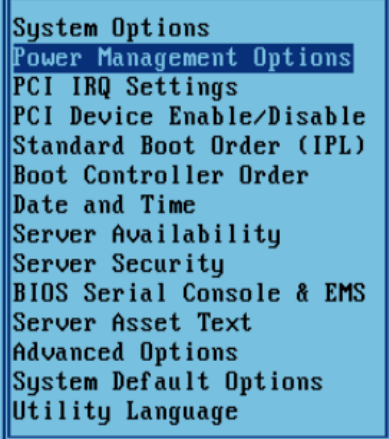

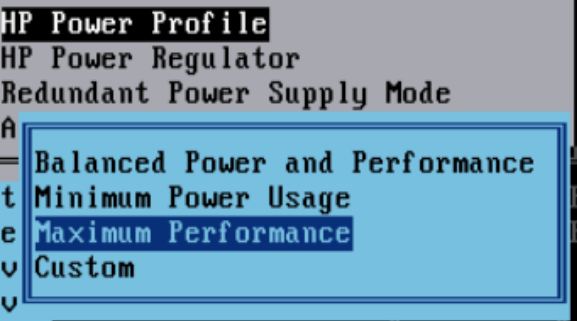
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Configure iLO serial port settings</p> <p><i>(RMS Only)</i></p>	<p>For RMS only, the serial ports on HP DL360 G8 rack mount servers need to be configured so the serial port used by the BIOS and TPD are connected to the "VSP" on the iLO. This will allow the remote administration of the servers without the need for external terminal servers. If this configuration has not been completed correctly and the server rebooted, the syscheck "syscheck -v hardware serial" test will fail.</p> <p>Select System Options option and press [ENTER].</p> <p>Select Serial Port Options option and press [ENTER].</p> <p>Change Embedded Serial Port to COM2 and press [ENTER].</p>  <p>Change Virtual Serial Port to COM1 and press [ENTER].</p>  <p>Press <ESC> two times</p>
------------------------------------	--	---

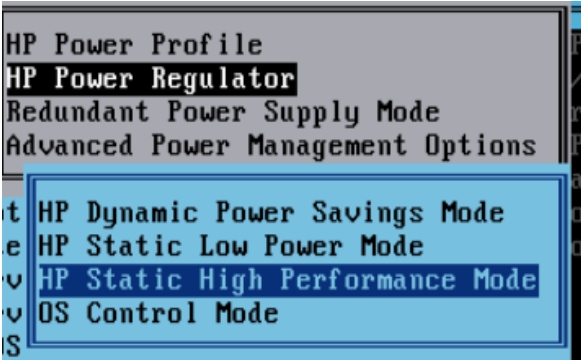
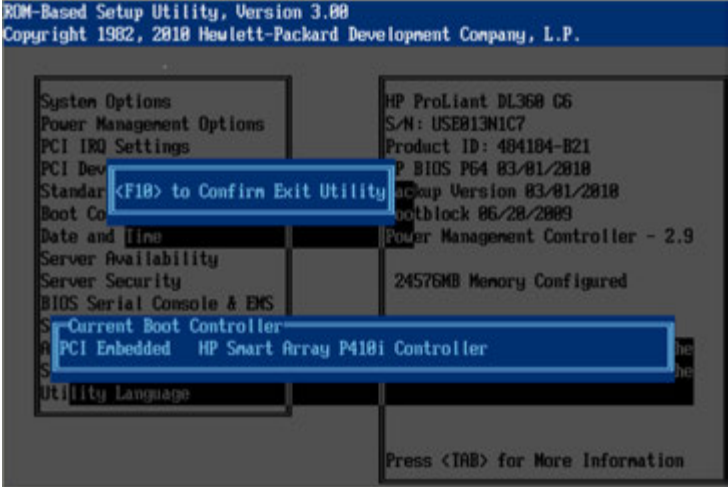
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Configure Power Profile settings</p>	<p>The Power Profile on HP servers need to be configured for optimum software performance on both RMS and blade hardware.</p> <p>Select Power Management Options option and press [ENTER].</p>  <p>Select HP Power Profile option and press [ENTER].</p>  <p>Change it to Maximum Performance and press [ENTER].</p> 
------------------------------------	---	--

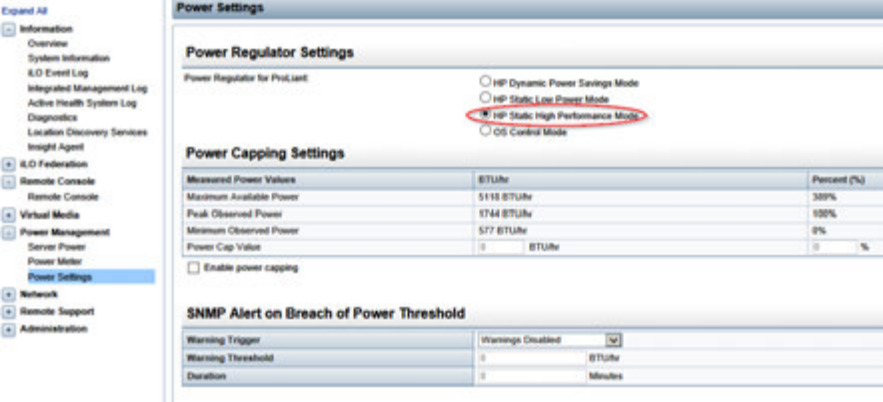
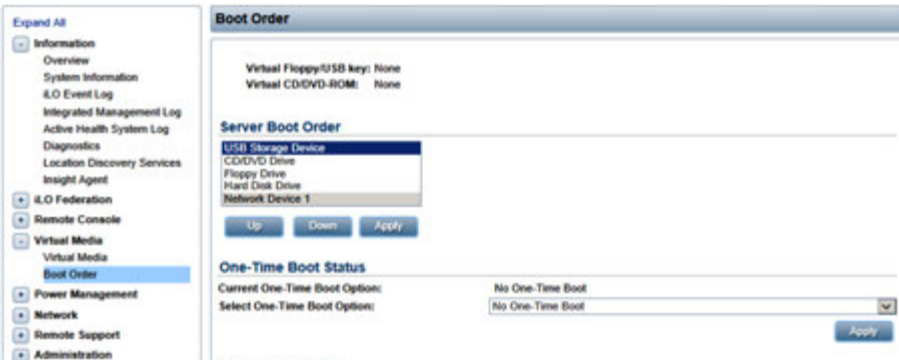
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Configure Power Regulator settings</p>	<p>The Power Regulator on HP servers need to be configured for optimum performance on both RMS and blade hardware.</p> <p>Still under Power Management Options...</p> <p>Select HP Power Regulator option and press [ENTER] .</p> <p><i>Note:</i> A note may appear to say certain processors support only one power state. If this appears, press [ESC] to clear it.</p> <p>Change setting to HP Static High Performance Mode and press [ENTER] .</p> 
<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Save Configuration and Exit</p>	<p>Press <ESC> two times</p> <p>Press [F10] to save the configuration and exit. The server will reboot.</p>  <p>Expected Result: Settings are saved and server reboots.</p>

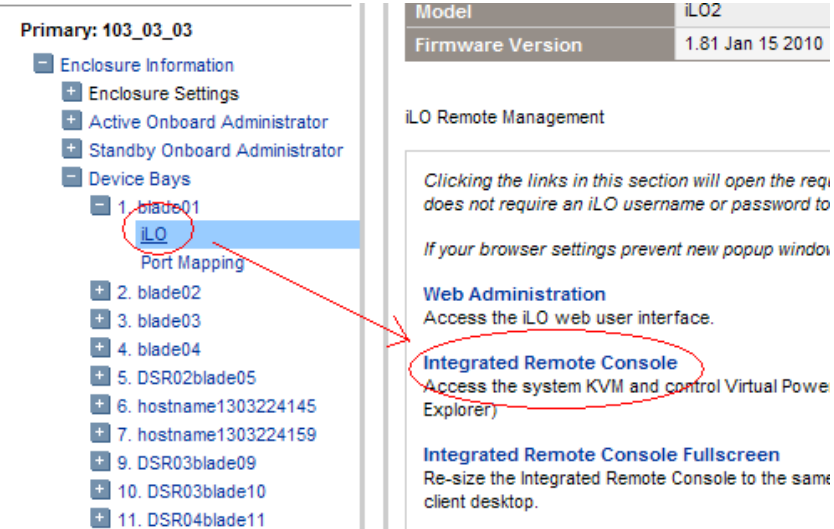
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.1: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 8 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Confirm the HP server's Power Regulator setting.</p>	<p>If not already connected to the server's iLO, connect using 8.1.1 Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for HP.</p> <p>On the HP Server's iLO:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Power Management→Power Settings 2. Confirm Power Regulator for ProLiant is set to: 'HP Static High Performance Mode' 
<p>10.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Server iLO:</p> <p>Verify the Boot Order</p>	<p>From left tree menu Click: Virtual Media > Boot Order</p>  <p>Note 1: The boot order should look like the above snapshot unless the customer has specified otherwise.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>



8.3.2 BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

Step	In this procedure you will configure BIOS settings for HP hardware.	
<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the HP server's console.</p>	<p>Connect to the server's console using one of the access methods described in Section 8.1.1</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the HP server's console according to its hardware type</p>	<p>For Rack Mount Servers (RMS), connect to the server's console using one of the access methods described in Section</p> <p>For Blade servers:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to the IP address of the active OA. Login as an administrative user. Navigate to Enclosure Information > Device Bays ><Blade 1>> iLO Click on Integrated Remote Console  <p>Note: This will launch the iLO interface for that blade. If this is the first time the iLO is being accessed, you will be prompted to install an add-on to your web browser, follow the on screen instructions to do so.</p>

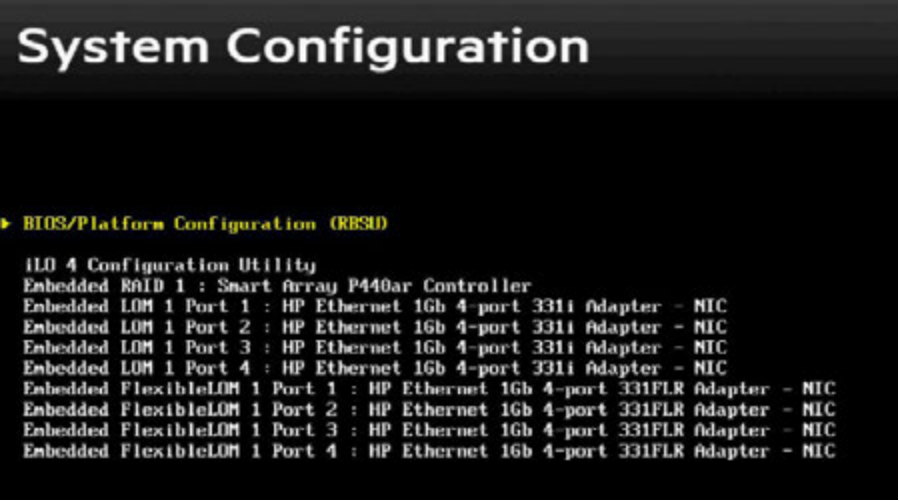
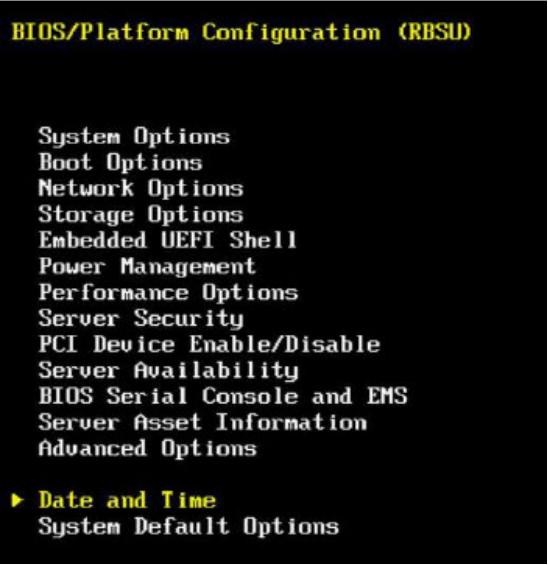
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the Server BIOS</p>	<p>Reboot the server.</p> <p>For Blade and RMS, this can be achieved by selecting Cold Boot from under the Integrated Console's Power Management→Server Power menu.</p> <p>For RMS, this can also be achieved by pressing and holding the power button until the server turns off, then after approximately 5-10 seconds press the power button to enable power.</p> <p>As soon as you see F9=Setup in the lower left corner of the screen, press [F9] to access the BIOS setup screen. You may be required to press [F9] 2-3 times. The F9=Setup will change to F9 Pressed once it is accepted. See example below.</p>  <p>Expected Result: System Utilities screen will display</p>
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the System Utilities screen, select System Configuration, then select Enter</p> 


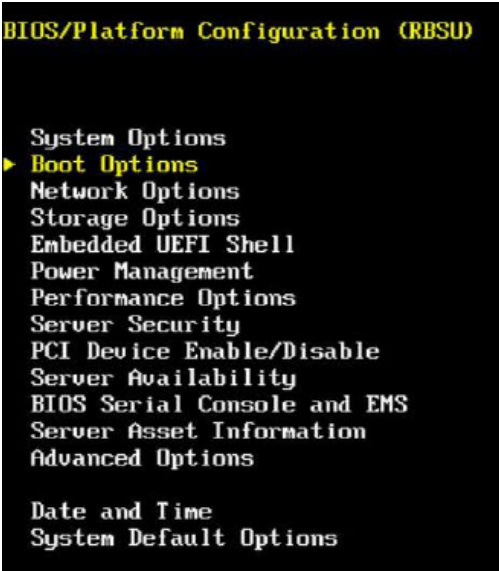
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the System Configuration screen, select BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU), then select Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'System Configuration' menu with 'BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)' highlighted in yellow. Below it, the 'ILO 4 Configuration Utility' is displayed, listing various hardware components and their configurations, including RAID controllers, LOM ports, and FlexibleLOM ports.</p>
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, select Date and Time, then select Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the 'BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)' menu with 'Date and Time' highlighted in yellow. Other menu options include System Options, Boot Options, Network Options, Storage Options, Embedded UEFI Shell, Power Management, Performance Options, Server Security, PCI Device Enable/Disable, Server Availability, BIOS Serial Console and EMS, Server Asset Information, and Advanced Options.</p>


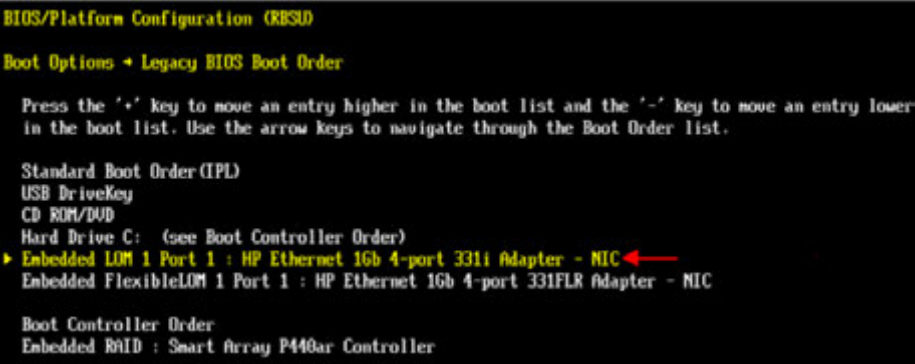
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Date and Time list, set Date and Time to the correct UTC (Greenwich Mean Time), the Time Zone to UTC, and the Time Format to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), then select F10 to save your changes. After saving, select ESC to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) screen. The title is "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". Below the title, it says "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". Under the heading "Date and Time", there are several settings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Date: (mm-dd-yyyy) 10/22/2016 Time: (hh:mm:ss) 119:37:16 Time Zone: UTC-00:00. Greenwich Mean Time. Dublin. London Daylight Savings Time: [Disabled] Time Format: [Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)] At the bottom of the screen, there are navigation keys: [↑↓] Change Selection, [Enter] Select Entry, [ESC] Back, [F1] Help, [F7] Defaults, and [F10] Save. </p>
<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, select Boot Options and press Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) screen with the "Boot Options" menu highlighted. The title is "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". The menu items are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> System Options ▶ Boot Options (highlighted) Network Options Storage Options Embedded UEFI Shell Power Management Performance Options Server Security PCI Device Enable/Disable Server Availability BIOS Serial Console and EMS Server Asset Information Advanced Options At the bottom, there are "Date and Time" and "System Default Options" sections. </p>

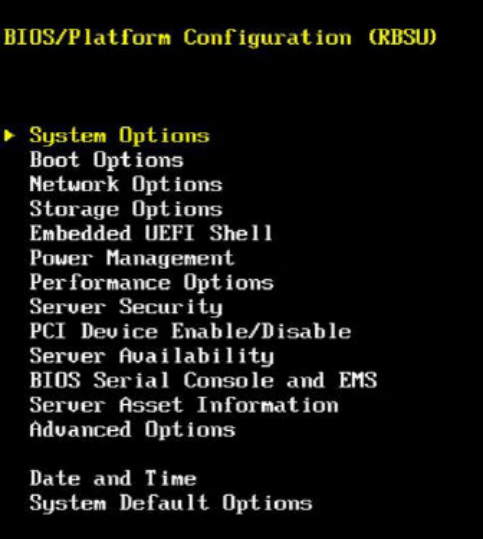
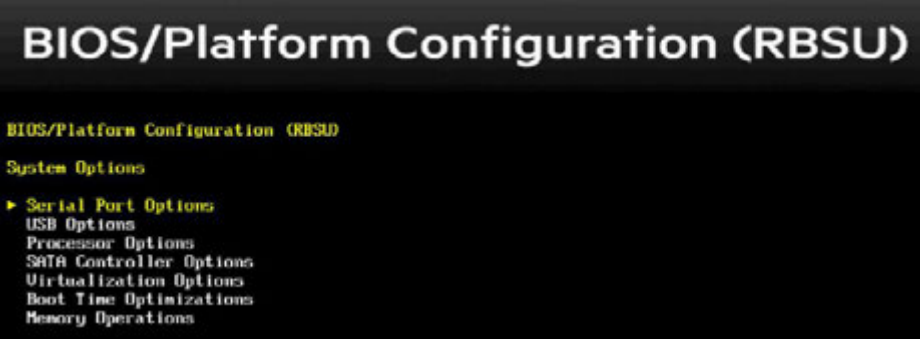
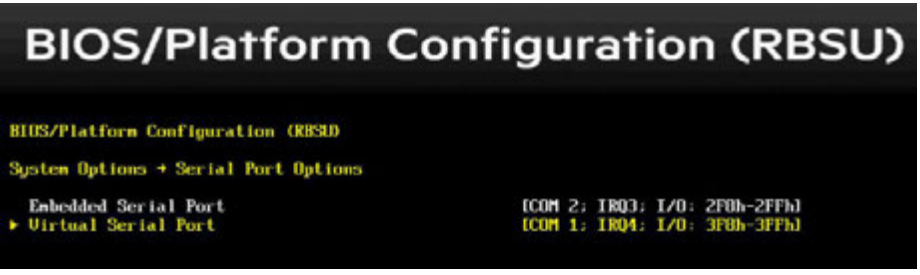
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2: BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>9.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Boot Options list, set Boot Mode to Legacy BIOS Mode, UEFI Optimized Boot to Disabled, and Boot Order Policy to Retry Boot Order Indefinitely. Then select F10 to save your changes. Select the Legacy BIOS Boot Order Option and press Enter</p> 
<p>10.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Legacy BIOS Boot Order Option screen, ensure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • USB DriveKey • CD ROM/DVD • Hard Dive C • Embedded LOM 1 Port 1 • Embedded FlexibleLOM 1 Port 1 <p>are listed in this order under Standard Boot Order (IPL); if not, change their order and select F10 to save your changes.</p> <p>Press ESC to return to the Boot Options screen.</p> 

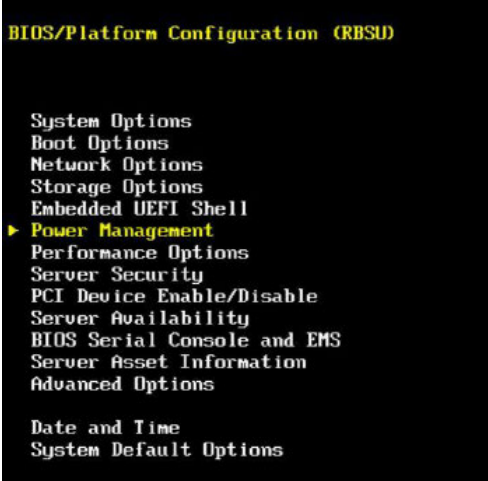
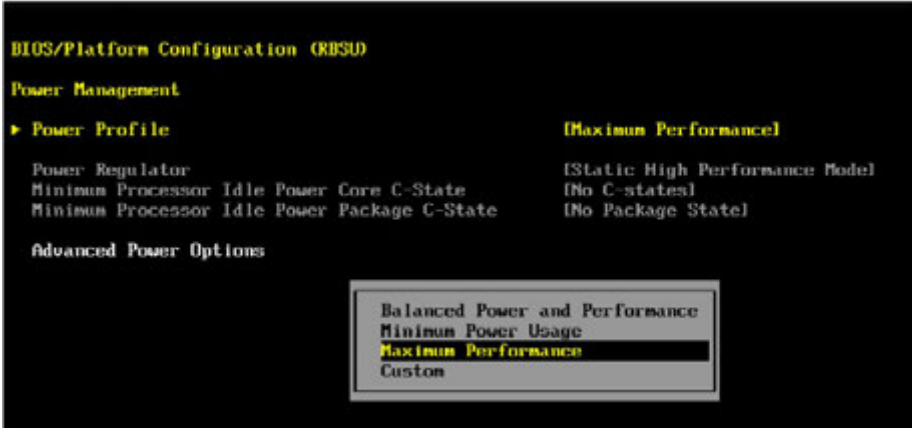
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>11.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>Press ESC again to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, then select System Options and press Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) menu. At the top, it says "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". Below that, there is a list of options: System Options (highlighted with a yellow arrow), Boot Options, Network Options, Storage Options, Embedded UEFI Shell, Power Management, Performance Options, Server Security, PCI Device Enable/Disable, Server Availability, BIOS Serial Console and EMS, Server Asset Information, and Advanced Options. At the bottom, there are two more options: Date and Time and System Default Options.</p>
<p>12.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the System Options list, select Serial Port Options and press Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) menu. At the top, it says "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". Below that, there is a list of options: System Options (highlighted with a yellow arrow), USB Options, Processor Options, SATA Controller Options, Virtualization Options, Boot Time Optimizations, and Memory Operations. Below System Options, there is a sub-menu "Serial Port Options" which is highlighted with a yellow arrow.</p>
<p>13.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Serial Port Options list, set Embedded Serial Port to COM2 and set Virtual Serial Port to COM1, then select F10 to save your changes. Then select ESC twice to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) menu. At the top, it says "BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU)". Below that, there is a list of options: System Options + Serial Port Options (highlighted with a yellow arrow), Embedded Serial Port, and Virtual Serial Port (highlighted with a yellow arrow). To the right of these options, there are two lines of text: "(COM 2; IRQ3; I/O: 2F0h-2FFh)" and "(COM 1; IRQ4; I/O: 3F0h-3FFh)".</p>

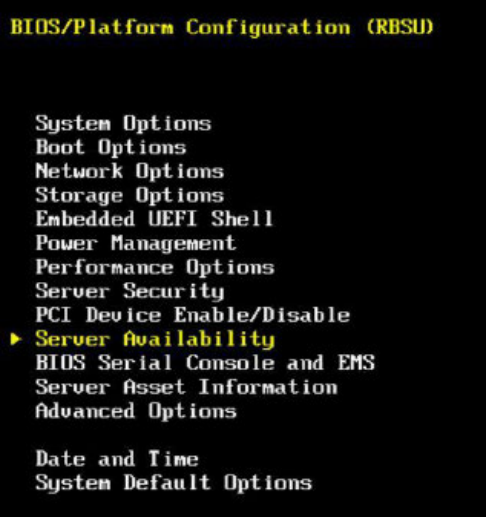
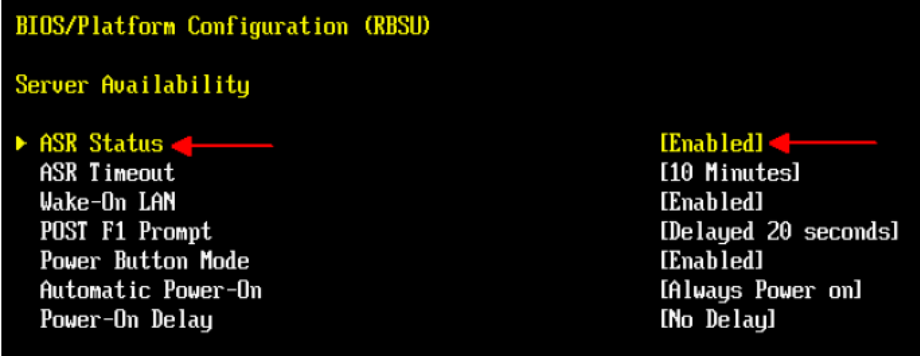
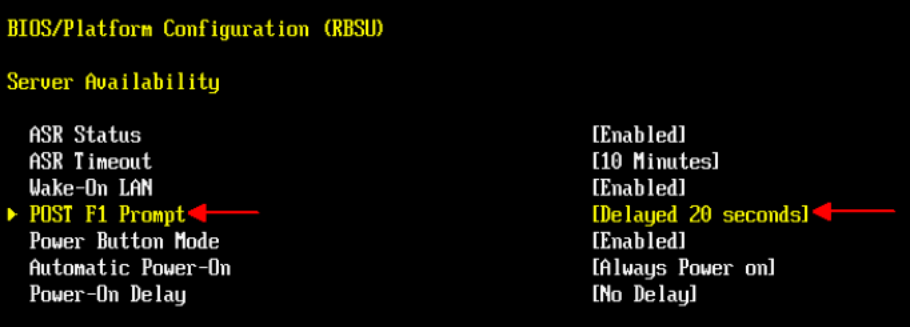
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>14.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, select Power Management Option and press enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) menu. The options listed are: System Options, Boot Options, Network Options, Storage Options, Embedded UEFI Shell, Power Management (highlighted with a yellow arrow), Performance Options, Server Security, PCI Device Enable/Disable, Server Availability, BIOS Serial Console and EMS, Server Asset Information, and Advanced Options. At the bottom, there are options for Date and Time and System Default Options.</p>
<p>15.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Power Management screen, set Power Profile to Maximum Performance, then select F10 to save your changes. Then select ESC to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) Power Management screen. The Power Profile is set to Maximum Performance. Other options include Power Regulator, Minimum Processor Idle Power Core C-State, Minimum Processor Idle Power Package C-State, and Advanced Power Options. A dialog box is shown at the bottom with the following options: Balanced Power and Performance, Minimum Power Usage, Maximum Performance (highlighted), and Custom.</p>

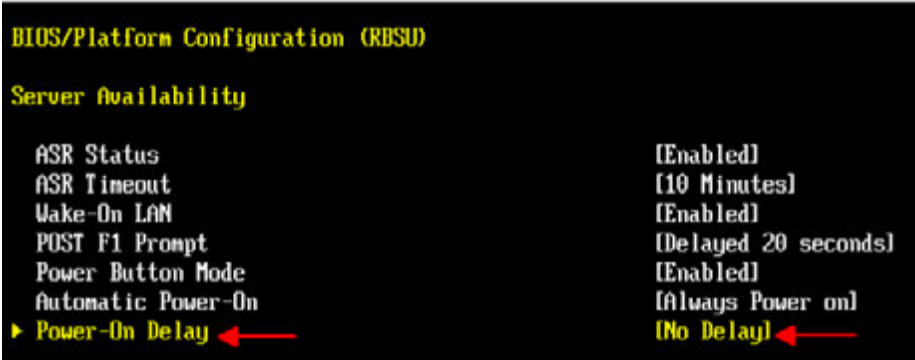

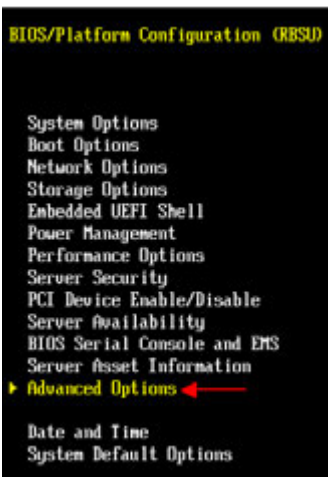
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>16.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, select Server Availability Option and press Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the BIOS/Platform Configuration (RBSU) menu. The options listed are: System Options, Boot Options, Network Options, Storage Options, Embedded UEFI Shell, Power Management, Performance Options, Server Security, PCI Device Enable/Disable, Server Availability (highlighted with a yellow arrow), BIOS Serial Console and EMS, Server Asset Information, and Advanced Options. At the bottom, there are options for Date and Time and System Default Options.</p>
<p>17.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Server Availability screen, set ASR Status to Enabled.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Server Availability screen. The options listed are: ASR Status (highlighted with a yellow arrow and a red arrow pointing to the value [Enabled]), ASR Timeout [10 Minutes], Wake-On LAN [Enabled], POST F1 Prompt [Delayed 20 seconds], Power Button Mode [Enabled], Automatic Power-On [Always Power on], and Power-On Delay [No Delay].</p>
<p>18.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>Set POST F1 Prompt to Delayed 20 seconds.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Server Availability screen. The options listed are: ASR Status [Enabled], ASR Timeout [10 Minutes], Wake-On LAN [Enabled], POST F1 Prompt (highlighted with a yellow arrow and a red arrow pointing to the value [Delayed 20 seconds]), Power Button Mode [Enabled], Automatic Power-On [Always Power on], and Power-On Delay [No Delay].</p>

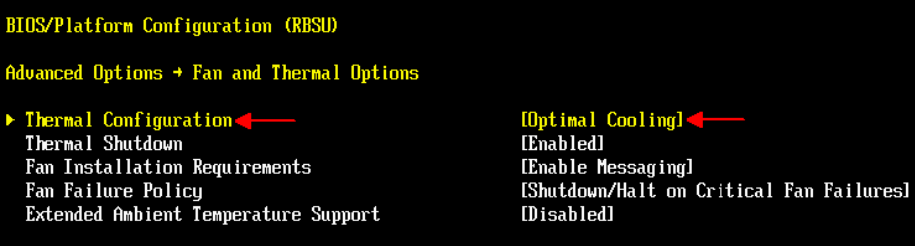
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

<p>19.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>Set Power-On Delay to No Delay.</p> 
<p>20.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>Set Automatic Power-On to Restore Last Power State, then select F10 to save your changes. After saving, select ESC to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen.</p> 
<p>21.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>System Utilities Configuration</p>	<p>From the Bios/Platform Configuration screen, select Advanced Options and press Enter.</p> 

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

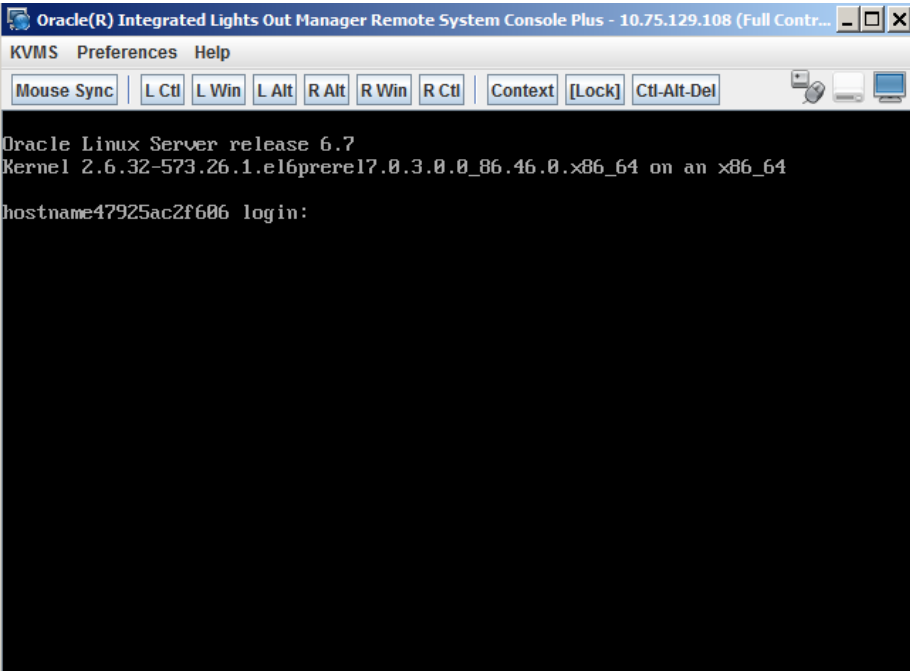
8.3.2:BIOS Settings for HP Gen 9 Blade and Rack Mount Servers

22. <input type="checkbox"/>	System Utilities Configuration	<p>Set Thermal Configuration to Optimal Cooling, then select F10 to save your changes. After saving, select ESC to return to the Bios/Platform Configuration screen.</p>  <p>Select ESC to return to the System Utilities screen.</p>
THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED		

8.3.3 BIOS Settings for Oracle RMS Servers

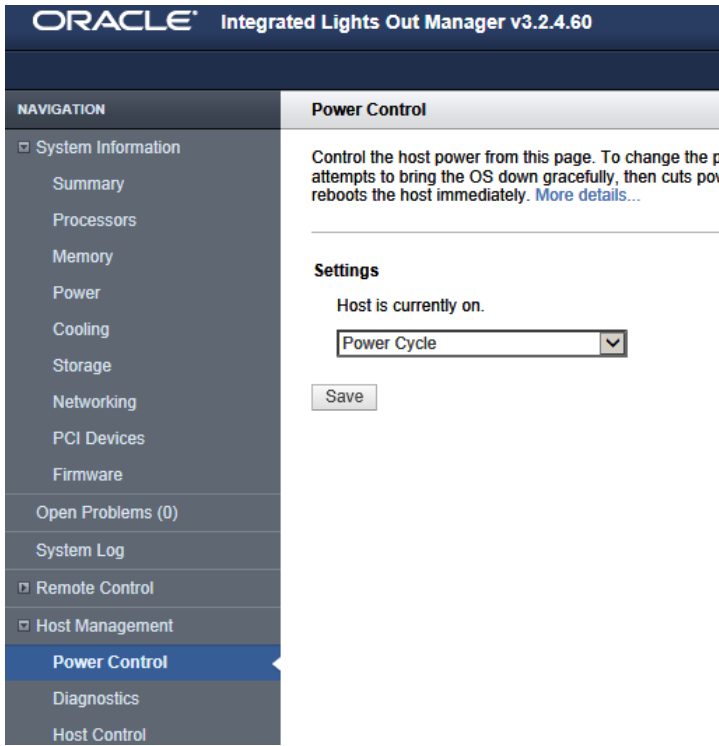
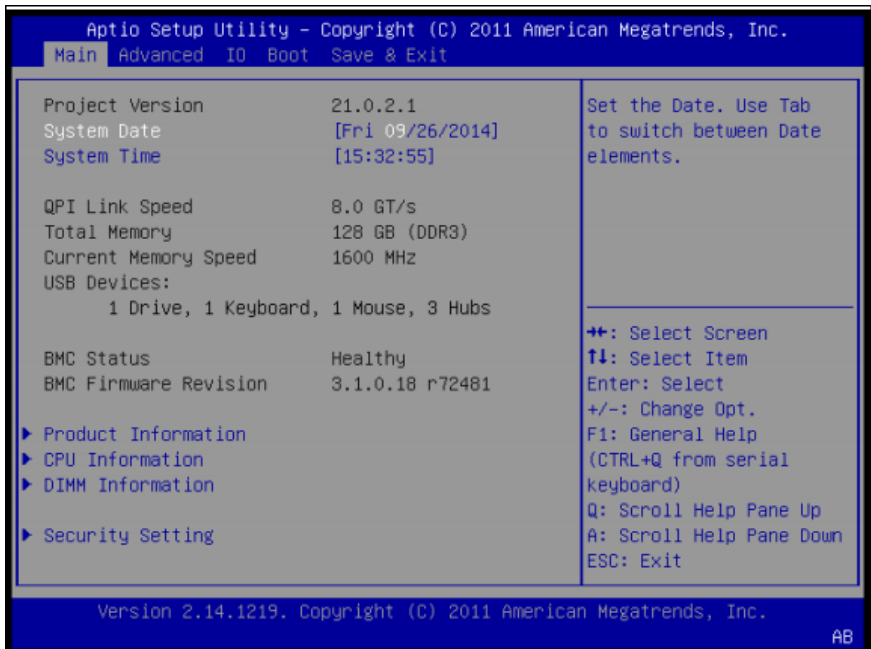
This procedure will configure BIOS settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers.

8.3.3:BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

Step	In this procedure you will configure BIOS settings for Oracle RMS hardware.	
1. <input type="checkbox"/>	Access the Oracle server's console.	<p>Connect to the server's console as per Section 8.1.2</p> 

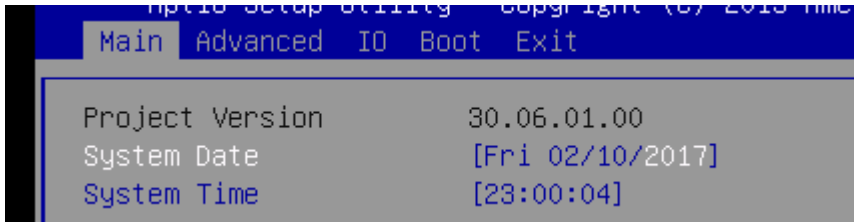
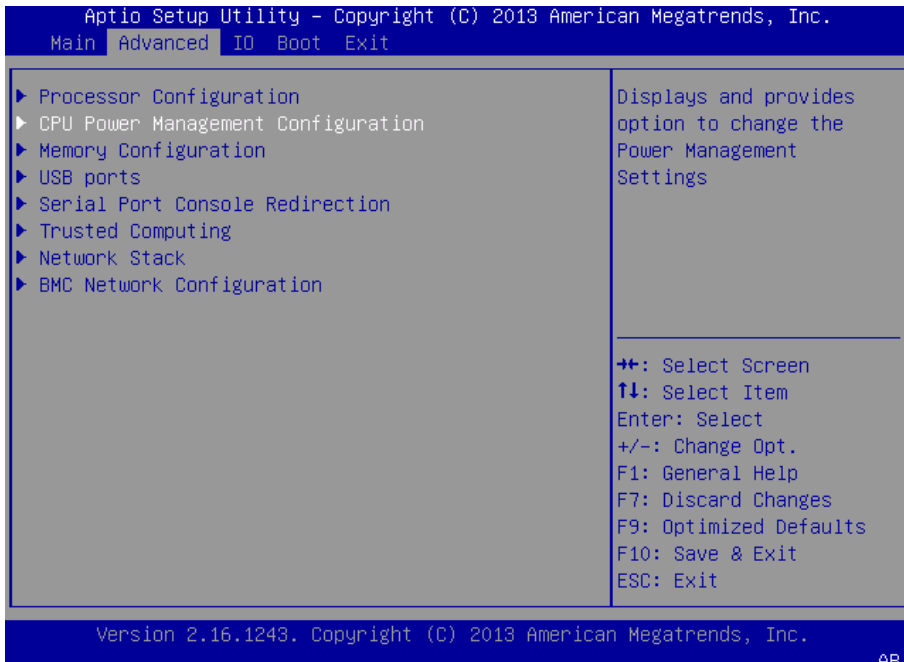
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

<p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Reboot the server from the iLOM</p>	<p>Navigate to Host Management→Power Control and choose “power Cycle” in the settings and “Save” to reboot the server.</p> 
<p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Oracle server's console</p> <p>Reboot the server and press F2 Key</p>	<p>After the server is powered on, press the F2 key when prompted to access the Setup Utility.</p> 

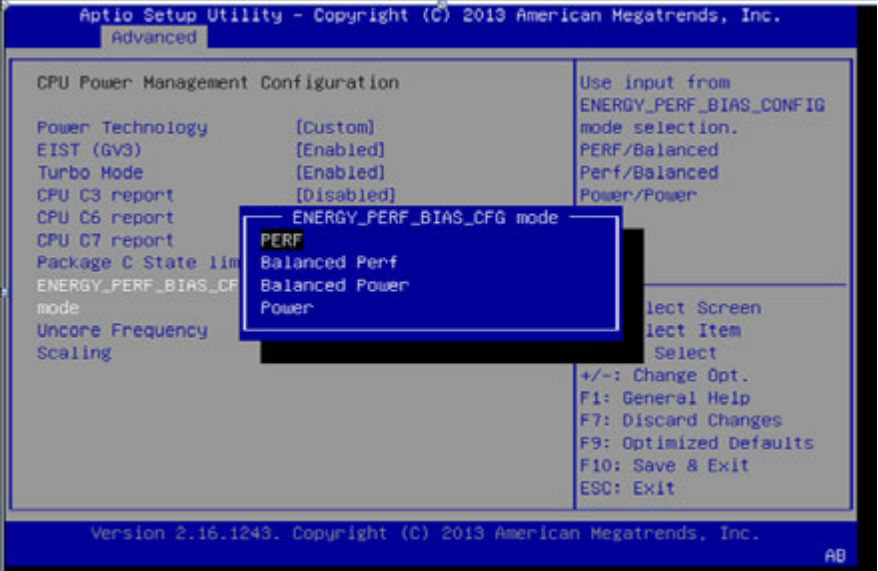
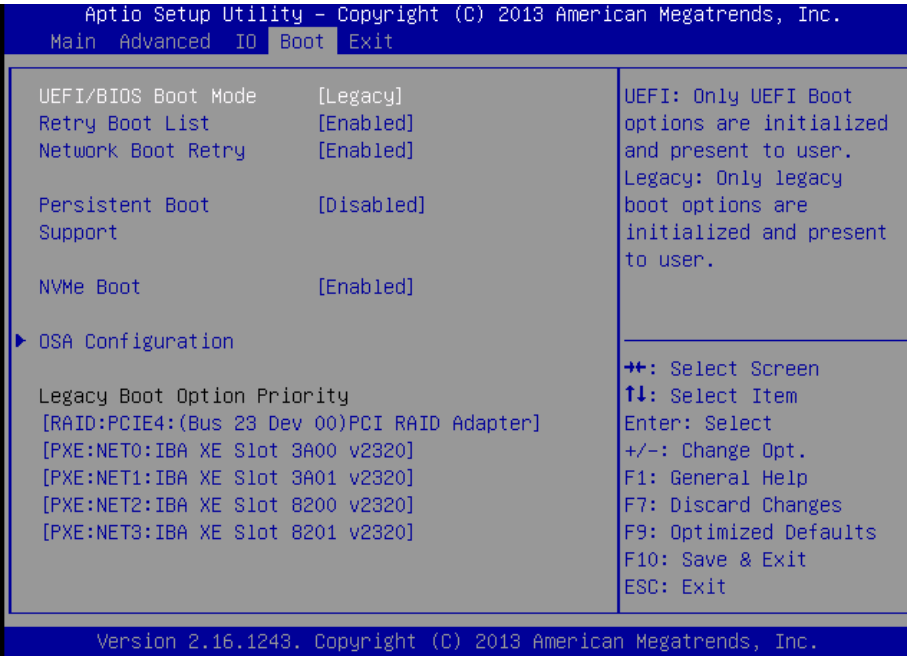
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>With "System Date" selected hit "enter" to move forward and set the server date and time to GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Aptio Setup Utility interface. At the top, it says "Aptio Setup Utility - Copyright (C) 2013 American Megatrends, Inc." Below that is a menu bar with "Main", "Advanced", "IO", "Boot", and "Exit". The "Advanced" menu is selected, and the "System Date" option is highlighted. The current system date is [Fri 02/10/2017] and the system time is [23:00:04].</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>Go to the Advanced Menu → CPU Power Management Configuration</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Aptio Setup Utility interface with the "Advanced" menu selected. The "CPU Power Management Configuration" option is highlighted. The menu items are: Processor Configuration, CPU Power Management Configuration, Memory Configuration, USB ports, Serial Port Console Redirection, Trusted Computing, Network Stack, and BMC Network Configuration. A help box on the right lists navigation keys: ++ for Select Screen, ↑↓ for Select Item, Enter for Select, +/- for Change Opt., F1 for General Help, F7 for Discard Changes, F9 for Optimized Defaults, F10 for Save & Exit, and ESC for Exit. The version number 2.16.1243 and copyright information are visible at the bottom.</p>

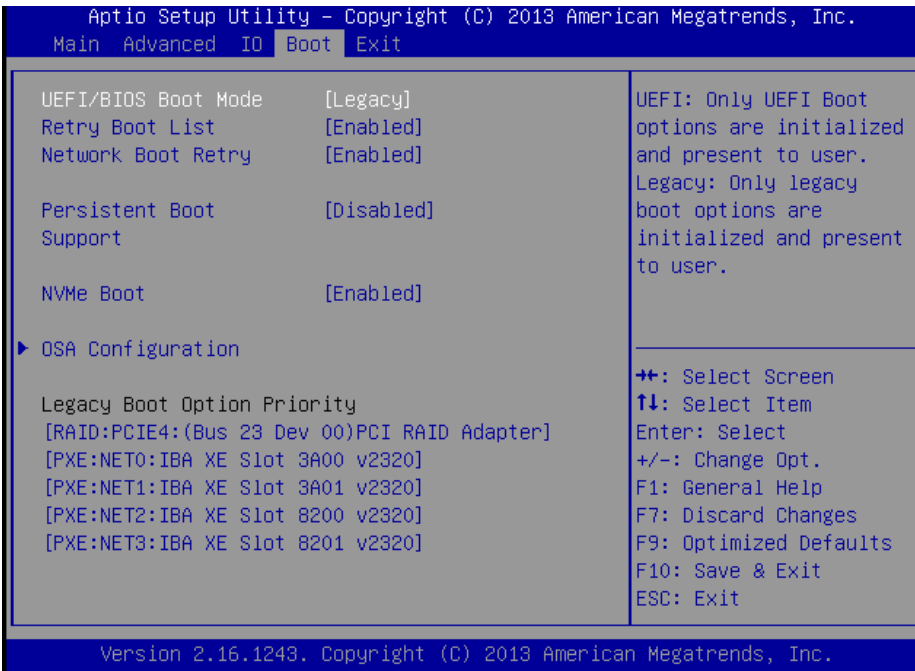
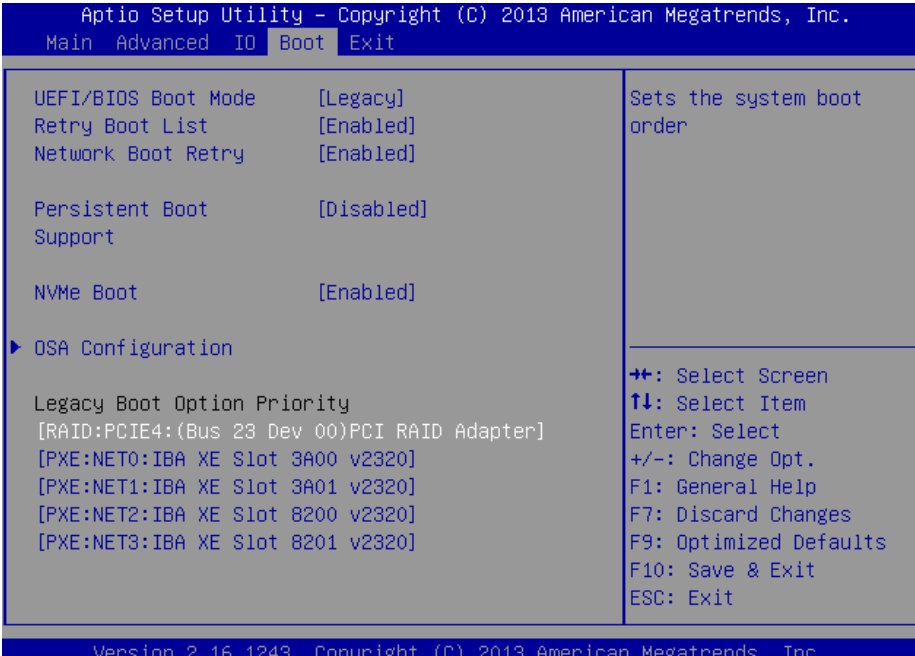
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

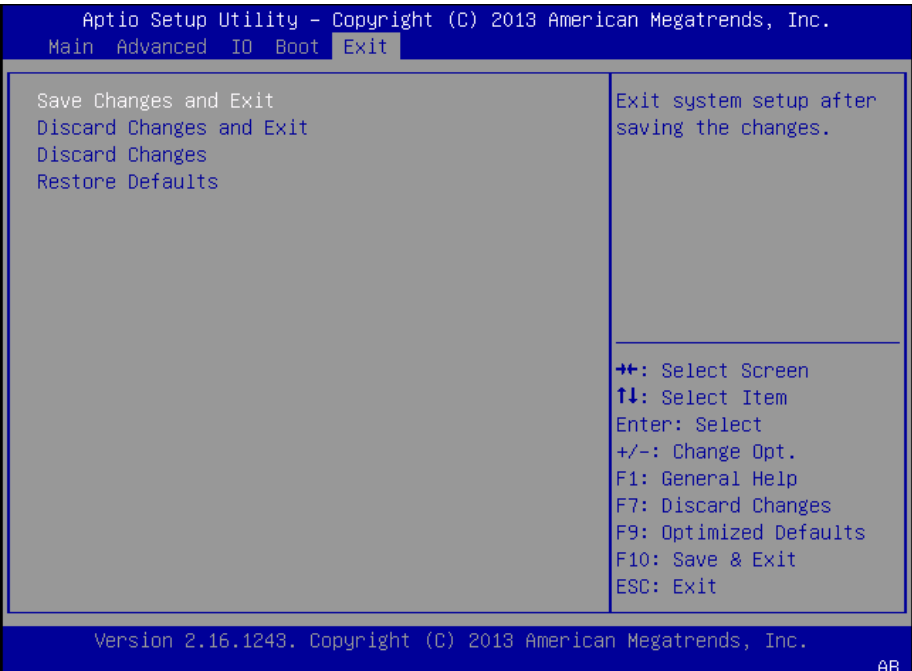
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>From CPU Power Management Configuration scroll to "ENERGY_PERF_BIAS_CFG". If Energy Performance is not set to [Perf], select "Perf" and press Enter.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Aptio Setup Utility interface. The 'Advanced' tab is selected. Under 'CPU Power Management Configuration', the 'ENERGY_PERF_BIAS_CFG mode' is highlighted. A sub-menu is open, showing 'PERF' as the selected option. Other options in the sub-menu include 'Balanced Perf', 'Balanced Power', and 'Power'. The background menu lists various settings like Power Technology, EIST, Turbo Mode, etc. The bottom of the screen shows 'Version 2.16.1243. Copyright (C) 2013 American Megatrends, Inc.' and 'AB' in the corner.</p>
<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>Go to the Boot Menu.</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the Aptio Setup Utility interface with the 'Boot' tab selected. The menu includes 'UEFI/BIOS Boot Mode' (Legacy), 'Retry Boot List' (Enabled), 'Network Boot Retry' (Enabled), 'Persistent Boot Support' (Disabled), and 'NVMe Boot' (Enabled). There is a section for 'OSA Configuration' with 'Legacy Boot Option Priority' and a list of boot options: '[RAID:PCIE4:(Bus 23 Dev 00)PCI RAID Adapter]', '[PXE:NET0:IBA XE Slot 3A00 v2320]', '[PXE:NET1:IBA XE Slot 3A01 v2320]', '[PXE:NET2:IBA XE Slot 8200 v2320]', and '[PXE:NET3:IBA XE Slot 8201 v2320]'. The bottom of the screen shows 'Version 2.16.1243. Copyright (C) 2013 American Megatrends, Inc.' and 'A' in the corner.</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

<p>8.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>Go to the Boot Menu.</p> 
<p>9.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>Under Legacy Boot Option Priority, verify the RAID Adapter is listed first. If not, highlight it and use + key to move it to the top of the list.</p> 

8.3.3: BIOS Settings for Oracle Rack Mount Servers

<p>10.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Oracle server's console</p>	<p>Go to the Exit menu. Select "Save Changes and Reset"</p> 
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

8.3.4 *Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers*

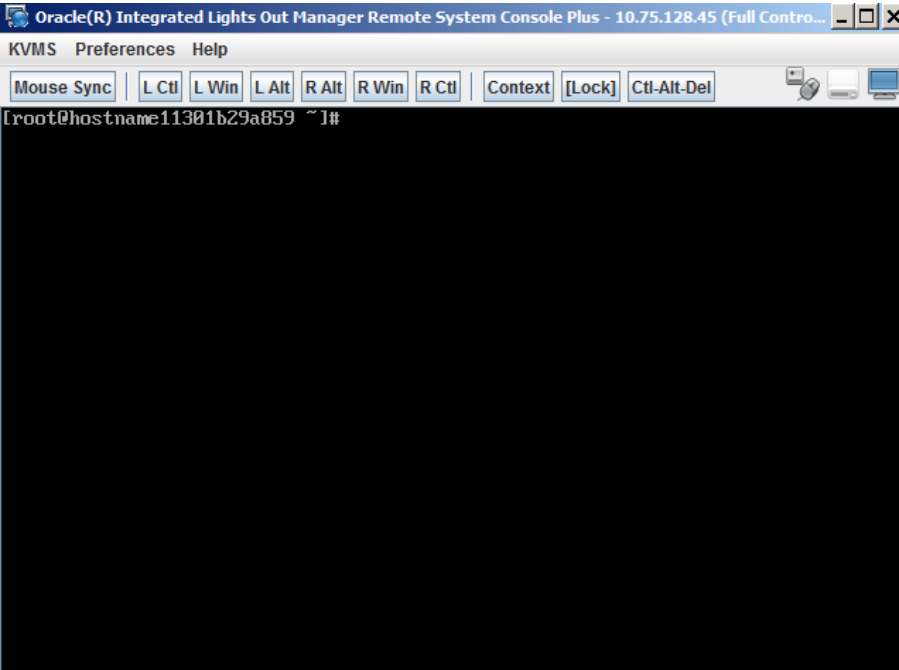
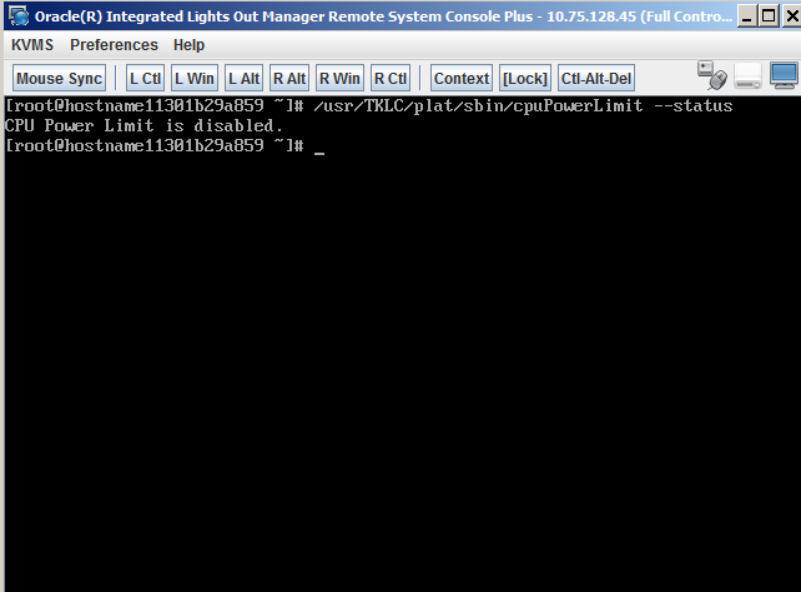
To meet NEBS requirements, the Netra X5-2 server has an option in the BIOS to set a CPU Power Limit. When the CPU Power Limit is enabled the server is in NEBS mode, and this function reduces the CPU power to 120 watts from the maximum 145 watts to prevent CPU throttling. By default TPD sets this option to disabled during IPM of a Netra X5-2 server, but this value can be changed after IPM by using the cpuPowerLimit utility. The cpuPowerLimit utility has four options: enable, disable, status, and check. After using the cpuPowerLimit utility to change the value of CPU Power Limit the server must be rebooted for the change to take effect. When running the utility it is important to note that is it reading and/or writing out to the current BIOS values and can take 10-30 seconds to complete each action.

8.3.4: Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers

Step	<p>In this procedure you will configure the CPU Power Limit for Netra X5-2 Servers</p> <p>Note: This procedure is performed after the Platform software has been installed.</p>
-------------	---

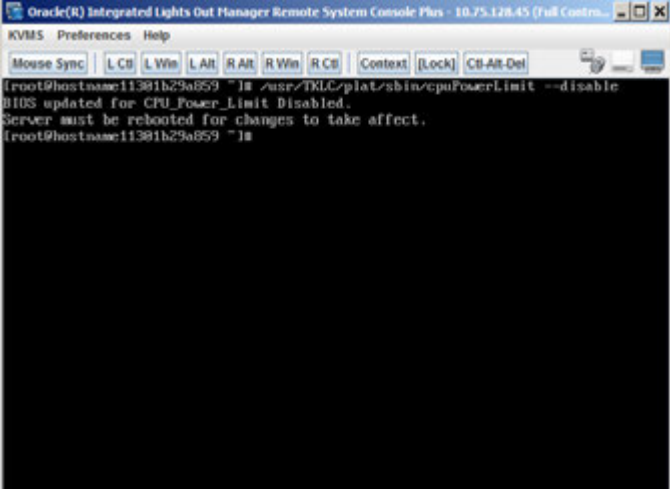
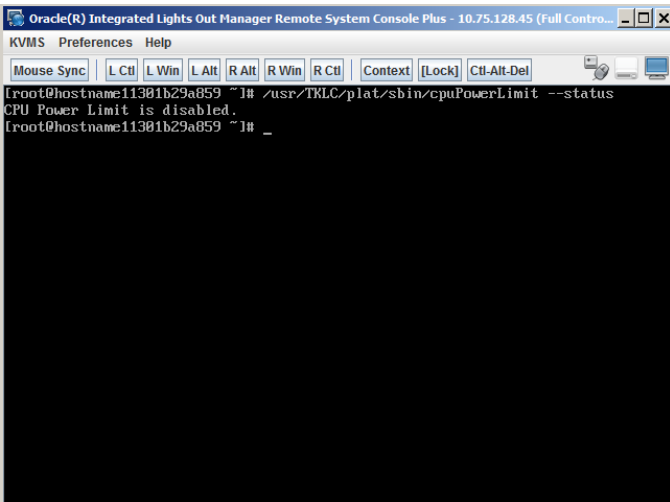
Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.4:Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers

<p>1.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Access the Oracle server's console.</p>	<p>Connect to the server's console as per section 8.1.2:Accessing the iLO VGA Redirection Window for Oracle RMS Servers</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Oracle(R) Integrated Lights Out Manager Remote System Console Plus - 10.75.128.45 (Full Contro...". The window has a menu bar with "KVMS", "Preferences", and "Help". Below the menu bar are several buttons: "Mouse Sync", "L Ctl", "L Win", "L Alt", "R Alt", "R Win", "R Ctl", "Context", "[Lock]", and "Ctl-Alt-Del". The terminal content shows a root prompt: "[root@hostname11301b29a859 ~]#".</p>
<p>2.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remote Console command line: check settings</p>	<p>To check the current setting of CPU Power Limit in the BIOS run: /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit -status</p>  <p>The screenshot shows the same terminal window as above. The terminal content now shows the command and its output: "[root@hostname11301b29a859 ~]# /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit --status CPU Power Limit is disabled. [root@hostname11301b29a859 ~]# _".</p> <p>CPU Power Limit is disabled</p>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

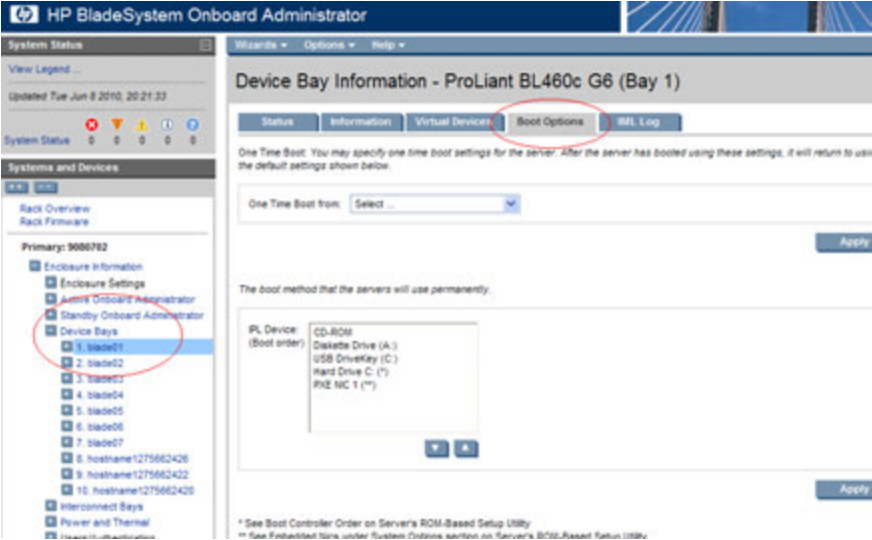

8.3.4:Configuring CPU Power Limit on Netra X5-2 Servers

<p>3.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remote Console command line: enable settings</p>	<p>To enable CPU Power Limit after IPing a Netra X5-2 server log into the server as root and run: /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit -enable</p> <pre>[root@X52-mpe-1a ~]# /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit -enable BIOS updated for CPU Power Limit Enabled. Server must be rebooted for changes to take affect. [root@X52-mpe-1a ~]#</pre> <p>Reboot the server for the new setting to take effect.</p> <pre>[root@X52-mpe-1a ~]# /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit -status CPU Power Limit is enabled. [root@X52-mpe-1a ~]#</pre> <p>CPU_PowerLimit Enabled</p>
<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Remote Console command line: disable settings</p>	<p>To disable CPU Power Limit log into the server as root and run: /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit -disable</p>  <pre>Oracle(R) Integrated Lights Out Manager Remote System Console Plus - 10.75.128.45 (Full Contro... KVMS Preferences Help Mouse Sync L Ctl L Win L Alt R Alt R Win R Ctl Context [Lock] Ctl-Alt-Del [root@hostname:11301b29a859 ~]# /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit --disable BIOS updated for CPU Power Limit Disabled. Server must be rebooted for changes to take affect. [root@hostname:11301b29a859 ~]#</pre> <p>Reboot the server for the new setting to take effect.</p>  <pre>Oracle(R) Integrated Lights Out Manager Remote System Console Plus - 10.75.128.45 (Full Contro... KVMS Preferences Help Mouse Sync L Ctl L Win L Alt R Alt R Win R Ctl Context [Lock] Ctl-Alt-Del [root@hostname:11301b29a859 ~]# /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/cpuPowerLimit --status CPU Power Limit is disabled. [root@hostname:11301b29a859 ~]#</pre> <p>CPU_PowerLimit Disabled</p>

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

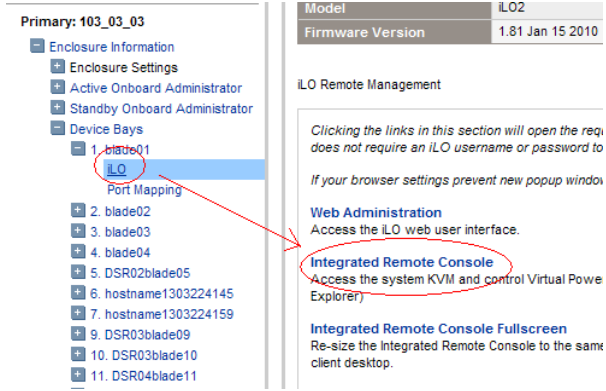
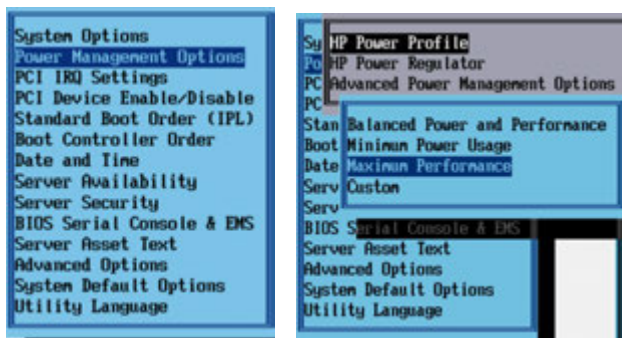
8.3.5 Using c-Class Enclosure OA to Update Application Blade's BIOS Settings

8.3.5: Using c-Class Enclosure OA to Update Application Blade's BIOS Settings

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to confirm and update the BIOS configuration on Blade servers using the C-Class enclosure OA.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>IF THIS PROCEDURE FAILS, CONTACT ORACLE TECHNICAL SERVICES AND ASK FOR ASSISTANCE.</p>	
<p>1.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>OA GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open your web browser and navigate to the OA IP address</p> <p>Login to HP OA as Administrator. Original password is on paper card attached to each OA.</p>
<p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>OA: Navigate to device Bay Settings</p>	<p>Navigate to Enclosure Information -> Device Bays -> <Blade 1></p> <p>Click on Boot Options Tab</p> 
<p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; margin-left: 5px;"></div>	<p>OA: Verify/update Boot device Order</p>	<p>Verify that the Boot order is as follows. If it is not, use the up and down arrows to adjust the order to match the picture below, then click on “Apply”.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>IPL Device: (Boot order)</p> <p>CD-ROM Diskette Drive (A:) USB DriveKey (C:) Hard Drive C: (*) PXE NIC 1 (**)</p> </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;">  </div>

Policy Management 12.2 Bare Metal Installation Guide

8.3.5: Using c-Class Enclosure OA to Update Application Blade's BIOS Settings

<p>4.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>OA: Access the Blade iLO</p>	<p>Navigate to Enclosure Information -> Device Bays -> <Blade 1> -> iLO</p> <p>Click on Integrated Remote Console</p>  <p>This will launch the iLO interface for that blade. If this is the first time the iLO is being accessed, you may be prompted to install an add-on to your web browser, follow the on screen instructions to do so.</p>
<p>5.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>OA: restart the blade and access the bios</p>	<p>You might be prompted with a certificate security warning, just press continue.</p> <p>Once a prompt is displayed, login onto the blade using the “root” username.</p> <p>Once logged in, Reboot the server (using the “reboot” command). After the server is powered on and is booting , press F9 to access the BIOS setup screen (as soon as you see <F9=Setup> in the lower left corner of the screen).</p>
<p>6.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>OA: Update bios settings</p>	<p>Scroll down to <i>Power Management Options</i> and press Enter</p> <p>Select <i>HP Power Profile</i> and press Enter</p> <p>Scroll down to <i>Maximum Performance</i> and press Enter</p>  <p>Press <Esc> twice to return to exit the BIOS setup screen and press F10 to confirm Exiting the utility.</p> <p>The blade will reboot afterwards</p>
<p>7.</p> <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>OA: Repeat for the remaining blades</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 2 through 6 for the remaining blades. Once done, exit out of the OA GUI.</p>
<p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p>		

9. TROUBLESHOOTING THE INSTALLATION

This chapter describes how to troubleshoot the installation.

9.1 COMMON PROBLEMS AND THEIR SOLUTIONS

The following sections describe and present solutions to common installation problems.

Problem: Verifying firmware levels

You are not sure if the hardware is at the required firmware level.

Solution: If you purchased your servers from Oracle, they will have the latest revisions available at the time of shipment. If the installation is HP c-Class then the OA (On-line Administrator) GUI will have a summary of the firmware revisions of all the equipment in the c-Class enclosure. (It will generally not be possible to access this until installation of the enclosure is complete.)

In general, you can update firmware after installation, but you must complete these updates before the system goes into service.

Problem: You want to configure Cisco or HP switches without using the PM&C netConfig tool

Configuring outside of the netConfig tool is not recommended.

Solution: You can log in to the switches from PM&C and make configuration changes while troubleshooting: for example, to disable a port, turn on port mirroring, or add a route. However, the configurations that are generated from netConfig have many important settings to make the configuration work correctly. Back up the final switch configuration to PM&C so that it can be restored in a repair operation. Also, make note if the netConfig files are not to be used for restore operation (since you made switch configuration changes outside of this tool).

Problem: You need the netConfig template files

Solution: The latest releases of the netConfig template files are included in the Policy Management ISO image file. Once Policy Management software is installed on a server, you will find the files in the directory `/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netconfig/`.

Several templates are provided, depending on the networking choices at your site. You must choose the correct templates.

Problem: Networking issues

When you open the ports, there may be troubleshooting required of:

1. Cabling
2. Policy Management server IP network configuration
3. Your IP network configuration

Solution: This may be easier to resolve if you can trace cables and plug a laptop into a switch to run port mirroring. If PM&C iLO connectivity is in place, issues can also be resolved remotely.

9.2 MY ORACLE SUPPORT

My Oracle Support (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with My Oracle Support registration.

Call the CAS main number at 1-800-223-1711 (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>. When calling, make the selections in the following sequence on the Support telephone menu:

1. Select **2** for New Service Request
 2. Select **3** for Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support
 3. Select one of the following options:
 - a. For Technical issues such as creating a new Service Request (SR), select **1**
 - b. For Non-technical issues such as registration or assistance with *My Oracle Support*, Select **2**
- You will be connected to a live agent who can assist you with *My Oracle Support* registration and opening a support ticket. [My Oracle Support](#) is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.